

The Genuine  
**EPISTLES**  
OF THE  
Apostolical Fathers

S. BARNABAS, } S. CLEMENT,  
S. IGNATIUS, } S. POLYCARP.

THE  
SHEPHERD of HERMAS,

And the Martyrdoms of

St. Ignatius and St. Polycarp,  
Written by Those who were present at  
their Sufferings.

Being, together with the Holy Scriptures of the New  
Testament, a compleat Collection of the most Primi-  
tive Antiquity for about CL Years after Christ.

Translated and Publish'd, with a large Preliminary  
Discourse relating to the several Treatises  
here put together,

By W. Wake, D.D. Chapl. in Ordinary to their Maj<sup>ties</sup>,  
and Preacher to the Honorable Society of Grays-Inn.

LONDON: Printed for R. Ware at Grays-Inn  
Gate next Holborn. 1693.



---

# Imprimatur,

Apr. 11.  
1693.

*Carolus Alston, R. P. D.*  
*Hen. Episc. Lond. à sacris.*

---

---

---

A  
CATALOGUE  
OF THE

*Several PIECES contain'd in  
this Book, and the Order of  
them.*

---

A *Discourse concerning the  
Treatises here collected ,  
and the Authors of them.*

PART I.

The *First Epistle* of St. Clement  
to the *Corinthians.*

The *Epistle* of St. Polycarp to  
the *Philippians.*

The *Genuine Epistles* of St. Ignatius.

A Catalogue, &c.

A Relation of the *Martyrdom* of  
St. *Ignatius*, written by those  
who were present at his Suf-  
ferings.

The *Epistle* of the Church of  
*Smyrna*, concerning the Mar-  
tyrdom of St. *Polycarp*.

PART II.

The *Catholick Epistle* of St. *Barnabas*.

The *Shepherd* of *Hermas*, in  
*Three Books*.

The Remains of St. *Clement's*  
*Second Epistle* to the *Corin-  
thians*.

An INDEX to both *Parts*.

THE

---

---

A  
DISCOURSE  
CONCERNING

*The several Treatises contain'd in the following Collection; and the Authors of them.*

---

The INTRODUCTION.

1. **H**AD I designed the following Collection either for the Benefit or Perusal of the learned World, I should have needed to say but very little by way of Introduction to it: The Editors of the several Treatises here put together, having already observed so much upon each of them, that it would I believe be difficult to discover, I am sure be very needless to trouble the Reader with any more.

## The INTRODUCTION

2. BUT as it would be Ridiculous for me to pretend to have design'd a Translation for those who are able with much more Profit and Satisfaction to go to the Originals; so being now to address my self to those especially who want that Ability, I suppose it may not be amiss before I lead them to the Discourses themselves, to give them some Account both of the Authors of the several Pieces I have here collected; and of the Tracts themselves; and of that Collection that is now the first time made of them in our own Tongue. Tho' as to the first of these, I shall say the less, by reason of that excellent Account that has been already given of the most of them by our Pious and Learned Dr. Cave: Whose Lives of the *Apostles* and *Primitive Fathers*, with his other Admirable Discourse of *Primitive Christianity*, I could heartily wish were in the hands of all the more judicious part of our *English* Readers.

3. NOR may such an Account as I now propose to my self to give of the following Pieces be altogether usefess to some even of the Learned themselves; who wanting either the Opportunity of Collecting the several Authors necessary for such a search, or leisure to examine them; may not be unwilling to see that faithfully brought together under one short and general View; which  
would

*Of St. Clement's First Epistle, &c.*

3

would have required some Time and Labour to have search'd out, as it lay diffus'd in a Multitude of Writers, out of which they must otherwise have gather'd it.

---

CHAP. II.

*Of the First Epistle of S. Clement to the Corinthians.*

*Of the Value which the Ancients put upon this Epistle. Of St. Clement himself, who was the Author of it: That it was the same Clement of whom S. Paul speaks, Phil. iv. 3. Of his Conversion to Christianity: When he became Bishop of Rome, as also whether he suffer'd Martyrdom, uncertain. Of the Occasion of his Writing this Epistle, and the two main Parts of it. Of the Time when it was written. That there is no reason to doubt but that the Epistle we now have was truly written by S. Clement: The Objection of Tentzelius against it of no force. How this Epistle was first published by Mr. Patrick Young; and translated by Mr. Burton into English. Of the present Edition of it.*

## Of St. Clement's First Epistle

I. **T**HE first *Tract* which begins this *Collection*, and perhaps the most worthy too, is that Admirable, or as some of the Ancients have called it, that \* *wonderful Epistle of S. Clement to the Corinthians*; and which he wrote not in his own Name, but in the Name of the *whole Church of Rome* to them. An *Epistle* so highly esteem'd by the Primitive Church, that we are told it was wont to be publicly read in the † *Assemblies* of it: And if we may credit one of the most ancient || *Collections* of the *Canon of Scripture*, was placed among the Sacred and Inspired Writings. Nor is it any small Evidence of the Value which in those days was put upon this *Epistle*, that in the only Copy, which for ought we know, at this day remains of it, we find it to have been written in the same \* *Volume* with the Books of the *New Testament*: And which seems to confirm what was before observed concerning it; that it was heretofore wont to be read in the *Congregations*, together with the *Holy Scriptures* of the *Apostles* and *Evangelists*.

\* Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. III. cap. 16.

† Idem, lib. III. cap. 12.

|| Canon. Apostol. Can. ult.

\* MS. Alexan.

2. **B**UT of the *Epistle* it self, I shall take occasion to speak more particularly by and by. It will now be more proper to enquire a little into the *Author* of it; and consider when, and upon what occasion it was written by him.

3. **A**ND

3. AND first for what concerns the Person who wrote this *Epistle*; it is no small Commendation which the *Holy Ghost* by *S. Paul* has left us of him; *Phil. iv. 3.* Where the *Apostle* mentions him not only as his Fellow-Labourer in the Work of the Gospel; but as one whose Name was written in the Book of Life. A Character, which if we will allow our Saviour to be the Judge, far exceeds that of the highest Power and Dignity. And who therefore when his Disciples began to rejoyce upon the account of that Authority which he had bestow'd upon them, insomuch that even the Devils were subject unto them; *Luke x. 17.* tho' he seem'd to allow that there was a just matter of Joy in such an extraordinary Power, yet bade them not to Rejoyce so much in this, that those Spirits were subject unto them; but rather, says he, Rejoyce that your Names are written in the Book of Life.

4. IT is indeed insinuated by a late very \* Learned Critick, as if this were not that *Clement* of whom we are now discoursing, and whose *Epistle* to the *Corinthians* I have here subjoyn'd. But besides that, he himself confesses, that the Person of whom *S. Paul* there speaks was a *Roman*; both † *Eusebius* and *Epiphanius*, and *S. Hierome* expressly tell us that the *Clement* there meant, was the same that was afterwards *Bishop* of *Rome*:

\* Grot. Annor.  
in *Phil. iv. 3.*  
† *Euseb. Hist.*  
*Eccles. lib. III.*  
*cap. 12.*  
*Epiph. lib. I.*  
*Adv. Carpocr.*  
*Hieronim. de*  
*Script. Eccles.*  
*Et Comment.*  
*in loc. Item*  
*lib. I. adv. Jo-*  
*vin. Phoriti*  
*Cod. Tmem.*  
113, &c.



Of St. Clement's First Epistle

Not do we read of any Other to whom either the *Character* there mentioned, of being the *Fellow-Labourer* of that *Apostle*, or the *Elogy* given of having *his Name written in the Book of Life*, could so properly belong as to him; and whom therefore the generality of Learned Men both of the ancient and present times, without scruple conclude to have been referr'd to in that Passage.

5. I SHALL not say any thing of what is reported by \* Some concerning his Noble Birth and Family; of his Studies at *Athens*; and of the occasion and manner of his Conversion to Christianity; which they tell us, was wrought by *S. Peter*, whom he met with *Barnabas* at *Casarea*; And who there first declared to him the Doctrine of Christ, and inclined him to a good Opinion of it. All which is very uncertain, and justly doubted of by many. I shall chuse rather to observe that whatever his Condition was before he became a Christian, he was held in no small Reputation after: But merited such a Character from the Ancient Fathers, as is hardly given to any, besides the *Apostles*. Nay some of them doubt not in plain terms to call him an \* *Apostle*; and tho *S. Hierome* durst not go so far as that, yet he gives him another Title but little short of it; † he tells us that he was an *Apostolical Man*, and as ‖ *Ruffinus* adds *almost an Apostle*.

6. TO

\* Vid. Eucher. Lugd. de Contempt. Mundi, & Chron. Albert. Stad. inter Testimonium à Junio Cicerone.

\* Clem. Alex. Strom. lib. IV.  
† Hieron. in Isaiam, c. 52.  
‡ De Adult. lib. Originis.

6. TO declare more particularly how he spent the first part of his Life after his Conversion is neither necessary to the Design I have now in hand, nor can any certain Account be given of it. Only as we are told in the general, that he was *S. Peter's* Disciple, so it may not be improbable that for some time he attended his Motions, and was subject to his direction.

7. BUT whatever he was, or wherever he laboured before, in this I think Antiquity is absolutely agreed, that he at last came to be *Bishop of Rome*; and was placed in that See by the express direction of one, or both the *Apostles*, *S. Peter* and *S. Paul*: Tho' whom he succeeded, or at what time to fix his entrance on that great Charge, is a Point that I suppose will never be agreed upon among Learned Men. If any could have settled this matter beyond Dispute, it had without question been done by

\* those of our own Nation, who as they have the latest searched with all possible Diligence into it, so never were there any better qualified for the determination of it. But as their mutual || Disagreement, after all their Endeavours to fix this Point, shews that one of them must have been mistaken; so I doubt not but it will sufficiently satisfy all such as shall consider the high Character they

\* Pearson Dissert. de Success. prim. RR. PP. cum Append. Hen. Dodwelli. Pearson. dissert. Posthum. Cap. V. Num. 7. || Dodwelli Dissert. singul. Cap. XV. pag. 227.

have so justly obtain'd both by their Learning and Judgment in these kind of Disquisitions, that they are Points not to be determin'd; and that he who shall do the best upon them, may only be said to have made a good Guess, in a Subject too hard for any at this distance to decide ||.

|| Dodwell.  
Dissert. singul.  
Cap. XI. p. 151.

8. NOR is there any less Controversie among Learned Men concerning the Death of *S. Clement*, than there has been about the Order and Time of his Succession to his Bishoprick. That he lived in expectation of Martyrdom, and was ready to have undergone it, should it have pleased God to have called him

\* *Clem. Epistle* to it, the \* *Epistle* we are now speaking of, sufficiently shews us. But that he did glorifie God by those particular Sufferings which some have pretended, is I confess to me a matter of some doubt.

For, first; It must be acknowledged that

† *De Adulte-* † *Ruffinus* is one of the first Authors we  
*rat. Lib. Orig.* have that speaks of him as a Martyr. Nei-

|| *Hist. Ecclef.* ther || *Eusebius*, (who is usually very exact  
*Lib. III. c. 34.* in his Observation of such things;) nor

any of the Fathers yet nearer his time, as *Irenaeus*, *Clemens Alexandrinus*, *Tertulian*, &c. take any notice of it. And for the Account which some others have yet more lately given us of the manner of his Death, besides that in some parts of it it is altogether fabulous; it is not improbable

probable, but that as our Learned

\* Mr. *Dodwell* has observed the first rise of it may have been owing to their confounding *Flavius Clemens* the Roman Consul, with *Clement* Bishop of Rome: Who did indeed † suffer Martyrdom for the Faith about the Time of which they speak; and some other parts of whose Character, such as his Relation to the Emperour, and Banishment into Pontus, they manifestly ascribe to him.

\* *Dodwel* Ad. dit. ad Cap. VI. Dissert. Posthum. Pearson. Num. 22. pag. 215.

† Vid. *Euseb. Chron. An<sup>o</sup> 97.* Et in *Euseb. Annot. Scalig. p. 205. b.* *Euseb. Hist. Eccles. Lib. III. cap. 18.*

9. HOWEVER seeing \* *Eusebius* refers his Death to the third Year of *Trajan* famous for the Persecution of the Church, and may thereby seem to insinuate that *Clement* also then suffered among the rest; and that † *Simeon Metaphrastes* has given a long and particular Account of his Condemnation to the Mines first, and then of his Death following thereupon: As I shall not determine any thing against it, so they who are desirous to know what is usually said concerning the Passion of this Holy Man, may abundantly satisfy their Curiosity in this particular, from the accurate Collection of Dr. *Cave* in the Life of this Saint; and which is too long to be transcribed into the present Discourse.

\* *Euseb. Hist. Eccles. Lib. III. cap. 34.*

† *Apud Cotel. Patr. Apostol. Tom. I.*

10. AND this may suffice to have been observed in short concerning *S. Clement* himself: As for the *Epistle*  
we

## Of St. Clement's First Epistle

we are now speaking of to the *Corinthians*, I have already taken notice how great a Value was put upon it in the most Primitive Ages of the Church, and what a mighty Commendation has been left us of it, by the Writers of those Times. Nor indeed does it at all come short of the highest Praises which they have given to it; being a Piece compos'd with such an admirable Spirit of Love and Charity; Of Zeal towards God, and of Concern for the Church of Christ; Of the most excellent Exhortations deliver'd with the greatest Plainness and Simplicity of Speech, and yet press'd many times with such moving Eloquence too; that I cannot imagine what could have been desired in such an *Epistle* more proper for the End for which it was compos'd; What could have been written more becoming an *Apostolical* Age, and the Pen of one of the most eminent *Bishops* of it.

11. BUT that it may be the better understood by those who shall now think fit to peruse it; there are a few things which it will be necessary for me in this place to observe concerning it.

12. AND the first is, the *Occasion* that was given for the writing of this Epistle. For however we have no particular Account what it was, yet may we from  
from

from the Subject of it, give a very probable Guess at it. When *St. Paul* wrote his First Epistle to the *Corinthians*, the two great things that seem'd to have especially called for it were the *Divisions* of that Church upon the account of their Teachers, and of their vain Conceit of their own Spiritual Gifts; and the great *Mistake* that was getting in among them concerning the *Nature* of the *future Resurrection*. But tho' the Apostle therefore by his Writing and Authority did for the present put a stop to the One, and set them right as to the Other; yet it seems after his Death, they began again to fall not only into the same Contentions, but into the same Errour too, that had given them so much trouble before.

13. NOW this gave occasion to *St. Clement* to write the present Epistle to them: In which having first taken notice of the Rise of those new Seditions that were broke out among them, and exhorted them to a Christian Composure of them; he in the next place goes on by many Arguments to establish the undoubted Truth and Certainty of the future Resurrection; which was the other thing in which *St. Paul* had before observed them to have been greatly and dangerously mistaken.

15. THIS

## Of St. Clement's First Epistle

15. THIS then was the Occasion, and is the main Subject and Design of the following Epistle. But now what time it was written, it is not so easie to determine. \* *Junius* supposes it was written by St. *Clement* in the Name of the Church of Rome, about two Years before his Martyrdom; and that from the Place of his Banishment: Which also seems to have been the Opinion of our Learned † Mr. *Burton* in his Notes on this Epistle. † *Baronius* places it some six or seven Years sooner, about the twelfth Year of *Domitian*: And with him \* *Cotelerius* agrees; only he supposes the Persecution was then drawing towards an end; it being otherwise unlikely that such an Embassy could have been sent from Rome with the Epistle, as by the Close of it we find there was. But † Mr. *Dodwell* with much greater probability, thinks it to have been written yet sooner; viz. immediately after the end of *Nero's* Persecution: And to that refers those Troubles complain'd of by St. *Clement* in the very † beginning of his Epistle, and in which he :: elsewhere speaks of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*, as some of the latest Instances of any that had died for the Sake of their Religion.

16. NOW that which seems yet more to countenance this Opinion is, that St. *Clement* in \* another part of his Epistle

\* Vid. in Annot. in Epist. Clem. in princip.

† Annot. 2. p. 41.

‡ Baron. Annal. ad Ann. XCV. Num. 1.

\* Coteler. Nor. in Clem. Epist. pag. 82.

† Dodwell. Append. ad Cap. VI. Differt. 2. Pearson, pag. 219. Num. 24.

† Epistle, c. I.

p. 9.

· Ibid. c. V.

p. 15.

\* Chap. XLI. p. 56, 57.

pistle speaks of the Temple Service not only as still continuing, but as being in such a state as necessarily supposes all things to be yet in Peace and Quiet at *Jerusalem*. And from whence that † Learned Man with great Reason concludes, that this Epistle must have been written somewhat before the XII. year of *Nero*, in which the Jewish Wars first brake out. Let us add to this, that in the Close of this Epistle we find mention made of

† Dodwel. loc. sup. cit.

\* *Fortunatus* as the Person whom the Church of *Corinth* had probably sent to *Rome* with an account of their Disasters; and by whom together with the four Delegates of their own, the Roman Church returned this Epistle to the *Corinthians*. Now *Fortunatus* is expressly said by St. *Paul* to have been an old Disciple in his time; insomuch that he tells us he was the first Fruits of *Achaia*, 1 Cor. xvi. 15. And therefore we must conclude that this Epistle could not have been written so late as some would have it, seeing this Man was not only still alive, but in a Condition of undertaking so great a Journey as from *Corinth* to *Rome*: For from thence it is most likely he was sent with the Letter of that Church to *Rome*; and so became the Bearer of this Epistle, which was written in the Name of the Church of *Rome* in answer to it.

\* Epist. chap. lix. pag. 78.



17. I CONCLUDE then, that this Epistle was written shortly after the End of the Persecution under *Nero*, \* about the LXIV. year of Christ: And that, as the learned Defender of this Period supposes, in the Vacancy of the See of *Rome*; before the Promotion of *St. Clement* to the Government of it.

\* Dodwel. loc. sup. cit. Add. the Cave Hist. Litterar. in Clement. pag. 18.

18. BUT this is not yet all: There is still a difficulty remaining, and that of much greater Consequence than any I have hitherto mentioned; namely, Whether the Epistle we now have be, after all, the Genuine Epistle of *St. Clement*, so much applauded by the Ancients; so long look'd upon as lost to us; and so lately discover'd in the present Age? And this I mention, not that I think there is any real Occasion offer'd to incline us to doubt of it; but because I find there are † some who would seem still to make a Question of it.

† Callovius  
Bibl. illustr.  
N. T. To. 2.  
Exam. præf.  
Grot. in 1 Cor.  
p. 250. Voc.  
tius Paralip. p.  
1167, &c. Vid.  
Tentzel. Exercit. select.  
Exerc. 2. de Phœnice.

19. AND here, I would in the first place ask these wary Men, what Marks they can propose whereby to distinguish the true Work of any ancient Writer, from a false and supposititious, that do's not occur in the present Piece?

\* Vid. Callov.  
Oper. Socin.  
To. 2 pag. 487.

20. THAT \* *St. Clement* wrote an Epistle to the *Corinthians*; that he wrote it

it on the same Occasion that we find expressed in this we now have ; that this Epistle was of great Reputation, so as to be publickly read in the Churches heretofore ; All this the Authority of the Ancient Fathers will not suffer us to doubt. That the Copy we now have of this Epistle was taken from the End of a Manuscript of the New Testament, written as is supposed about the time of the *first General Council of Nice*, within little more than Two Hundred Years after *St. Clement's Death* ; and at the very time that it was yet wont to be so read in the Churches ; both the || Learned Editor of it assures us, and the Manuscript its self sufficiently declares. Now how can it be supposed, that an Epistle so famous in those days ; so well known to every Christian at that time, when the very Copy was written, which we at this day have of it ; should have been alone concealed from the Transcriber of this Manuscript Bible, and a spurious piece started up to supply the place of it ?

|| Vid. Jun.  
Præfat. in E-  
pist. Clem.

21. NOR is this yet all: For if we have not now the true Copy of this Epistle, it is manifest that then neither had the Ancient Fathers of those first Ages, a true Copy of it. \* For the Passages which they have quoted are the same in our Epistle; and so they too were imposed upon, no less than we are, in this Matter.

\* Vid. Baron.  
Annal. Anno:  
95. Num. iii.  
&c.

## Of St. Clement's First Epistle

ter. And can this be rationally supposed? Can we think that those great Men, and diligent Searchers into Antiquity, were ignorant of an Epistle, not only in every Bodies Hand, but almost in every Bodies Memory through their constant reading and hearing of it?

22. YET farther: Let me ask those who call in Question the Credit of this excellent piece; what do they find in it either unworthy of St. *Clement*, or disagreeable to those times in which we pretend it to have been written? Certainly, if this be a counterfeit piece, it was not only exceedingly well done; but without any design to serve any party or interest in it: There being nothing in the whole Epistle that might not have become as excellent an Age, and as Holy a Man, as that Age, and that Man were, in which we have all the Reason in the World to believe it was composed.

23. BUT what then is it that makes these learned Men so unwilling to own this Epistle to be the Genuine Work of that *Holy Bishop* to whom we ascribe it? It is in short this; \*That the Author of this Epistle, in proof of the possibility of a future Resurrection, asserts the Story of the *Phoenix's* reviving out of its own Ashes; which is not only a thing false in its self, but unworthy of such a Person as St. *Clement* to mention. 24.

\* Tenzelius  
Dissert. select.  
de Phœnice, p.  
37. Et Num.  
xvi. pag 45.

24. NOW not to say any thing as to this Matter, (1st.) That || *Photius* a severe Critick of the ancient Fathers, who first started it as a fault in *St. Clement* that he made use of this as a true Observation, which it seems the Other look'd upon as a meer Fable, yet did not think it any Objection against the Authority of this Epistle, which he nevertheless acknowledged to be *St. Clements*: To pass by, (2dly;) That the Generality of the Ancient Fathers have made use of the very same instance, in proof of the same Point; as the † learned *Junius* has particularly shewn in his Notes upon this Passage; and the Authority of whose Works no one yet ever called in question upon that account: I would only ask, (3dly;) What if *St. Clement* really believed the Account which he here gives us of this Matter? That there was such a Bird; and that he did revive out of the Cinders of the Body before burnt? Where was the great harm either in giving Credit to such a Wonder; or believing it, to make such a use, as he here do's, of it?

|| Photii Biblioth. Tmem. CXXVI. P. 306.

† Tertullian. Origen. Cyril. Hierosolym. Euseb. Greg. Naz. Epiphanius, Synchus, Hieronym. Lactantius, &c. Jun. Noræ in Clem pag. 34.

25. THE Truth is, Whosoever shall consider both the general Credit which this Story had in those days; and the particular Accident which fell out not long before the time that this Epistle

\* Tacitus An-  
ral. libr. vi.  
num. 28.

was written to confirm their Belief of it,  
(And of which one of the most judicious  
of all the \* *Roman* Historians has given  
us a large Account;) I mean of the *Phæ-*  
*nix* that was said to have come into *E-*  
*gypt* a little after the Death of Christ,  
and to have given occasion, of much  
Discourse to the most Learned Men, both  
of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, concerning  
the very Miracle of which St. *Clement*  
here speaks; Will find it to have been  
no such strange thing in this Holy Man to  
have suffer'd himself to be led away  
with the Common Opinion; and to have  
believed what so many learned Men did  
among the † *Jews* and ‖ *Gentiles*, no  
less than among the Christians, viz. That  
God was pleased to give to the World  
this great *Earnest* and *Type* of a future  
*Resurrection*; and to silence thereby the  
Cavils of such as should pretend, what  
we know the generality of the wise Men  
of the World did, that it was impos-  
sible for God to effect such a Restitu-  
tion.

† Vid. Annot.  
Edit. Oxon.  
in loc. Bochar-  
tus Hierozöic.  
in Phœnice,  
&c. apud Tent-  
zel. p. 18. 19.  
‖ Vid. Ed. Oxon.  
loc. cit. Adde  
Annot. Schotti  
in Photium,  
Tmem. cxxvi.  
pag. 305.

26. BUT I insist too long on so  
trifling an Objection, however magni-  
fied by some Men; and may, I think, from  
what I have already said conclude; that  
if this be indeed, as \* they confess it  
is, the greatest ground they have to call  
in question the Credit of this Epistle;  
there is then nothing that ought to move  
any

\* Aliis argu-  
mentis, tum]  
HOC IMPR-  
MIS. Tentzel.  
D. de c. cit.  
pag. 33.

any considering Man to entertain the least Doubt or Scruple concerning it.

27. THERE are indeed two other Exceptions which \* *Photius* has made a- \* *Phoriii Bibl.* gainst St. *Clement* upon the Account of the Epistle before us, which yet he look'd upon as unquestionably his; the One for that he speaks in it of the *Worlds beyond the Ocean*; the Other, in that he seems not to have Written so honourably as was fitting, of the *Divinity of our Blessed Saviour*. But as the latter of these is but a meer Cavil against this Holy Man, who in his Other Epistle expressly asserts his Divine Nature, and even in this speaks in such a manner of him, as shews him to be much more than a meer Creature: So in the former he said nothing but what was agreeable both to the Notions and Language of the times in which he lived; when it was common to call our *British Isles* another World; or as St. *Clement* here stiles them the *Worlds beyond the Ocean*.

28. AND these I think are the chief Exceptions that have been at any time raised against the following Epistle; and which however insisted upon in these latter days, yet did not hinder the first and best Ages of the Church, when Men were less curious, but much more pious, from putting a very great Value upon it.

## Of St. Clement's First Epistle

Nor will they I suppose have any more weight with any serious and ingenuous Mind now: Or hinder him from esteeming it a very great Blessing to our present Times, that a Work so highly esteemed among the Ancient Fathers, but so long, and as it was justly feared, irrecoverably lost to these latter Ages, was at last so happily found out, for the Encrease and Confirmation both of our Faith and Piety.

29. NOW the manner of its Discovery and Publication was this. It happen'd about the beginning of the present Age, that *Cyril* Patriarch of *Alexandria* being removed from thence to *Constantinople*, brought along with him a great Treasure of Books to that place. Among the rest he had a very ancient *Manuscript* Copy both of the *Septuagint Old*, and of the *New Greek Testament*; written but little more than three hundred years after Christ. \* This he sent, as the most valuable Present that he was Master of, to our late Royal Sovereign King *Charles* the First, by Sir *Thomas Roe*, his Majesty's Ambassadour at that time at the Port. Being thus brought into *England*, and placed in the *Royal Library* at *St. James's*, Mr. *Patrick Young* the learned Keeper of the King's Library at that time, discover'd this Epistle, with part of another, at the End

\* Vid. Prefat.  
Jun. in Edit.  
Oxon. 1633.

of the *New Testament*; and was thereupon commanded by his Majesty to publish it for the benefit of the World. This he accordingly did, with a *Latin Translation*, and *Notes* at *Oxford*, *Anno 1633*: It was not † long after that a very † *Anno 1647.*  
 learned Man, and a great Master of *Lord. 4to.*  
 the Greek Tongue, Mr. *William Burton*, translated it into *English*, and publish'd it very accurately, and with new Annotations of his own upon it. This I had not seen till the first Sheets of the present Edition were sent to the Press; Nor had I any other knowledge either of that or of the *Author*, than what I found in the Accounts given by our Reverend \* *Dr. Cave*, and the late Monsieur \* *Colomesius* of the One, and by our laborious Antiquary † *Mr. A. Wood* of the Other; in his useful Collection of the Lives and Writings of our Modern Authors. And though I believe whosoever shall take the pains to compare the two Translations together, will find them generally agreeing as to the Sense; yet there will otherwise appear such manifest Differences between them, as may abundantly satisfy any indifferent Person, that I have truly translated it from the Original Greek, and not Revised only Mr. *Burton's* Edition of it.

\* Edit. Colomesii lectioni, Cave. Hist. literar. in Clem. † Athenæ Oxon. 2 part. pag. 137, 138.



## C H A P. III.

Of the Epistle of St. Polycarp  
to the Philippians.

*Of the Time when St. Polycarp wrote this Epistle. The Reason of its being placed before the Epistles of Ignatius. That St. Polycarp wrote several other pieces : Yet nothing of his now remaining but only this Epistle. Whether this Epistle has been interpolated, as those of Ignatius were ? The latter part of it vindicated against the Exceptions of Monsieur Daillé, and some Others. Of the Translation of it into our own Language by Dr. Cave ; and of the present Edition of it.*

I. **T**HE next Piece that follows in the present Collection, is the Epistle of St. Polycarp to the Philippians. In placing of which I have follow'd the Example, not so much of our most Reverend \* Archbishop Usher, as of St. Polycarp himself : Though in the Order of Time the Epistles of Ignatius ought to have had the precedence ; St. Polycarp not writing this Letter to the Philippians till about the time that that glorious Martyr suffer'd for the Faith

\* Edit. Polycarp. & Ignat. Oxon. Anno 1644.

Faith of Christ ; as from several Passages in the Epistle it self may plainly be made appear.

2. FOR first ; Having in his ix<sup>th</sup> Chapter exhorted the *Philippians* to obey the Word of Righteousness, and to exercise all Patience after the Examples of those Holy Men whom they had seen among them ; he particularly instances in \* *Ignatius* as one of them. Now the † *Acts* of the *Martyrdom* of that Holy Martyr tell us, that the time when they beheld his Patience set forth before their Eyes was, when he passed by them in Chains to *Rome* in order to his being cast to the wild Beasts, according to the Sentence pronounced upon him by the Emperour *Trajan* : By consequence that this Epistle must have been written some time after his Condemnation.

\* Epist. of Polycarp, Numb. ix. pag. 93.  
† Mart. of Ign. Numb. x. pag. 225.

3. BUT St. *Polycarp* goes yet farther ; and in the next Words supposes, that *Ignatius* might have been dead at the time that he wrote to them. For enforcing his Exhortation to them to follow the Examples of *Ignatius*, and the rest of those excellent Men whom he there names, he subjoyns ; *Being confident of this, that all these have not run in vain, but in Faith and Righteousness, and are gone to the place that was due to them from the LORD, with whom also they*  
b 4 *suffer'd.*

## Of the Epistle of St. Polycarp

suffered. For they loved not this present World, but him who died, and was raised again by God for us. In which words he evidently implies that *Ignatius* too, as well as the rest of those whom he there mentions was by this time gone to the Place that was due to him from the LORD, upon the Account of his Sufferings; and by consequence had finished his Martyrdom.

|| Epist. of Polycarp, numb. xiv. pag. 98.

4. IT was then about the time of *Ignatius's* Death that *S. Polycarp* wrote this Epistle to the *Philippians*. And yet that if this Holy Man had suffer'd, it was but a very little time that he had done so, is clear from another Passage of the same || Epistle: Where he desires the *Philippians* to send him word *what they had heard with any Certainty concerning Ignatius, and those that went to Rome with him*. And from whence it appears, that though he supposed that *Ignatius* by that time might have suffer'd, yet he had not received any certain Account of it, but was still to learn the Manner and Circumstances of his Passion.

5. NOW this will lead us to a yet more exact Conjecture of the time of *St. Polycarp's* writing the following Epistle; viz. that it must have been just about the time of *St. Ignatius's* Death: It being no way probable that had *Ignatius*

*tius* been any long time dead, so great a Bishop, and so dear a Friend of his as St. *Polycarp* was, should have been still to learn the Certainty of it.

6. AND this may serve, by the way, not only to fix the Time when this Epistle was written; but also to shew how groundless the Exception of those \* Men is against the Authority of it, who pretend to find out a Contradiction between the two Passages I have now mentioned: And would from thence infer either the utter Falseness of this whole Epistle; or at least conclude that this latter part of it is none of *Polycarp's*, but added by some latter hand to give the greater Credit to the *Epistles* of St. *Ignatius*, which they are resolved by all means to reject as none of his. For indeed were not Men willing to be contentious, where is the Contradiction they so much boast of between the two Places I have before alledged? Is it that in the former of them he sets before them the Sufferings of St. *Ignatius*, and exhorts them to follow the Example of his Patience? But 'tis evident the Sufferings he there speaks of were those which the *Philippians* had seen in him. The Weight of his Chains; the Hardships of his Journey; the Rudeness of the Souldiers that guarded him; and of which the || blessed Martyr him-  
\* Dallæus in Pseudepigr. cap. xxxii. pa. 428. Larroque Observat. in Pearson, p. 69.  
|| Ignat. Epist. to the Romans, cap. v. p. 163.

self complains in one of his Epistles ; and to add no more, the Expectation of that cruel Death he was suddainly to undergo.

\* Vid. Dal-  
lazum & Lar-  
roque loc. cit.

7. BUT I suppose the Contradiction lies in what follows ; that in \* one place he speaks of him as if he had already suffered ; and yet in the other desires the *Philippians* to send him word what they heard of him. Now what is there in all this that does not very well agree together ? St. *Polycarp*, either by the Computation of the Arrival of *Ignatius* at *Rome* ; or by the Consideration of the Solemn Festival that was wont at that time to be held there ; and at which it was usual to exhibit such kind of Spectacles to the People ; or it may be, lastly, from the Accounts which he had received of the Holy Martyr from some of those that were with him ; did suppose, nay if you will, did not doubt but that *Ignatius* was dead when he wrote his Epistle to the *Philippians*. Yet having not hitherto received any certain Account of it, and being not sure whether he had suffered or no ; or if he had, how he had been treated by his Enemies, and how he had behaved himself in his last Encounter with the Beasts ; desires the *Philippians*, who were much nearer to *Rome* than he was, and might therefore very probably have heard much later from thence than  
he

he had done, to send him a certain Account of what they knew as to this matter. What is there in this, I do not say that looks like a Contradiction, but that is not very Natural: And particularly most becoming the Love and Friendship of the Blessed *Polycarp* towards him concerning whom he so diligently enquired? I am sure \* *Photius* who not only had read this Epistle, but transcribed this last Passage out of it, tho' as severe a Critick as any that have ever perused it since, saw no Contradiction in it to any thing that went before. Since if he had, he was not of a Humour to have let it pass, without making some Reflection or other upon it.

\* *Photius* Bibl.  
Tmem. cxxvi.  
pag. 305.

8. LET me add yet more, that neither could those see the Contradiction here pretended, who in our present times would have been as forward as any to have made use of it to the Disadvantage of this Epistle, had they had but the least Grounds to do. I shall instance only in Two; the first, the late Learned Divine of *Leyden*, † *Montieur* † *Proleg. ad*  
*le Moyne*: Who tho' he judged the Pas- Var. Sacr. in  
sage relating to St. *Ignatius's* Epistles, Polycarp.  
which was wanting in his Manuscript, to be abrupt, and would from thence argue against the Authority of it; yet has made no Reflection on the Words immediately following, and in which those  
others

Others will have the Contradiction to lie.

9. THE Other that I shall mention in Opposition to this Pretence, is a yet later Writer, \* *Ernestus Tentzelius*; who tho' no great Friend to this Epistle, which he supposes to have been *Corrupted*, no less than those of *Ignatius* were in the Antient Editions of them; yet utterly refuses to comply with this Objection, as not apprehending that there was the least Ground for it.

\* Exercit. Select. Exerc. IV. num. 42. pag. 157.

10. BUT to return from this Digression, in Answer to the Exception of two of the most Learned Adversaries of this Epistle, against the Credit of it: Tho' as I have now shewn, St. *Polycarp* wrote not to the *Philippians* till after the Death of St. *Ignatius*, and consequently this Epistle in order of time ought to have been placed after those which the other wrote immediately before it: Yet was it fit to give this the Precedency in the following Collection, both as containing a most proper Introduction to the Epistles of *Ignatius*; and as having in all probability been first sent in the same Order, by St. *Polycarp* to the *Philippians*.

11. FOR thus we find that Holy Man speaking to them in the † *Close* of his Letter:

† Polycarp. Epist. num. xiii. p. 97.

Letter : *The Epistles of Ignatius which he wrote unto us, together with what others of his have come to our Hands, we have sent unto you according to your Order ; which are subjoyn'd to this Epistle.* So both \* *Eusebius* transcribed it out of the Original Greek ; and so we find it in our Antient † *Latin Version*, which is all that remains of that Part of this Epistle. And from whence our Learned Archbishop :: *Usher* with great reason concludes, that St. *Polycarp* caused the Copies of St. *Ignatius's* Epistles to be immediately added at the end of his own ; and sent them to the *Philippians* together with it.

\* Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. cap. 36.

† Apud Usher. p. 24.

:: Dissert. de Ignat. Epist. cap. ii.

12. AND this perhaps may have been one great means of preserving this Epistle of St. *Polycarp* from the Fate that has attended all the rest of his Writings. For being wont to be transcribed together with those of *Ignatius*, and commonly placed at the front of them ; they mutually help'd to secure one another : Whilst the rest of his Epistles, for want of being thus collected together, have for a long time been so utterly lost to the World, that neither † *Photius*, nor St \* *Hierome*, nor ‖ *Eusebius*, nor even *Irenæus* himself, the Disciple of St. *Polycarp*, seems to have had any particular Catalogue of them.

† Photii Bibl. Tmei. cxxvi. p. 305.

\* De Script. Eccles. in Polycarp.

‖ Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. IV.



13. INDEED for what concerns the last of these, I mean \* *Irenaeus*; he tells us that this great Man did write several *Epistles*, not only to the Neighbouring *Churches*, to confirm them in the Faith; but even to particular Persons, for their Instruction and Admonition. But what they were, or to whom they were sent, neither does he say, nor does *Eusebius*, where he speaks of the Writings of *St. Polycarp*, mention any more, than that *Epistle* to the *Philippians*, of which we are now discoursing. And tho' a few

\* *Iren. Epist. ad Florin. apud Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. V. c. 20.*

† *S. Maximus Prolog. in Dionys. Areop. Suidas in Polycarp. &c. Vid. Usserii Dissert. de Script. Ign. p. 4. s. Tenzel. Exerc. Select. de Polyc.*

num. xxxvi, xxxvii.

\* *Ad lib. iii. c. 3. Irenzi.*

† *Lond. 1647. P. 31.*

|| *Usserius Annot. loc. cit. p. 72, 73.*

\* *Victor Capuanus, he lived anno 545.*

14. NOR shall I except here those *Fragments* lately published by \* *Fevardentius* out of *Victor Capuanus*; and reprinted by Bishop † *Usher* in his *Appendix* to *Ignatius*. In which as there are some things which neither Father || *Hallouix*, nor our Learned || *Usher* could approve of, as written by *St. Polycarp*; so the Distance of \* him who was the first Collector of them from the time of that *Blessed Martyr*; and the manifest Proofs he has on other Occasions given of

of his little Care and Judgment in distinguishing the Works of the *Antient Fathers* who lived any long time before him ; not to say any thing of the Passages themselves ascribed to St. \* *Polycarp*, but little agreeable to the *Apostolical Age* : All these Considerations have justly restrained Learned Men from giving any great Credit to these *Fragments*, or from receiving them as belonging in any wise to so antient an Author.

\* Cave Hist. li-  
ter. in Polyc.  
pag. 28.  
Le Moyné  
Prol. ad Var.  
Sacr. Tenzel.  
Exercit. Select.  
IV. de Polyc.  
num. xlix.  
Du Pin. Bibl.  
Eccl. in Poly-  
carp. &c.

15. BUT whatever becomes of these *Fragments*, certain it is that the *Epistle* which I have here subjoyn'd is the Genuine Work of this Holy Man ; and worthy of that great Character which Antiquity has given of it. Even Monsieur † *Daillé* himself confesses that excepting only the *Glose* of it, against which it was necessary for him to declare himself ; there is *nothing in it that either ought to offend any, or that may be thought unworthy of Polycarp*. But \* *le Moyné* goes yet farther ; he declares that he does not see how any one can entertain the least Suspicion against it : That there is not perhaps any Work extant, that has more certain Evidences of its being Genuine, than this : In short, that if it shall be lawful to doubt of this, there will be no Monument of Antiquity left which we may not as well call in Question, and reject as spurious.

† De Scriptis  
Ignarian. cap.  
xxxii.

\* Prol. ad Var.  
Sacr. Tom. I.  
in Polycarp.

\* Vid. apud  
Tentzel. de  
Polycarp. Dis-  
sert. IV. num.  
41. pag. 157.

16. INDEED so general is the reception which \* Learned Men on all sides have given to this Epistle, that I might well omit any further Discourse in Confirmation of the Credit and Authority of it. But yet seeing there have been two things started by some of late, if not utterly to destroy, yet at least to lessen the Reputation of this Piece; I will consider in short what may fairly be replied to both their Exceptions.

† Exercit. Se-  
lect. Exerc. IV.  
num. 42, &c.  
47.

17. NOW the first is that of † *Tentzelius*, in his *Exercitation* upon this *Epistle*: Who tho' he allows it to be undoubtedly Genuine, yet supposes it to have been corrupted by the same hand that we confess \* did corrupt the *Epistles* of *Ignatius*, about DC Years after Christ. But to this I reply; 1<sup>st</sup>. That it is allow'd that there is nothing in this *Epistle* that may give any just Grounds for the Suspicion of any such Fraud as this: It being acknowledged even by Mons<sup>r</sup> *Daillé* himself, one of the greatest Adversaries of it, to be an *Epistle* in all respects worthy of St. *Polycarp*, excepting only in the *Glose* of it, which I shall more particularly consider by and by. So that either we have then this *Epistle* pure and uncorrupted as it was first written; or at least we have it so little prejudiced by any Alterations that may have been made in it, that there is no-  
thing

\* Usserius Dis-  
sert. de Epist.  
Ignat. cap. VI.  
pag. 33.

thing in the *Epistle*, as it now is, dangerous in Point either of Faith or Manners; or that might not have well enough been written by St. *Polycarp*. But now this was not the Case with the *Epistles* of \* *St. Ignatius*; which not only laboured under many Impertinencies unbecoming the Character of that Great Man, but was fraught with many things that were altogether fabulous: Nay if we may credit Arch-Bishop † *Usher*, † *Ibid.* c. XV. had some Passages in them that tended to corrupt the very Faith of Christ, in one of the most considerable Points of it.

\* *Vid. Dissert. Usher. c. X, XI. p. 63, &c.*

† *Ibid.* c. XV. p. 103.

18. BUT Secondly, That the *Epistles* of *St. Ignatius* had been corrupted, was evident from || Disagreement of the Copies which we usually had of them, from the Quotations of the Ancient Fathers of the first Five Centuries out of them. Now this was a most unquestionable Demonstration of their having been changed from what they were in those first Ages in which those Fathers lived: And accordingly proved to be so, when the old *Latin Version* of Bishop *Usher* first, and then the *Florentine Greek Edition* of the Learned *Isaac Vossius*, came to be compared with those Editions that had before been extant of them. But neither does this Exception appear against the present *Epistle*, which agrees with what

|| *Usherius Dissert. I. I. c. 1. p. 12.*

\* Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. III. c. 36. Photius Bibl. Tmem. cxxvi. p. 305. is quoted both by \* *Eusebius* and Others out of it; and thereby clearly shews our present Copy to be sincere and un-corrupted.

19. SEEING then there is nothing but a mere Conjecture for the Depravation of this Epistle, and such just Reason to conclude that there is no good Foundation for it; to be sure none that may compare with the Arguments we have against it: I think we may conclude, that for any thing yet appears to the contrary, we not only have the Genuine Epistle of St. *Polycarp*, but that Epistle free from any designed Corruptions or Depravations of it.

\* Vid. Larroque Observ. in Vind. Pearson. p. 65, 66.

20. NOR is there any more, that I do not say there is much less Weight, in the other Supposal of Monsieur \* *Daille*, continued and aberted by his Learned Defender Monsieur *Larroque*, tho' without any more weight of Reason than what had been before fully answer'd by our most Learned and judicious Bishop *Pearson*: Namely; That this Epistle originally ended at the *Doxology* which we meet with Chapter the XII<sup>th</sup>, and that what follows concerning the *Epistles* of St. *Ignatius*, has been added to it by some latter hand. But now, what proof do they offer of this? What Authority have they to support such a Supposition?

This

This they pretend not to: All they have to say is, that the *Doxology* which we find there seems to imply that the *Epistle* originally went no farther; And that in what follows there is a flat Contradiction to what went before; the *Glose* of the *Epistle* speaking of *Ignatius* as if he were still alive, whom the true *Poly-carp* had before set forth to the *Philippians* as having *suffer'd*, and *been gone to the place that was prepared for him*.

21. AS for what concerns the latter of these Suggestions, I have already fully shewn how vain and groundless it is. Nor can we reasonably suppose that any one who designed to serve a turn by corrupting such an *Epistle* as this, would have been either so negligent as not once to read over the Piece he was about to make so considerable an Addition to; or having read it, would have been so foolish, as to have, without any need, subjoyn'd a Request to the *Philippians*, directly contrary to what the true *Poly-carp* had told them before; and which by consequence would be sure to discover the Fraud, and frustrate the Design of it.

22. SO little appearance of Reason is there in this Suggestion, which yet these Learned Men insist upon, as their main Argument against the latter part

## Of the Epistle of St. Polycarp

of this *Epistle*. As for the other Objection, which they bring against it, viz. that St. Polycarp must have concluded at the XII<sup>th</sup> Chapter, because of the Vow which he there makes for these to whom he wrote; I reply, first: That this is at the best but a very uncertain Guess; seeing it is notorious to all that have ever read the *Epistles* either of the *Apostles*, or those that followed after, that nothing is more common than to meet with such kind of Conclusions, not only in the end, but in the \* beginning, and † middle; in short, in all the parts of their *Epistles*. To look no farther than the *Epistle*, with which we have begun this Collection, of St. Clement to the *Corinthians*: How many of these sort of Stops may we find in the Progress of it? I am sure there are not less than seven or eight of them. But I suppose he would be thought very ridiculous who should therefore reject all that follow'd the first of these, as none of St. Clement's, but pieced on to the end of his *Epistle* by some other hand, merely because the *Doxology* seem'd to imply his having concluded there.

\* See 1 Tim.

i. 17.

† Ephel. iii.

20. Rom. xv.

33.

23. BUT to lay aside Conjectures, and proceed to that which will put a final end to this Difficulty; I observe, 2<sup>dly</sup>, That this Passage which these Men deny to be St. Polycarp's, and suppose to have

have been added to it by some latter hand, is expressly quoted by \* *Eusebius* \* *Euseb. Hist.* in his *Ecclesiastical History*, as a part of this *Epistle*. If therefore it be the Addition of some other hand, 'tis evident it was made to it before *Eusebius's* time, that is to say, within two Hundred Years after the time of *St. Polycarp's* writing of it; and whether this be probable we will now more particularly enquire. *Eccles. lib. iii. c. 36.*

24. FOR the better clearing of which I must observe, that this *Epistle* of *St. Polycarp*, like that of *St. Clement* foregoing, was for several Hundreds of Years wont to be publickly read in the Churches of *Asia*: So || *St. Jerome* expressly assures us; or as his Interpreter *Sophronius* renders him, in the Synod or Convention of *Asia*. By which a \* Learned Man supposes we are to understand some common Meetings of the Christians in those Parts, answerable to the like Assemblies of the Gentiles there; And that in these this *Epistle* was wont to be read to them. || *Hieron. de Script. in Polycarp.* \* *Le Moyne Prolegom. ad var. Sacr.*

25. HENCE † *Irenaeus* speaks of it as an *Epistle* that was in every Bodies hand; and obvious to be read by any, for the Benefit of their Faith and Manners. Which being so, it can hardly be supposed but that so inquisitive a Searcher into Antiquity as *Eusebius* was, must



# Of the Epistle of St. Polycarp

needs have been very well acquainted with it; and doubtless have had a true and genuine Copy of it. Seeing then he produces this Passage as a part of that *Epistle* which was generally received as Authentick in his Days; and that the *Epistle* its self being spread into all Hands, and publickly read in the *Eastern Churches* immediately after the Death of its great Author, could not have been corrupted or alter'd, but the Cheat must needs have been discover'd; of which yet we have not the least intimation in all Antiquity: I think it cannot be doubted but that this, as well as the rest of that *Epistle*, was written by St. Polycarp himself; and not added to his *Epistle* by some latter Hand, as is suggested, not only without all ground, but against such plain and un-answerable Evidence to the contrary.

26. HAVING said thus much in Vindication of this *Epistle*, and to clear it from those Prejudices that have of late been rais'd against it; it remains only for me to observe, that though the following *Translation* was truly made from the *Greek and Latin Copies* of it, set out by Bishop *Usher* first, and since reprinted by *Cotelerius* in his *Collection* of the *Apostolical Fathers*; yet is not this the first time that this *Epistle* has appear'd in our Language. For our most diligent and learned

Learned Country-man || Dr. *Cave*, h<sup>2</sup>. || Dr. *Cave's*  
 ving a just Respect to the Worth of a *Lives of the*  
 Piece so highly applauded among the An- *Apostolical Fa-*  
 cients, and so well deserving the Esteem *thers in St. Po-*  
 of all good Men; thought it would be *lycarp.*  
 no unuseful Digression to present to his  
 Reader so venerable a Monument of the  
 Primitive Church: And therefore sub-  
 joyn'd it intirely to his Account of the  
 Life of St. *Polycarp*, in a most accurate  
*English Translation* of it.

27. IT would no doubt have been  
 more to the *Readers* Satisfaction, to have  
 met with that *Translation* of this *Epistle*  
 here, than to find another which he  
 may have just reason to suppose can ne-  
 ver equal that which was finish'd by so  
 great a Hand. And indeed I could have  
 been glad to have render'd the following  
 Collection more considerable, by the  
 Reputation of a *Translation* made by so  
 eminent an Author. But however, as it  
 now is, I hope it may not be unacceptable  
 to the pious Peruser of it: Who, what-  
 ever other Defects he may find in it,  
 may yet, I am pretty confident, depend  
 upon the Exactness of the Translation;  
 seeing I perceive by an after Collation  
 of it, that it does not differ in any thing  
 that is material, from that of the Judi-  
 cious and Worthy Dr. *Cave*.

## C H A P. IV.

## Of the Epistles of St. Ignatius.

*Of the different Editions of St. Ignatius's Epistles: Which are here translated from that of Isaac Vossius, and according to the Enumeration made by Eusebius of them. The Authority of these Epistles vindicated, against the Objections raised of late against them. The Epistle to St. Polycarp one of those mentioned by Eusebius: The Exception against it taken from the Substance of the Epistle its self answer'd. A short Account of the following Translation of all of them.*

1. **B**EFORE I enter upon that Account which it will be fitting for me to give of the *Epistles* of St. Ignatius, (the next that follow in the present Collection;) it will be necessary for me to observe, that there have been considerable Differences in the *Editions* of the *Epistles* of this Holy Man, no less than in the Judgment of our latter Criticks concerning them. To pass by the first, and most imperfect of them; the best that for a long time was extant, contained not only a great number of *Epistles* falsely ascribed to this Author, but even those that were  
Genuine

Genuine so alter'd and corrupted, that it was hard to find out the true *Ignatius* in them.

2. THE first that began to remedy this Confusion, and to restore this great Writer to his Primitive Simplicity, was our Most Reverend and Learned Archbishop *Usher*, in his *Edition* of Them at *Oxford*, *Anno* 1644. But still we wanted a correct Copy of the Original Greek; the *Epistles* set out by him, though exceedingly more sincere than any we had seen before, yet consisting only of the Old *Latin Translations* of them. Now this was in great measure perform'd by the Learned *Isaac Vossius*, in the *Edition* published by him at *Amsterdam*, *Anno* 1646: And presenting us from the *Florentine Manuscript* with six of the *Epistles* of this *Holy Martyr* mentioned by *Eusebius*, in their ancient and pure *Greek*; and the seventh so happily amended, that there is but little doubt to be made of the Integrity of that too. And concerning these *Epistles* of St. *Ignatius*, enumerated by *Eusebius*, and set out according to their Primitive Purity by these two great Men, and from them translated into the following *Collection*; there are two things to be consider'd and proved by me in this place: First,\* That St. *Ignatius* did write such *Epistles* as those we have here translated: And secondly; that those *Epistles*

\* Vid. Vossii  
Præfat. in Ignat.  
nat. ad Lectorem.

we

we here have, are the very *Epistles* that he wrote.

¶ Vid. Vindic.  
Pearson in  
Proëm. p. 20.

† Polycarp. E-  
pist. Numb.  
xiii. pag. 97.  
Annor. Corel.  
in loc. Poly-  
carp. p. 486. B.

3. THAT *Ignatius* did, in general, write some *Epistles* to the Churches about him, however it has been deny'd by Some, is yet I think now universally allow'd even by || those who are the greatest Opposers of those *Epistles* which we affirm to be his. That he wrote to those particular Churches to which the *Epistles* here subjoin'd are address'd, we have both St. *Polycarp* and *Eusebius* to assure us. For, first; † St. *Polycarp*, in the Close of his *Epistle*, (which I am now to look upon as sufficiently proved to be his) speaking to the *Philippians* of this Holy Man, tells them; that he had sent them all such *Epistles* of his, as *Ignatius* had either written to himself, or to his Church at *Smyrna*, or as had hitherto come to his Hands. So that here then we have a plain Account of two of those *Epistles* which we affirm *Ignatius* to have written; One to St. *Polycarp* himself, Another to the Church of *Smyrna*.

4. BUT *Eusebius* will enable us to carry this Testimony yet farther: Whilst assuring us, that he wrote four *Epistles* from *Smyrna*; namely to the Churches of *Ephesus*, *Magnesia*, *Tralles* and *Rome*; he gives us just grounds to conclude that these

these also must have been part of St. Polycarp's Collection; and have been some of those others, besides the two before mentioned, which he tells us he sent to the *Philippians*. Unless we should suppose that either he knew not of Ignatius's writing, though every Day, almost every Hour, with him at the time that he wrote them : Or else that knowing of it, He took no care to preserve the Copies of his *Epistles*; which yet we see he put the highest Value, that can well be imagined, upon. Seeing therefore we cannot with any reason suppose, either that St. Polycarp did not know of Ignatius's writing to these *Churches*; nor is it probable, that being present with him at the writing of them, and acquainted with it, he should not have kept any Copies of his Letters to them : Seeing lastly; he himself tells us that he had Copies of more of the *Epistles* of this *Great Saint*, besides those that were sent to *Smyrna*, and that what he had, he sent to the *Philippians*; neither can we reasonably doubt but that these also were in his Hands, and sent by him to the Church at *Phillipi*.

5. AND thus have we I think upon very good grounds concluded that Six of the *Seven Epistles*, which we affirm to have been written by St. Ignatius, were collected by St. Polycarp; and sent, together with his own *Epistle*, to the  
Philip-

*Philippians*. Let me add yet farther, that neither can we reasonably question but that the Seventh too was at that time in the Hands of *St. Polycarp*; and by consequence, that what we now have is no other *Collection*, than what he made, and by that means help'd to preserve to after Ages, of the *Epistles* of this *Holy Martyr*. Now this I conclude not only from the Nearness of the Church of *Philadelphia*, to which it was written, to that of *Smyrna* in which *St. Polycarp* presided; and from the great Respect which all the Neighbouring Churches payd to him, as a kind of *Universal Bishop* of the whole *Lesser Asia*; but from the Conclusion of the *Epistle* its self: Which tells us that it was sent by *Ignatius* to the *Philadelphians*, not only from the same place, and at the same time, that he wrote to *St. Polycarp* himself, and to his Church of *Smyrna*; but also by the same Person that carried the other two; and that Person *St. Polycarp*s own *Deacon*, whom he had sent with *Ignatius* to *Troas*, and by whom *Ignatius* wrote back that *Epistle*.

6. *St. POLYCARP* then certainly knew of *Ignatius*'s writing to the *Philadelphians*; and very probably sent on *Burrhus* his *Deacon* from *Smyrna* to *Philadelphia*, with his Letter. And then I think we may very reasonably conclude, that he brought back

back with him the Copy of it; and so that St. Polycarp had that *Epistle* too in his Hands, when he wrote to the *Philippians*.

7. SUCH good grounds have we to believe, that the Collection we now have of St. Ignatius's *Epistles*, was no other than what St. Polycarp himself made; and refer'd to in that passage of his own *Epistle* to the *Philippians*, which I have before shewn to be truly his, and not the Addition of any latter hand. And the same is the Account which *Eusebius* himself has given us of this *Martyr*. He tells us that as *Ignatius* was on his way to *Rome*, where he was to be cast to the Wild Beasts; he not only confirm'd the *Churches* that were in the places through which he passed, by his Exhortations, but wrote to the Chiefest of those others that were near, such *Epistles* as these of which we are now speaking. And that, as he goes on, in this following Order. First, from *Smyrna* †, where he tarried some time with his Old Acquaintance and Fellow-Disciple St. Polycarp, he wrote to the *Ephesians*, *Magnesians*, *Trallians* and *Romans*. And being gone farther on his Way to *Troas*, he from thence wrote to the *Philadelphians*, and *Smyrneans*; Ἰσως τε τοῖς ταύτης Περὶ γυμνῶ Πολυκάρπῳ, and a particular Letter to *Polycarp*, the Bishop of *Smyrna*.

|| Hist. Eccles.  
lib. iii. cap. 35.

† Vid. Chrys.  
Orat. ad Antiochen.



|| Libr. de  
Script. Illustr.  
cap. xvi.

\* Apud Pear-  
son, Vindic.  
Ignat. Prole-  
gom. pag. 20.

8. I SAY nothing to the Testimony of || St. *Hierome* as to this Matter, who as he exactly agrees with *Eusebius* in all this, so I make no question but that he transcribed his Account out of him. It is I think sufficiently evident from what has been already observed, not only that St. *Ignatius* did in general write *some Epistles* which even Mounseieur \* *Daille* himself thinks ought not to be any question; but that he wrote to those *particular Churches* to which the *Epistles* we now have, are directed; and of which I am perswaded there ought to be as little doubt.

9. AS for the other point proposed, and in which the foregoing also will be yet more fully confirmed; namely, that those *Epistles* we now have are the same that *Ignatius* wrote: Two things there are that seem to determine our Belief of it. First; that there is nothing in these *Epistles*, as we now have them, either unworthy of the Spirit of *Ignatius*, or the Character that Antiquity has given us of them: Nothing disagreeing to the Time in which he wrote, or that should seem to speak them to have been the Work of any latter Author; which hardly ever fails to appear in such pieces as are falsely imposed upon *Ancient Authors*; and which not appearing in these *Epistles*, inclines us the more readily to con-

conclude that they were undoubtedly written by him whose they are said to be.

10. BUT this is only a presumptive Argument in favour of these *Epistles*; and which though it may serve to dispose us the more readily to receive them as true and genuine, yet is not alone sufficient to prove them so to be. The other Argument I have now to offer is positive and convincing; namely, That we find these *Epistles*, as they now are, exactly agreeing both with the Descriptions which St. \* *Polycarp* and † *Eusebius* have left us of those which they took to be the Authentick *Epistles* of this Holy Man; and with the numerous Quotations which the || *Ancient Fathers* have taken out of them; and which all occur in the same Words, in our present Copies of them, that they are cited in their Writings.

\* Pearson Vind. Ignat. par. I. cap. 3. pag. 27.  
† Ibid. cap. ii. pag. 8.  
|| Pearson ibid. pag. 8 ad 25.  
Comp. Testim. Corelerii de Ignat. Et Usser. Dissert. Ignat.

11. THIS has been so fully shown by our most Learned Bishop *Pearson*, and indeed was so manifest of its self to any one that had ever made any Comparisons of this kind; that Monsieur \* *Daillé* himself could not deny but that we have the same *Epistles* now, that *Eusebius*, *Athanasius*, St. *Jerome*, *Theodoret* and *Gelasius* had heretofore. So that the only Question then to be consider'd by

\* Apud Pearson Vind. Ignat. Proxm. pag. 20. Et Vind. par. i. pag. 8.

us is; Whether those which *Eusebius*, &c. had, were not counterfeit, but the true *Epistles* of this great Martyr.

12. AND here, first, it is evident, that if those *Epistles* which *Eusebius* first, and then the rest of those great Men I before mentioned, took for the *Genuine Epistles* of *St. Ignatius*, were none of his; the true *Epistles*, which I have just now shewn, and which it is confes'd were written by him, must before that time have been utterly lost, or otherwise destroyed out of the World: It being very improbable that had the true *Epistles* been still remaining, neither so inquisitive a Searcher into Antiquity as *Eusebius* should have heard of them, nor such great and learned Men as those that followed after, have had any Suspicion of such a Deceit. But now whether this be probable; Whether it can be supposed that such *Epistles* as these, directed to so many great and eminent *Churches*, collected by so Venerable a Man as *St. Polycarp*, and written by so glorious a Martyr as *St. Ignatius*, should within so little time be utterly lost out of the *Church*; I shall leave it to any one, who considers how great a Reverence the *Primitive Christians* had for every thing that came from the Hands of such Holy and Excellent Men, and such glorious *Martyrs* of *Christ*, to determine.

13. WE read in the || *Acts* of the *Mar-* || See below, p.  
*tyrdom* of this Blessed Saint, with what 218.  
a mighty Care those who went with  
him to *Rome*, and were the Eye-Wit-  
nesses of his Sufferings, gathered up the  
few hard Bones of his Body which the  
Lions had left; and how they brought  
them back in a kind of Triumph to his  
Church at *Antioch*. And we are told  
with what Pomp they were many Ages  
after taken up from the place where  
they were first buried, and carried by  
the Command of the younger *Theodosius*  
within the City: Insomuch that as our  
† Historians observe, there was a Festi- + Evagrius  
val Solemnity established upon that Oc- lib. i. cap. 16.  
casion; and Annually observed to the Nicephor. lib.  
very time in which they wrote, in re- xiv. cap. 44.  
membrance of it. But was the Church  
then so careful of a few dead Bones  
of such a Saint as this, and did they e-  
steem them as so great a Treasure; and  
yet had they so little regard to his Wri-  
tings, the last Testimonies of his Affe-  
ction to the *Churches* to which he wrote,  
as to suffer them within Two Hundred  
Years to be so utterly lost, as not to be  
once known or heard of, by the greatest  
and most curious Searchers into Anti-  
quity? This is, I confess, to me so very  
improbable, that I could almost as easi-  
ly believe the Holy Scriptures them-  
selves to have been upon a suddain  
d changed

Of the *Epistles*

changed into some other *Epistles* than what St. *Peter* or St. *Paul* wrote; as that such *Epistles* as these could be so totally defaced, as some pretend, and new ones set out in the room of them, and yet no Body know any thing of the doing of it. But such Impossibilities as these must learned Men be content to please themselves, and impose upon others withall, who resolve to be wiser than any that went before them; and to be able to know better at fifteen hundred years distance what *Ignatius* wrote, than those who lived within two Generations of him.

14. FOR to press our Argument yet more closely: Since it is allow'd that *Ignatius* did write some *Epistles*, and I think sufficiently evident that St. *Polycarp* did make a Collection of them, and send them together with his own to the *Philippians*; I presume it will not be question'd but that he most certainly had the Genuine Writings of that Holy Martyr, his dear Friend and Fellow-Disciple. Now St. *Polycarp* sutler'd not according to the earliest Computation of our accurate Bishop || *Pearson* till the Year of our Saviour 147. And † others suppose it to have been yet later. Hitherto therefore it is certain that the true *Epistles* of *Ignatius* continued in the Church: It being by no means probable that they should have

|| *Pearson* dissent. Chron. ii. cap. xiv ad xx.  
† *Usher*. Anno 169. *Euseb.* & in eum *Val.* les. 167. *Petrus* 175. &c. See below.

have been changed whilst the Men lived to whom *Ignatius* wrote; whilst *Polycarp* was living who collected them together; and whilst those of the Church of *Philippi* remained, to whom he sent them.

15. TO St. *Polycarp* let us add his Scholar and Admirer, *Irenæus*; and as himself professes a most diligent Collector of whatever fell from that Holy Man. That he had the *Epistles* of St. *Ignatius*, \* *Eusebius* assures us; who particularly \* *Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. v. cap. 8.* takes notice of his quoting several Passages out of them. And one of his Quotations || he mentions out of the Works || *Ibid. lib. iii. cap. 35.* of *Irenæus* which still remain: And of which though the *Greek* be lost, yet the Old † *Latine Version*, as well as the *Greek* † *Irenæus, lib. iii. cap. 28.* of *Eusebius*, shews us, that it was taken out of the *Epistle* of *Ignatius* to the *Romans*, where it still occurs in our present Copy of it. And it must be allow'd that the other Passages of which *Eusebius* speaks, were also to have been found the *Epistles* as he had them: Because otherwise, the Difference between what the one quoted, and the other read in his Copy of those *Epistles*, would presently have discovered the Fraud; and shewn that his *Epistles* were not the same with those which *Irenæus* mentioned.

## Of the Epistles

16. AND this puts the Matter yet more out of doubt: For if *Eusebius* had the same *Epistles* that *Irenaeus* had, we must allow one of these two things; Either that he had a Genuine Copy of them, as we affirm; or that *Irenaeus*, the Disciple and Contemporary of St. *Polycarp* had not; which we think it very unreasonable to suppose.

17. FOR not to say any thing as to this Matter, that *Irenaeus* lived too near the time both in which *Ignatius* wrote, and St. *Polycarp* collected his *Epistles*, to have been imposed upon in this particular: Seeing he himself tells us how careful he was to gather up whatever came from the Hand of the Blessed *Polycarp*, and that he not only had the *Epistles* of *Ignatius*, as appears by his citing of them; but, as || himself declares, had also the Epistle of *Polycarp* to the *Philippians*, at the end of which the *Epistles* of *Ignatius* were subjoyned: What can we conclude, but that the Copy he had of both was taken from that of his Master *Polycarp*; which being to be sure Authentick, it must remain that *Irenaeus*'s was so too.

¶ Apud Euseb.  
Epist. ad Flo-  
rin. Hist. Ec-  
cles. lib. v.  
cap. 20.

18. WERE it needful to add any thing yet farther to shew that *Eusebius*, who is confessed to have had the same Copy of St. *Ignatius* that we have now,  
had

had no other than that of St. Polycarp so often mentioned; I might to the Testimony of *Irenaeus*, before alledged, add that of † *Origen*, who began to live some time before the other died. Now this Father has not only spoken of these *Epistles*, but has left us two Quotations to this day out of them; and both to be found in our Copies which we suppose to be true and Authentick. And from him to *Eusebius* was not above half a Century; too little a while for so great an Alteration to have been made in Writings spread up and down into so many Hands; read by all the Learned and Pious Men of those days; and upon all these Accounts utterly incapable of such a Change, as is without the Authority of one single Writer, only upon I know not what Conjectures, supposed to have been made in them.

† Orig. Homil. vi. in Luc. Ec in Cantic. Proleg.

19. BUT I enlarge my self too much in so plain a Matter; and which I should hardly have thought worth the examining thus distinctly, had it not engaged the Pens of so many Learned Men of the Reformed Religion, that it might have seem'd too great an Omission in such a Discourse as this, not to have given some Account of it. As for what we find a late || Learned Man advancing in Opposition to the Authority of these *Epistles*, that our Copies, though exceedingly

|| Ernest Ten- zel. Exercit. select. iii. num. 11, 12 pag 27.



ingly more perfect than any that were ever extant before that those great Men Bishop *Usher* and *Isaac Vossius* set out the One, the old *Latin Versions*; the Other, the *Original Greek*, from the Manuscript which he found in the *Florentine Library* of it; yet there may be reason still to suspect that they are not so free from all Corruptions as were to be wish'd: I reply; that if he means that the same has happen'd to these *Epistles* as has done to all other ancient Writings, that Letters, or Words have been mistaken, and perhaps even the pieces of some Sentences corrupted, either by the Carelessness or Ignorance of the *Transcribers*; I see no Reason why we should deny that to have befallen these *Epistles*, which has been the Misfortune of all other Pieces of the like Antiquity. This therefore, it has been often † declared, that neither do we contend about; nor can any one, who reads the best Copies we have of them with any Care or Judgment, make any doubt of it. But as for any larger Interpolations, such as were those of the Copies before extant; for any Changes or Mistakes that may call in question either the Credit or Authority of these *Epistles* as we now have them; we utterly deny that there are any such in these last Editions of them; nor has that Learned Man offer'd any thing to induce us to believe that there are.

20. AND

† Vossii Annot.  
passim. Pearson  
Vind. Ignar.  
Proleg. p. 20.

20. AND here I should have concluded these Reflections, but that there is yet one thing more to be taken notice of, and which must by no means be passed by; namely, that our most Learned Archbishop \* *Usher* himself, though he agrees with us as to the Authority of the other Six *Epistles* here translated, yet doubts whether the Seventh, written to St. *Polycarp*, be Genuine or no. Nor do's † *Isaac* † *Vossius* himself deny but that there are some things in it that may seem to render it suspicious; though more to prove it to be Authentick. For 1<sup>st</sup>, || St. *Poly* || *carp* expressly assures us that *Ignatius* had written to him; so both \* *Eusebius* and † *S. Hierome* teach us to understand his Expression; They mention the *Epistle* to *Polycarp*, as distinct from that to the *Church of Smyrna*: And 2<sup>dly</sup>, || The Ancient Fathers quote it as *Ignatius's* no less than the rest: And from all which it seems to be very plain, that this also has the same Evidence of being written by *Ignatius* that any of the rest have; and therefore that he who allows it as sufficient for them, ought not to refuse it for this.

\* Differt. de Ignat. cap. iii.

† Annot. in Ignat. Epist. pag. 264, 265.

|| Polycarp. Epist. num. xiii. pag. 97.

\* Hist. Eccles. lib. III. c. 36.

† Hieronym. de Viris Illustr. in Ignat.

|| Vid. Isaac. Voss. Annot. loc. supr. cit.

21. AS for that which seems to be the most difficult to account for in it, namely his writing after such a manner to so great a *Bishop*, and so old a Man, as he do's to *Polycarp*; Chap. V, VI. it is rightly observed by \* *Vossius* in his

\* Pag. 213.

Annotations on those *Chapters*, that he speaks in them not to St. *Polycarp*; but by a usual Change of Person, shews what he would have *Polycarp* say to his Church: And whosoever shall consider in what manner he brings in what he there delivers; Say to my *Sisters*, &c. And again, *Exhort my Brethren*, &c. will presently see, how those Instructions are to be understood.

† See below,  
pag. 159.

22. AND now it remains only that I give some short Account of the following *Translation* of these *Epistles*. The Copies from which I did it were those of *Isaac Vossius* and Bishop *Usher*; comparing both as I had Occasion with the late Edition of *Cotelerius*. In the † *Salutation* of the *Epistle* to the *Romans* I have departed from all of them, and follow'd the Correction of that *Judicious Man*, whose Name I mention in the *Margent* of it. I thought my self the more at liberty to do this, because that this *Epistle* was not found in the *Florentine Manuscript*; but made up in some measure from the *Latin Versions*, by the Conjectures of Learned Men: Among whom I think I shall offend none, if in judging of these kind of things, and especially of this Author, I shall allow Bishop *Pearson* the first place. For the rest I have kept as strictly to the Text of *Vossius*, as the Sense would permit me to do:

do: Only where a place was manifestly imperfect I have sometimes taken the Liberty to express my own Conjectures, though differing from those of others, with whom nevertheless I pretend not to compare my self. But then I seldome do this without taking notice of it, and telling my *Reader* to whom he may recur for a somewhat different Opinion. If after all there shall appear some Faults in my *Translation*; though I may modestly say I have taken what Care my little Acquaintance in these Matters would enable me to do, to avoid them; I desire it may be consider'd that I had a difficult Author, and an imperfect Copy to deal with; And I shall be very ready thankfully to amend any Error, that any more discerning Person shall think fit to advertise me of, if ever this *Collection* should be thought worthy to come to a *Second Edition*.

---

## C H A P. V.

*Of the Martyrdom of St. Ignatius ;  
and of the following Relation  
of it, written by those who were  
present at his Sufferings.*

*Of the Life of St. Ignatius ; whence he  
was called Theophorus ? That he ne-  
ver saw Christ ; but was converted to  
Christianity by the Apostles : And by  
them made Bishop of Antioch. How  
he behaved himself in that Station ?  
Of his Death : Why he was sent from  
Antioch to Rome, in order to his suf-  
fering there ? Metaphrastes account of  
the Effect which his Death wrought upon  
the Emperour Trajan, rejected. How  
the Persecution of the Christians came  
to be mitigated about the time that he  
suffered ? An Enquiry into the Time  
of his Martyrdom.*

1. **I**N the foregoing Chapter I have  
given such an Account of the *Epi-  
stles* of St. Ignatius as seem'd necessary  
to vindicate the Authority of them, and  
to remove those Prejudices which some  
had of late endeavour'd to raise against  
them. I am now to pass from the  
Writings

Writings of this Holy Man, to his truly Great and Heroical Sufferings: An Account whereof is in the next place subjoyn'd, in the Relation of those who accompanied him from *Antioch* to *Rome*; and were there the Eye-Witnesses of his Martyrdom.

2. BUT before I come to the Consideration of this last and noblest part of his Life, I cannot but think it will be expected from me to give some Account of the foregoing Passages of it: That so we may here have at once a full View of this Great Saint; and perceive by what Steps he prepared himself for so Constant and Glorious a Death.

3. AND here it will be necessary for me in the first place to consider the Character which he gives of himself in the Beginning of all his *Epistles*, and which he constantly asserted before the \* Emperour at his Examination, namely, that of *Theophorus*. Now this according to the different Pronunciation of it, may be expounded after a very different manner; and signifie either a *Person carried by God*, or else a *Divine Person*; One who carries God in his Breast. And in both these Significations we find this Name to have been given to this Holy Man.

\* *Acts of Ignatius*, numb. iv, v. pag. 221, 222.

4. FOR

4. FOR 1<sup>st</sup>. As to the former Signification, we are told by some of the Writers of his Life, that St. Ignatius was the Child whom our Blessed Saviour took in his Arms, and set before his Disciples as a Pattern of Humility, when he told them, That *unless they should be converted, and become as little Children, they should in no wise enter into the Kingdom of God*: And that from thence He took the Name of *Theophorus*; One who was *Born, or Carried by God*. And thus not only † *Metaphrastes* and \* *Nicephorus* among the *Greeks*; but as our Learned ‖ Bishop *Usher* tells us, some *Syriac Writers* more ancient than they, both interpret this Name, and give an Account of its being attributed to this Blessed Martyr:

† Metaphrast.  
apud Coreler.  
p. 991.

\* Niceph. Hist.  
Eccles. lib. II.  
cap. 35.

‖ Usher. Annot.  
in A. R. Mart.  
Ignat. Num. iv.

5. BUT as Stories of this kind seldom lose in the relation, so we find the † *Latines* making a farther Improvement of the present Fable. For having Confirm'd the Truth of what these Men had before observed, of St. Ignatius's being taken up by our Saviour into his Arms; they add, that for this Reason the *Apostles*, when they made him *Bishop of Antioch*, durst not lay their Hands upon him; "He having been before both commended by our Saviour Christ, and sanctified by his touching of him."

† Vid. Annot.  
in Concil. Oec.  
con. viii. Con-  
cil. Lab. Tom.  
viii. p. 994. D.

6. THERE

6. THERE is so much of *Romance* in all the latter part of this Story, and so little Grounds for the former, that I shall not need to spend any time in the confuting of either. It is enough that \**St. Chrysostome* has assured us, that this *Holy Man* never saw the LORD; and that all the other *Ancient Writers* are silent as to this particular. Which makes me the rather wonder at the Endeavour of a late † Learned Writer of our own Country, to give Countenance to such a Fable; and which if not destitute of all Probability, yet at least wants any good Authority to support it: And as our Learned ‖ Bishop *Pearson* very reasonably conjectures, was first started about the time of the VIII<sup>th</sup> General Council, by the Party of that *Ignatius* who was then set up in Opposition to *Photius*; and from thence derived both to *Anastasius* among the *Latines*, and to *Metaphrastes* among the *Greeks*.

\* Homil. in S. Ignat. To. I. Fevardent. p. 499, 506. B. C.

† Mountac. O. rigin. Ecclef. To. II. p. 211, 212.

‖ Vind. Ignat. Part. II. c. xii. P. 149.

7. TO pass then from this fabulous Account of this Title, let us come to the consideration of the true Import of it. Now for that as we cannot have any better, so neither need we desire any other Account, than what this \**Holy Man* himself gave the Emperour of that Name. When being asked by him, *Who was Theophorus?* He replied, *He who has Christ in his Breast.* And in this

\* Acts of Ignat. Nam. V. p. 222.



this sense was this Name commonly used among the Ancients ; as has been shewn in a multitude of Examples by Bishop \* *Pearson*, in his Elaborate Vindication of *Ignatius's Epistles*. I shall offer only one of them, that of *St. Cyrill* ; who Anathematizes those who should call our Saviour *Christ, Theophorus* ; *Lest*, says he, *he should thereby be understood to have been no other than one of the Saints.*

\* Vind. Ignar.  
Part. II. p. 144.

8. IT remains then that *Ignatius* was called *Theophorus* upon no other Account, than as any other Divine or Excellent Person might have been so called ; namely, upon the Account of his admirable Piety : Because his Soul was full of the Love of God, and sanctified with an extraordinary Portion of the Divine Grace ; as both his Life shewed, and the earnest desire he had *to be dissolved and to be with Christ* ; and his Joy when he saw himself approaching towards it ; and (to mention no more,) his Constancy in his last, and most terrible Conflict with the Wild Beasts, will not suffer us to doubt.

9. BUT tho' the Story then of our Saviour's taking *St. Ignatius* into his Arms be of no Credit ; yet thus much \* *St. Chrysostome* tells us, that he was intimately acquainted with the Holy Apostles, and instructed by them in the full Knowledge

\* Homil. in Ignat. pag. 499.  
To. I. Fevardent.

Knowledg of all the *Mysteries* of the Gospel. What was the *Country* that gave Birth to this Blessed *Saint*, or who his Parents, we cannot tell. Indeed as to the former of these, his *Country*; a † late *Author* has endeavoured from a Passage in *Abulfaragius*, set out by our Incomparable Dr. *Pocock*, to fix it at *Nova* in *Sardinia*; a place which still retains its anicent Name with very little Variation. This is certain, that growing eminent both in the Knowledg of the Doctrine of *Christ*, and in a Life exactly framed according to the strictest Rules of it; He was upon the Death of *Evodius* chosen, by the *Apostles* that were still living, to be Bishop of *Antioch*, the *Metropolis* of *Syria*; and whatever *Anastasius* pretends \*, received Imposition of Hands from them.

† Ernest Tentzel. Exercit. Select. III num. ii. p. 47.

\* Vid. Chrysost. Orat. in Laud Ignat. Theodoret. To. IV. p. 33. Dial. I. Comp. Ulder. Annot. in Epist. ad Antioch. pag. 107. Pearson. Vind. Ignat. part. II. p. 107. † *Acts* of Ignat. num. I, II, III. p. 219, 220, 221.

10. HOW he behaved himself in this great Station, tho' we have no particular Account left to us, yet may we easily conclude from that short hint that is given us of it, in the *Relation of his Martyrdom* †. Where we are told that he was "a Man in all things like unto the *Apostles*; that as a good Governor, by the Helm of Prayer and Fastings, by the Constancy of his Doctrine and Spiritual Labour, he opposed himself to the Floods of the Adversary; That he was like a Divine Lamp

¶ Hist. Ecclef.  
lib. III. cap. 36.

\*Euseb. Chron.  
ab anno 69 ad  
110. alii ad  
116. vid. infr.

\*See his *Epistles*  
to the Phila-  
delph. Smyrn.  
and to St. Poly-  
carp.

" Lamp illuminating the Hearts of the  
" Faithful by his Exposition of the Ho-  
" ly Scriptures; and lastly, that to pre-  
" serve his Church, he doubted not free-  
" ly and of his own accord, to expose  
" himself to the most bitter Death. This  
is in general the Character of his Beha-  
viour in his Church of *Antioch*; and a  
greater than which can hardly be given  
to any Man. Nor indeed can we doubt  
but that he who, as || *Eusebins* tells us,  
and as his *Epistles* still remaining abund-  
antly testifie, was so careful of all the  
other *Churches*, to confirm them in a  
sound Faith, and in a constant Adhe-  
rence to their Holy Religion; was cer-  
tainly much more vigilant to promote  
the Interests of Piety within his own  
Diocese, which was blest'd with his  
Government above \* *Forty Years*.

11. HENCE we may observe, what  
a tender concern he expresses in all his  
*Epistles* for his *Church* at *Antioch*: With  
what Affection he recommends it to the  
Prayers of those to whom he wrote?  
And especially to the Care of his dear  
Friend, and Fellow-Disciple St. *Polycarp*.  
And when he heard at *Troas* of the cea-  
sing of the Persecution there, how did  
he rejoyce at it? And require all the  
neighbouring \* *Churches* to rejoyce with  
him; and to send their Messengers and  
Letters thither, to congratulate with them  
upon that account?

12. SUCH

12. SUCH was his Affection towards his own *Church*, and his Care of all the *Others* round about him: And by which he became in such an extraordinary Favour with them, that they thought nothing could be sufficient to express their Respect towards him. And therefore we are told, that when he was carried from *Antioch* to *Rome*, in order to his Suffering there; all the *Churches* every where sent \* Messengers on the way to attend him, and to communicate to his Wants. And what is yet more, they were generally their *Bishops* themselves that came to meet him; and thought it a singular Happiness to receive some Spiritual Exhortations from him. And when he was Dead, they paid such an Honour to his Memory, as to account the † few Bones that were left of him by the Wild Beasts, more precious than the richest Jewels: Insomuch that we are told they were several \* Ages after taken up from the place where they were first deposited, as not Honourable enough for them to lie in; and that being brought within the City where he once was *Bishop*, there was instituted a *Yearly Festival* in Memory of him.

\* Vid. Ignat. Epist. & specificationem. ad Rom. num. ix. p. 167. Add. Act. Ignat. num. ix. p. 224.

† Vid. Act. Ignat. num. xiii. 228.

\* Vid. Usserii Ann. in Act. Ignat. num. 37.

13. AS for what concerns the Circumstances of his Death, they are so particularly recounted in the *Relation* I have here subjoyn'd of it, that there need nothing further to be added, to what is there deliver'd of this matter. Yet one Remark I cannot but make on that particular of his Story which has puzzled so many \* Learned Men to account for; but may easily be resolved, and I believe most truly too, into the over-ruling Hand of the Divine Providence. And that is; of the sending of this Holy Man from *Antioch* as far as *Rome* to suffer. For whatever the Design of the † Emperour may have been in it; Whether he intended to increase his Sufferings by a Journey so wearisom, and attended with so many bitter Circumstances as that must needs have been to a Person very probably at that time Fourscore Years of Age: Or whether he hoped by this means to have overcome his Constancy, and have drawn him away from his Faith: Or lastly, Whether, as \* *Metaphrastes* tells us, upon his consulting with Those of the *Senate* who were with him, he was advised "not to let him suffer at *Antioch*, lest thereby "he should raise his Esteem the more "among the People there, and render "him the more dear and desirable to "them: We cannot but doubt, that God hereby designed to present to all the

\* Vid. Scalig.  
in Euseb. ad  
Ann. 110.

† Vid. Usser.  
Not. in Act. Ig-  
nat. num. ix.  
p. 39. 40. Tent.  
zel. Exerc. iii.  
p. 49.

\* Mart. apud  
Cotelier.

the Nations through which he was to pass, a glorious Instance of the Power of his Religion, that could enable this Blessed Martyr with so much Constancy to despise all the Violence of his Enemies; and to be impatient after those Tryals which they hoped should have affrighted him into a base and degenerate Compliance with their Desires.

14. THIS was indeed a Triumph worthy of the *Christian Religion*: Nor was it any small Advantage to the *Churches* at such a critical Time, to have their Zeal awaken'd, and their Courage confirm'd, both by the Example and Exhortations of this great Man, from *Antioch* even to *Rome* it self. And we are accordingly told with what mighty Comfort and Satisfaction they received his Instructions; and as the \* *Authors* of his \* *Acts of Ig.*  
*Acts* express it, *Rejoyced to partake in his* nat. num. ix.  
*Spiritual Gift.* p. 224.

15. NAY but if we may believe *Metaphrastes* as to the Effect which the Sufferings of this Holy Man had upon the Mind of the *Emperour*, the *Church* received yet greater Benefit by his Death.

" For *Trajan*†, says he, hearing of what † *Marr. Ignat.*  
 " had been done to *Ignatius*, and how *apud Coteler.*  
 " undauntedly he had undergone the Sen- p. 102.  
 " tence that was pronounced against him;  
 " and being inform'd that the *Christians*

“ were a sort of Men that did nothing  
 “ contrary to the Laws, nor were guilty  
 “ of any Impieties; but worshipped  
 “ *Christ* as the *Son of God*, and exercis-  
 “ ed all Temperance both in Meat and  
 “ Drink, nor medled with any thing that  
 “ was forbidden: He began to repent  
 “ of what he had done, and command-  
 “ ed that the *Christians* should indeed be  
 “ searched out, but that being discover’d  
 “ they should not be put to Death; On-  
 “ ly they should not be admitted into  
 “ any Offices, nor be suffer’d to meddle  
 “ with any *Publick Employes*. Thus was  
 “ not only the Life of *Ignatius* of great  
 “ Use to the *Church*; but his very Death  
 “ the means of procuring much Good to  
 “ it. And what *Metaphrastes* here tells  
 us, we find in effect deliver’d by ano-  
 ther \* Author of his Acts not yet set  
 forth; and from whom he seems to have  
 taken his Story, only with the Addi-  
 tion of some farther Circumstances of  
 his own, to make it the more complete.

\* Vid. Usser.  
 Annot. in A. &  
 Ignat. p. 55, 56.

16. BUT tho’ I should be far from  
 envying any thing that might make for  
 the Honour of this Blessed Martyr; yet  
 are there many Circumstances in the  
 Story which *Metaphrastes* has here put  
 together, that make me justly call in  
 question the Truth of it. For first, it  
 is evident beyond all doubt, that the  
*Persecution* was abated at *Antioch* before  
*Ignatius*

*Ignatius* suffer'd, nay before he was yet gone out of the Lesser *Asia*. Inſomuch that in his three laſt *Epistles* which he wrote from *Troas*, to the *Philadelphians*, the *Smyrneans*, and to *Polycarp* himſelf; he particularly takes notice of the *Peace* of the *Church of Antioch*, and exhorts them to ſend Congratulatory Meſſages thither upon the account of it.

17. NOR was this Suspension of the Perſecution granted upon *Ignatius's* account, but upon the Remonſtrances which his own Officers made to him: both of the Numbers of thoſe that died for the Chriſtian Faith, and of the Innocency of their Lives; and laſtly of the Readineſs with which they not only ſuffer'd when taken, but voluntarily came and preſented themſelves before them. Two of theſe *Epistles* relating to this very Perſecution we have ſtill remaining; the One written by \* *Tiberianus Preſident of Palaſtina* \* Apud Uſſer. *Prima*, the Other of † *Pliny the Younger* Annor. in Epiſt. ad Philadelph. Not. 82. Et in Append. p. 9. † *Plin. Second. Epiſt. lib. X. Epiſt. 97. || Ibid. Epiſt. 98.* *Pro-Prator of Bythinia*. And the Answer of || *Trajan* to the latter of which we find to have been in the ſame Words that *Jo. Malala* tells us he replied to the Other; viz. "That the *Chriſtians* ſhould not be ſought after; but if they were brought before them and convicted, ſhould be puniſh'd, unleſs they abjured.



\* Hist. Eccles.  
lib. III. c. 33.  
† Apologet.  
cap. II.  
|| In voce  
Τεταρτη.

\* Lib. III. c. 33.  
Hist. Eccles.  
|| Acta Mart.  
Ignat. num. xii.  
p. 227.

† Euseb. ibid.

18. AND the same is the Account which not only \* *Eusebius* from † *Tertulian* gives us of the Emperour's Order, as to this matter; but which || *Suidas* after Both, has left us of it. Which makes it the more strange to find such a different Relation both in Bishop *Usher's* Manuscript *Author*, and in *Metaphrastes's* Acts of *Ignatius* before mentioned. It is true that notwithstanding these *Rescripts* of the Emperour, the Persecution still continued; nor was it so soon over in other Places as it was at *Antioch*. This is plain not only from the *History* of this time left us by \* *Eusebius*, but may in general be concluded from the || *Prayer* which this *Holy Saint* made at his *Martyrdom*: Where, say our *Acts*, "He intreated the Son of God in behalf of the Churches, that he would put a stop to the Persecution; and restore Peace and Quiet to them. But these were only *Local Persecutions*, as † *Eusebius* calls them, and proceeded rather from the Fury of the People, and the Perverseness of some particular Governours, than from the Design or Command of the Emperour.

19. AS for the Time of *Ignatius's* Suffering, we are only told in his *Acts* that it was when *Syria* and *Synecius* were *Consuls*; nor are Learned Men yet agreed in what Year to fix it. *Eusebius* in

in his *Chronicle* places it in the Year of  
Christ CX. *Marianus Scotus* CXII.

\* Bishop *Usher* yet sooner in the Year \* Annot. in  
CVII. And lastly to name no more, Act. Martyr.  
our most exact † Bishop *Lloyd*, follow'd Ignat. not. 39.  
therein by the late Critick upon *Baronius* † Vid. Ant.  
*Antonius Pagi*, yet later than any; to Pagi Critic. in  
Baron. ad Ann.  
wit, in the Year that the great Earth- 108.  
quake fell out at *Antioch*, and from  
which *Trajan* himself hardly escaped:  
Which as ‖ *Jo. Matra* accounts it, and ‖ Apud Usher.  
is follow'd therein by Bishop *Usher* in loc. supr. Cit.  
his Computation, was in the Year  
CXVI.

20. AND this may suffice to have  
been observed concerning the most emi-  
nent Passages that occur in the *Acts* of  
the *Martyrdom* of St. *Ignatius*. I shall  
need say nothing of the Authority of  
the Relation its self; which as it is writ-  
ten with all Sincerity, and void of those  
Additions which latter Writers have  
made to these kind of *Histories*, so we  
are told in the Close of it, that it was  
compiled by Those who went with him  
from *Antioch*, and were the Eye-Witnes-  
ses of his Encounters. This Account  
was first publish'd from two very anci-  
ent Manuscripts by our most Reverend  
Arch-Bishop *Usher*, in the Appendix to  
his *Edition* of *Ignatius*, A° 1647. and is  
now I suppose the first time translated  
into our own Language. I cannot tell

whether it be worth the observing, that in the *Collection* made by the late Learned *Cotelerius* of the Writings of the *Apostolical Fathers*, there is instead of these *Genuine Acts*, inserted the Account which *Metaphrastes* put together of his Sufferings, several *Ages* after. It would perhaps have made a more agreeable History to the *Vulgar Reader*, had I translated that *Relation*, rather than this, which is much shorter, and wants many notable Passages that are to be found in that Other. But as I should then have departed from my Design of setting out nothing but what I thought to be of an *Apostolical Antiquity*; so to those who love the naked Truth, these plain *Acts* will be much more satisfactory, than a *Relation* filled up with the uncertain, and too often fabulous Circumstances of latter Ages.

---

CHAP. VI.

Of the Martyrdom of St. Polycarp, and of the Epistle written by the Church of Smyrna concerning it.

*That there were heretofore several called by the Name of Polycarp: Both the Country, and Parentage of St. Polycarp uncertain. What he was before his Conversion; and by whom Converted? He is made Bishop of Smyrna by the Apostles. How he behaved himself in that Office? The great Veneration which the Christians had for him. Of his Journey to Rome, and what he did there? The Testimony of St. John concerning him, Rev. ii. 8. Of the Time of St. Polycarp's Martyrdom: What Persecutions the Church then labour'd under? Of the Epistle of the Church of Smyrna concerning his Sufferings; and the Value which the Ancients put upon it. Of the Miracles that hapned at his Death. What his Age was when he suffered? What the Day of his Suffering? In what Place he was put to Death?*

## Of the Martyrdom

Death? Of the Authority of the present Epistle; and its Translation into our own Language.

1. **T**HE Epistle of the Church of Smyrna, the next Piece that follows in the present Collection; however it makes mention of some Others that suffered, at the same time with St. Polycarp, for the Faith of Christ; yet insisting chiefly upon the particulars of his Passion, and being design'd by that Church to communicate to all the World the Glorious End of their beloved Bishop, and most worthy and constant Martyr of Christ: I shall observe the same Method in treating of this, that I did in discoursing of the Acts of St. Ignatius before; and speak somewhat of the Life of St. Polycarp first, before I come to consider the Account that is here given us of his Death.

2. THAT there were several of the Name of Polycarp heretofore, and who must therefore carefully be distinguish'd from him of whom we are now to discourse, has been evidently shewn, by the late Learned \* Editor of his Epistle. As for our Polycarp the Disciple of St. John, and the great Subject of the present Martyrologie; we have little account, either what was his Country, or who his Parents? In general we are told

\* Le Moine  
Prol. ad var.  
sacr.

told that he was born somewhere in the East; as \* *le Moyne* thinks not far \* *Ibid.* from *Antioch*; and perhaps in *Smyrna* its self, says our Learned Dr. † *Cave*, † *Life of S. Polycarp, p. 112. So the Roman Martyrologie.* Being sold in his Childhood, he was bought by a certain Noble Matron whose Name was *Calisto*; and bred up by her, and at her Death made Heir to all her Estate; which tho' very considerable, he soon spent in Works of Charity and Mercy ‖.

‖ *Le Moyne, Cave, &c.*

3. HIS *Christianity* he received in his younger Years from *Bucolus* Bishop of *Smyrna*; by whom being made \* *Dea-* \* *Ibid.* *con* and *Catechist* of that Church, and discharging those Offices with great Approbation; he was upon the Death of *Bucolus* made Bishop of *Smyrna* by the † Apostles, and particularly by St. ‖ *John*, † *Irenæus lib. III. cap. 3. Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. IV. cap. 14. Vid. Tentzel. Exerc. select. de Polyc. iii. §. 5. ‖ Tertul. de Præscr. Hæret. c. 32. Hieron. de Script. in Polycarp. Vid. Martyrol. Rom. Jan. xxvi. .: Epistle of the Church of Smyrna, numb. xii. p. 243.* whose Disciple, together with *Ignatius*, he had before been.

4. HOW considerable a Reputation he gain'd by his wise Administration of this great Office, we may in some measure conclude from that Character which his very Enemies gave of him at his Death: When crying out that he should be thrown to the *Lyons*, they laid this to him as his Crime, but which was indeed his chiefest Honour.:; *This*, say they, *is the Doctor of Asia, the Father of the Christians, and the Over-turner of* *our*

\* Ibid. numb.  
xvii. p. 248.

our Gods; And when he was burnt, they persuaded the Governour not to suffer his Friends to carry away any of his Remains, \* *Least, say they, the Christians forsaking him that was crucified, should begin to worship Polycarp.*

† See below,  
pag. 244.

5. NOR was it any small Testimony of the Respect that was paid to him, that (as we are told in this † *Epistle*) the *Christians* would not suffer him to pull off his own Cloaths, but strove who should be the most forward to do him Service; thinking themselves happy if they could but come to touch his Flesh. For, says the *Epistle*, *even before he had grey Hairs, he was adorn'd with such a good Conversation, as made all Men pay a more than ordinary Respect to him.*

\* De Script. in  
Polycarp. So-  
phron. Interp.  
Græc.  
† Le Moyne  
Prol. ad var.  
Sacr.

6. HENCE St. \* *Hierome* calls him the *Prince of all Asia*, *Sophronius* the *Agxnyθ* or *Chief Ruler*; perhaps, says a † *Learned Man* in opposition to the *Asiarchæ* of the Heathens spoken of in this *Epistle*: Signifying thereby, that as they were among the *Gentiles*, the Heads of their sacred Rites, and presided in the common Assemblies and Spectacles of *Asia*; So was *Polycarp* among the *Christians* a kind of Universal Bishop; the *Prince and Head of the Churches* in those Parts.

7. NOR

7. NOR was his Care of the *Church* confined within the Bounds of the *Lesser Asia*, but extended even unto *Rome* its self: \* Whither we are told he went upon the Occasion of the *Quarto-deciman Controversie* then on foot between the *Eastern* and *Western Churches*, and which he hoped to have put a stop to, by his timely interposition with those of *Rome*. But tho' *Anicetus* and he could not agree upon that Point, each pretending *Apostolical Tradition* to warrant them in their Practice: Yet that did not hinder but that he was received with all possible Respect there; and † officiated in their *Churches* in presence of the Bishop, and \* communicated with him in the most sacred *Mysteries* of *Religion*.

\* Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iv. cap. 14.

† Vid. Vales Annot. ad Euseb. Eccl. Hist. lib. iv. cap. 14. Tenzel. Exercit. de Polycarp. §. ix. \* Le Moine Prolegom. ad var. Sacr.

8. WHILE he was at *Rome* he remitted nothing of his Concern for the Interests of the *Church*; but employed his time partly in confirming those who were sound in the Faith, but especially in drawing over those who were not, from their Errours. In which Work how successful he was, his own Scholar † *Irenaeus* particularly recounts to us.

† Apud Euseb. loc. cit.

9. WHAT he did after his return, and how he discharged his pastoral Office to the time of his Martyrdom we have



\* Apud Tentzel. Exercit. Select. IV. p. 76, &c.

have little farther Account : Nor shall I trouble my self with the Stories which \* *Pionius* without any good Grounds has recorded of the Life of this Holy Man. But that he still continued with all diligence to watch over the Flock of *Christ*, we have all the reason in the World to believe : And that not only from what has been already observed, but from one particular more which ought not to be omitted ; namely, that when *Ignatius* was hurried away from his *Church* of *Antioch* to his *Martyrdom*, he knew none so proper to commend the Care of it to, as to this Excellent Man ; or to supply by his own *Letters*, what the Other had not time to write, to all the Other *Churches* round about.

10. BUT I shall close up this part of the Life of this *Holy Saint*, with the Testimony which *St. John* has given to him, *Revel. ii. 8.* And which as it affords us a sufficient Evidence of the Excellency of his Life, so do's it open the way to what we are next to consider, viz. his Death and Passion ; *Unto the Angel of the Church in Smyrna, write : These things saith the First and the Last, which was dead and is alive. I know thy Works, and Tribulation, and Poverty (but thou art Rich ; ) and I know the Blasphemy of Them that say they are Jews, and are not, but are the Synagogue of Satan.*  
Fear

*Fear none of those things which thou shalt suffer : Behold the Devil shall cast some of you into Prison, that ye may be tried, and ye shall have Tribulation ten Days : Be thou faithful unto Death, and I will give thee a Crown of Life.*

II. AND this brings me to that which I am chiefly to insist upon, namely the *Death* of this *Blessed Martyr*; the Subject of that *Epistle* which is here subjoyn'd from the *Church of Smyrna* concerning it. And here I shall in the first place take for granted what our Learned Bishop \* *Pearson* seems to have proved beyond Contradiction; that St. *Polycarp* suffer'd, not as is † commonly supposed, about the Year of *Christ* CLXVII. or as Bishop ‖ *Usher* has stated it yet later CLXIX. much less as ∴ *Petit* still later CLXXV. but under the Emperour *Antoninus Pius*, in the Year of our LORD CXLVII. Now that the *Christians* about that time, and especially those of *Asia*, lay under some severe Prosecutions is evident from the *Apology* which *Justin Martyr* about this very time presented to the Emperour in order to a Mitigation of it. And which however \* *Barronius*, and after him † *Valesius* places two or three Years later; yet is their Opinion much more probable who put it about the beginning of that Emperour's Reign : As both ‖ *Eusebius* among

\* Dissert.  
Chron. part. II.  
à cap. 14. ad  
20.  
† Euseb.  
Chron.  
‖ Not. in Epist.  
Smyrn. 104.  
105. Comp.  
Tentz. Exercit.  
de Polycarp. §. xxi.  
∴ Vid. Cave  
Hist. Eccles.  
in Polycarp.

\* Ad An. 150.  
Comp. Spond.  
Epitom. ibid.  
† Annot. in  
Euseb. lib. IV.  
c. 8.

‖ Euseb. Chron.  
the ann. 142.

the *Ancients*; and his Learned *Editor*  
 \* *Scaliger*, not to mention any † *Others*,  
 of latter Times, have done.

\* Scalig. An-  
 not. in Euseb.  
 p. 210.

† Petav. in E-  
 piphani Hæres.  
 xlv. Anton.  
 Pagi in Baron.  
 ad ann. 150.  
 num. iii. Her-  
 man. Contract.  
 Marian. Scor.  
 &c.

|| Hist. Eccles.  
 lib. IV. c. 25.

† Ib. lib. IV.  
 c. 13.

12. WHAT the Effect of this *Apo-  
 logy* was we cannot certainly tell; but  
 that the *Persecution* was not presently  
 put to an end, not only the *Second Apo-  
 logy* of the same *Father*; but that which  
 || *Eusebius* tells us was afterwards present-  
 ed to his Successor *Marcus Aurelius*, by  
 || *Melito* Bishop of *Sardis*, plainly makes  
 appear. In which he complains, that  
 “the *Christians* were still informed a-  
 “gainst by wicked Men, greedy of what  
 “they had; and prosecuted notwith-  
 “standing the several Orders that his  
 “*Father* had given, and the Letters he  
 “had written to the contrary. It is  
 true, *Eusebius* tells us that the Empe-  
 rour † *Antoninus Pius* had set out an Ef-  
 fectual *Edict* in favour of the *Christians*;  
 and that particularly addressed to the  
*Common Council of Asia*, not long before  
 the time in which we affirm *St. Polycarp*  
 to have suffered. And this seems to  
 leave it under some doubt how a *Perse-  
 cution* could have been again revived a-  
 gainst the *Church*, within so short a time,  
 and after such a vigorous *Edict* of an  
 Emperour still living to the contrary.  
 But it is evident *Eusebius* must have  
 mistook the *Emperour*, and have set down  
 that for the Rescript of *Antoninus Pius*,  
 which

which was indeed set out by *Marcus Aurelius* immediately after his Death; as both the Inscription shews, and \* *Valesius* and Others have evidently made it appear to be.

\* *Vales.* in lib. IV. c. 13. *Euseb.* & *infr.* in c. 26. p. 73.

*Add. Ant. Pagi Critic.* in *Baron.* ad ann. 154. num. iv.

† *Euseb. Hist. Eccles.* lib. IV. c. 15. p. 104.

13. IT was then in One of these † *Topical Persecutions*, so frequent in the Lesser *Asia*; that the Storm happening to fall in a particular manner upon the Church of *Smyrna*, carried off this *Holy Martyr* among the rest. What the particular Circumstances of his Passion were it would be impertinent for me to relate in this place, seeing they are so fully and exactly described in the Epistle of which we are now discoursing. A Piece so excellently composed, that *Eusebius* thought it worthy to be almost intirely transcribed into his *Ecclesiastical History*. And of which a very \* great Man of the present Age profess'd, "That he knew not any thing in all Ecclesiastical Antiquity, that was more wont to affect his Mind; infomuch that he seem'd to be no longer himself when he read it: And believed that no good *Christian* could be satisfied with reading often enough this, and the like Accounts, of the Sufferings of those Blessed Martyrs, who in the Primitive times laid down their Lives for the Faith.

\* *Scalig. Animadv.* in *Euseb.* pag. 221. num. 2183.

\* De Glor.  
Mart. cap.  
LXXXVI.

14. NOR did the Ancients put any less Value upon this Piece, which as \* *Gregory of Tours* tells us was even to his time read publickly in the *Gallican Churches*; and no doubt made a part of that *Annual Remembrance*, which the *Churches of Asia* kept of his *Martyrdom*.

† Vid. Usser.  
Annot. in Act.  
Polyc. num. 77.

15. BUT tho' I think it needless to mention here any thing of what the following *Epistle* relates concerning the *Passion* of this *Holy Man*; yet one Circumstance there is which both † *Eusebius* and † *Ruffinus* having omitted, is also pass'd by in the following *Translation*, tho' found in the *Acts* as set out from the *Barrochian Manuscript* by Arch-Bishop *Usser*. And that is this; That the Souldier or Officer having struck his Lance into the Side of the *Saint*, there came forth a *Pigeon*, together with a great quantity of Blood, as is express'd in the following \* *Epistle*. Now tho' there may seem to have been something of a Foundation for such a Miracle in the Rallery of ‖ *Lucian*, upon the Death of *Peregrinus the Philosopher*; who burnt himself about the same time that St. *Polycarp* suffered, and from whose Funeral Pile he makes a *Vulture* to ascend, in Opposition, it may be, to St. *Polycarp's Pigeon*; if indeed he design'd (as a  
Learned

\* Num. xvi.  
P. 247.

‖ De Morte  
*Peregrini*,  
p. 1006.

\* Learned Man has conjectured ) under \* Le Moyne  
the Story of that Philosopher, to ridicule var. sac. Prol.  
the Life and Sufferings of *Polycarp* : Yet ad Tom. l.  
I confess I am so little a Friend to such  
kind of *Miracles*, that I thought it better  
with *Eusebius* to omit that Circumstance,  
than to mention it from *Bishop Usher's*  
*Manuscript*. And indeed besides the  
strangeness of such an Adventure, I  
cannot think, had any such thing truly  
happen'd at his Death; that not only  
*Eusebius* should have been ignorant of it,  
but that neither *St. Hierome*, nor *Ruffi-*  
*nus*, nor the *Menae* of the *Greek Church*,  
should have made the least mention of  
it. Either therefore there must have  
been some *Interpolation* in the Manu-  
script set forth by that Learned Man;  
Or because that does not appear, per-  
haps it may be better accounted for by  
the Mistake of a † single Letter in the † So le Moyne  
*Original*; and which will bring it to no correctis it, Prol.  
more than what *Eusebius* has in effect ad varia sacra :  
said, that *there came out of his Left Side* Reading for "E-  
*a great quantity of Blood.* *ἐκ τῆς ἑξω-*  
*στερῆς* "ΕΞΩΣΤΕΡῆς  
*ἐκ τῆς Ἀριστερῆς.*

16. AS for what concerns the *Time*  
of his Martyrdome, I have before shewn  
the different Computations which Learn-  
ed Men have made of it. Nor are they  
less at Variance about the \* Age of this \* Vid. Tent.  
Holy Martyr when he suffered, than a- zel. Exercit.  
bout the Year of his Suffering. For selec. de Po-  
tho' *St. Polycarp* expressly told the *Pro-* lycarp.  
s. xxxiv.

\* Num. ix. p. 241.

† Vid. Praef. Usser. ad Aët. Ignat. & Polycarp. pag. ult. Comp. Tentzel. disp. IV. de Polyc. § iii. iv.

|| Pearson Dissert. Chron. part. II. c. 15.

\* Iren. contr. Hæres. lib. III. c. 3.

*Consul*, as we read in the following \* *Epistle*, that he *had served Christ Eighty and Six Years*; Yet † some interpret this of the Number of Years since his Conversion; || Others of those of his whole Life. But however thus much is evident, that which soever of the two be in the right, they will either of them make good what \* *Irenæus* has told us of him, that he was very old when he died; and from which therefore nothing can be concluded either for the former of these Opinions, or against the latter.

17. BUT the following Acts of his Martyrdom go yet farther: They tell us that He not only suffer'd at so great an Age; but upon the *Great Sabbath*, the *Second Day of the Month Xanticus*, before the *Seventh Kalend of May*, about VIII. a Clock. What is meant by this *Great Sabbath* is another Point much debated, but never like to be agreed among Learned Men: Whose Opinions are examined at large by † Bishop *Usser*, \* *Vallesius*, || *Le Moyne*, ∴ Bishop *Pearson*, and \*\* Others upon this Occasion. But if we were right before in assigning the Year of his Suffering, as I think we were; then we must conclude the *Great Sabbath* to have been the same here, that is

† In Aët. Polyc. num. 104. 105.

\* Annot. in Euseb. p. 66. a || Proleg. ad var. sacr. ∴ Dissert. Chron. par. II. c. 18.

\*\* Ant. Pagi Critic. in Baron. ad Ann. 169. Tentzel. Exerc. select. de Polyc. §. xxv. xxxi, &c.

usually

usually called by that Name among *Ecclesiastical Writers*, namely, the *Saturday in the Holy Week*; and to which all the Other Characters here assigned are exactly Correspondent. And then according to this Computation, St. Polycarp will have suffer'd in the Year of *Christ* CXLVII. being *March 26.* the *Saturday* before *Easter*, about VIII. a Clock.

18. THE place in which he suffer'd was a large *Amphitheatre* in which the *Common Assemblies* of *Asia* were wont to be kept: And as we are told by \* those who have travelled into those Parts, is in some measure still remaining; and shewn as the Place of St. Polycarp's Martyrdom. I say nothing, to that which some have observed upon this Occasion of the Calamities which not long after fell upon the *City of Smyrna*; and which may seem to have been the Effect of the Divine Vengeance, punishing them for their Cruelty towards this Excellent Man, and the rest of his Companions that suffered together with him. But this is without the Bounds of my present Design; which leads me only to consider what concerns the *Epistle* of the *Church of Smyrna*, and to which that which follow'd the *Death of Polycarp* has no relation.

\* Smith Epist. de VII. Asia Ecclef. Tavernier, Wheeler, &c. Vid. Tentzel. Exercit. Select. IV. §. XXXII, XXXIII.



19. AND now having pass'd through the chief Parts of the following *Relation*, and which seem'd most to require our Animadversion; it is time for me to observe concerning the *Epistle* it self, which is here subjoyn'd, that it is a piece of most unquestionable Credit and Antiquity. As for the main Body of it, we find it preserved in the *Ecclesiastical History* of \* *Eusebius*; who lived not above an Age and a half after the writing of it. And even the Manuscript it self, made use of by *Bishop Usher*, is so well attested; that we need not any farther Assurance of the Truth of it. The Sum of the Account which we have given us of it is this; † " That *Gaius* an Acquaintance of *St. Irenaeus* the Disciple of *Polycarp*, transcribed it from the Copy of that Father: And *Socrates*, the *Corinthian* from *Gaius*; and from *Socrates's* Copy was transcribed that Manuscript which we still have of it.

\* Lib. IV. c. 15.

† See below, p. 253.

20. TWICE has this *Epistle* been been put into our own Language, as far as the *History* of *Eusebius* has given occasion for the Translation of it. What those Editions are I cannot tell, having never perused either of them. But I suppose it is now the first time joyn'd in an intire Piece together, and so communicated to the *English Reader*. In my

my *Translation* of it I have strictly follow'd the *Edition* of our most Reverend *Primate*, from which *Cotelerius's* is but a *Copy*: Nor have I, that I know of, departed in the least Circumstance from it, except in that One for which I have before accounted. So that I may venture to say, I have here truly set forth the *Epistle* of the *Church* of *Smyrna*; as near as our Language would serve to express the *Sense*, if not to come up to the *Beauty* and *Vigour* of the *Original*.

---

## CHAP. VII.

### Of the Catholick Epistle of St. Barnabas.

*Why the Pieces that follow, are put in a Second Part, separate from the foregoing? The History of St. Barnabas, chiefly from the Acts of the Apostles. Of his Name, Education, and Travels; especially with St. Paul. How he came to be separated from that Apostle. What he did afterwards? Of his Death: And the Invention of his Relicks; and of the Cyprian Privileges establish'd on that account. Of the present Epistle; and that it was*

f 4 truly

## Of the Catholick Epistle

*truly written by St. Barnabas. The principal Objections against it answer'd. An Apology for its Allegorical Interpretations of Scripture. The latter part of it, originally belonging to this Epistle. That it was written after the Destruction of Jerusalem. The Design and Usefulness of it.*

I. **W**HEN I first enter'd upon the Design of publishing the following *Collection*, I intended to have here put an End to it: The following Pieces under the Names of *Barnabas* and *Hermas*, together with the *Second Epistle* of *St. Clement*; however undoubtedly ~~very~~ Ancient, and confess'd by all to come but little, if any thing, short of the *Apostolical* Times; having yet been neither so highly esteem'd among the Ancients, nor so generally receiv'd by many of the present Times, as those I have already mention'd. But when I consider'd the Deference which Others among the *Primitive Fathers* have paid to them, and the Value which is still put upon them by many, not inferior either in Learning or Piety to those who speak against them; I thought I could not better satisfy All, than by adding them in a *Second Part* to the fore-going *Epistles*: That so both they who have a just Esteem for them, might not complain of being defrauded of

of any part of what remains of the *Ap-  
postolical Writings*; and those who are  
otherwise minded might look upon them  
as standing in a second Rank, and not  
taking place, (which otherwise they must  
have done,) of those undoubtedly Ge-  
nuine and Admirable *Discourses*, that  
make up the former part of this Work.

2. AND here the first *Piece* that oc-  
curs, is the *Catholick Eplistle* of St. Bar-  
nabas, the *Companion* of St. Paul, and  
*Disciple* of our Saviour Christ: Being  
generally esteem'd to have been one of  
the \* LXX. that were chose by him;  
However our Country-Man † Bede, up-  
on I know not what grounds, calls the  
Verdict of *Antiquity* in question as to  
this Matter; And of whom the *Holy*  
*Spirit* of God, has left us by St. Luke  
this Character, *Acts* xi. 24. *That he was*  
*a good Man, full of Faith, and of the*  
*Holy Ghost.*

\* Clem. Alex.  
Strom. Lib. II.  
p. 410. Euseb.  
Hist. Eccles.  
lib. I. cap. 12.  
& lib. II. cap. 1.  
† In Act. IV.

3. IT is not my design to enter on  
any long Account of the Life of a Per-  
son so largely spoken of in the *Holy*  
*Scriptures*; and of whom little certain  
can be written, besides what is there re-  
corded. His *Country* was *Cyprus*, a fa-  
mous *Island* in the *Mediterranean Sea*;  
where there inhabited in those days so  
great a Number of *Jews*, that in the  
Time of \* *Trajan* they conspired against

\* Euseb. Chron.  
ad ann. CXVII.

\* Dion. lib.  
LXVIII.  
Xiphiline, &c.

the Gentiles there, and slew of them  
\* two Hundred and Forty Thousand  
Men. Upon which being cast out of  
the Isle, they were never suffer'd upon  
any account to set foot again in it, up-  
on pain of Death.

† Acts iv. 36,  
37.

4. HIS Name was at first *Joses*, but  
by the *Apostles* changed into *Barnabas*;  
which being interpreted, says *St. Luke*,  
is the *Son of Consolation*: And as we  
may conjecture from the † place where  
it is first mentioned, was given him by  
the *Apostles* as an Honourable Acknow-  
ledgment of his Charity, in selling his  
whole Estate for the Relief of the poor  
*Christians*; and upon the account of that  
*Consolation* which they received thereby.

¶ Apud Baron.  
Annal. ad ann.  
XXXIV num.  
262. Comp.  
Dr. Cave in his  
List, numb. 2.

5. HIS first Education, says || *Meta-*  
*phrases*, was at the Feet of *Gamaliel*;  
by whom he was instructed, together  
with *St. Paul*: Which perhaps moved  
that great *Apostle* upon his Conversion  
to apply himself to him, as the proper-  
est Person to introduce him into the  
*Acquaintance* of the other *Apostles*; and  
afterwards to embrace him as his chief  
Friend and Fellow-Labourer in the  
Work of the Gospel.

6. HOW they travell'd together,  
and what they did in the Discharge of  
their Ministry, is at large set down  
both

both by \* St. Luke in the *Acts of the A.* \* *Acts ix. 27.*  
*postles*, and by † St. Paul himself in his † *Galat. ii.*  
*Epistle to the Galatians*: And in which we  
have the History of Men truly concern-  
ed for the Propagation of the *Gospel*;  
and despising not only their own Ease,  
but their very Lives themselves in com-  
parison of it. Many a weary Journey  
did they take, and danger did they run:  
They preach'd in the Day, and when  
they had so done, with their own Hands  
they wrought in the Night for their Sub-  
sistence; that so they might not be bur-  
then-som to any, nor seem to seek their  
own Advantage, but the Profit of those  
to whom they tender'd the *Gospel*.

7. AMONG other Countries to  
which they went, we are told that One  
of the first was *Cyprus*, the *Native I-*  
*land* of St. Barnabas: And that not of  
their own Motion, but by the express  
Order and Appointment of the *Holy*  
*Ghost*. How they prevail'd there, and  
by what Miracles they made way for  
the Conversion of it, first at *Salamis*,  
and then at *Paphos*, we are at large in-  
form'd by St. Luke, *Acts xiii.* From  
thence they fetch'd a pretty large com-  
pass through the *Lesser Asia*: And having  
with various Success preached to sever-  
al *Cities* of it, after || about Three  
Years Travel they again return'd to  
*Antioch* in *Syria*, the place from which  
they first set out.

|| Usher. Chro-  
nol. ann. 45. 46.  
Pearson. An-  
nal. Paulin. ad  
ann. 48.

8. HERE

8. HERE they tarried a considerable space, in a sedulous Discharge of their *Ministry*: Till some Controversies arising between the *Jewish* and the *Gentile Converts*, they were obliged for the better composing of them, to go up to *Jerusalem*; where a final End was put to them by \* a *Synodical Decree* of the *Apostles* and *Elders* assembled together for that purpose.

\* *Acts* xv.  
Comp. *Galat.* ii.

9. WITH Joy they return'd to their Disciples at *Antioch*, and brought the Determination of that Divine *Synod* unto them. But it was not long 'ere *St. Peter* coming down after them, a little abated their Satisfaction: † Whilst to please the *Jewish Converts* he dissembled his *Christian Liberty*; and as *St. Paul* complains, led *Barnabas* also into the same Diffimulation with him.

† *Galat.* ii. 11,  
14.

10. AND here *St. Paul* had occasion first of all to reprove *St. Barnabas*; which he did with great freedom, for his unseasonable Compliance. But it was not very long before he had another Occasion offer'd for a yet worser Contention with him. For the next Year these two \* Holy Men having agreed to take a new Progress together, and to visit the *Churches* which they had planted in *Asia* some Years before; *Barnabas*

\* *Acts* xv. 36.  
Ann. Christi L.  
Pearson. LIII.  
Ullerius.

*nabas* was for taking his Cousin *Mark* again with them, but *St. Paul* would not consent to it; because that in their former Travels he had consulted too much his own Ease and safety, and \* left *Acts* xiii. 13. them at *Pamphilia* in the midst of their Journey.

11. BEING both resolute in their Opinions, the One to take his Kinsman with him, the Other not to yield to it; They not only came to some sharp Words with one another about it, but went their several ways †, *Barnabas* † *Acts* xv. 36, with *Mark* to *Cyprus*; and *Paul* with <sup>41.</sup> *Silas*, into *Syria* and *Gilicia*. Thus after a joyn't Labour in their Ministry for almost Fourteen Years, were these two excellent Men, by a small Punctilio, separated from one another: The *Holy Spirit* of *God* intending hereby to shew us, that the *Best Christians* are still subject to the same Infirmities with other Men; and therefore ought not to be either too much exalted in their own Piety, or to despise others whom they suppose to be less perfect than themselves,

12. NOR was it a small Benefit which from hence accrued not only to the *Church*, which thereby enjoyed the Benefit of these two great Men much more in their separate Labours, than if they had continued still together; but particularly



particularly to *St. Mark*: Who being by the Severity of *St. Paul* brought to a deep Sense of his former Indifference in the Work of the Gospel, and yet not left by *St. Barnabas* to give way to any desperate Resolutions thereupon; became afterwards a most useful *Minister of Christ*, and deserved not only to be made again the \* Companion of *St. Paul*, but to receive a very high Testimony of his † Zeal from him. So well does the Wisdom of *God* know how to turn the Infirmities of Men to his own Glory, and to the Good of those who serve him with an honest and upright Heart.

\* *Colos. iv. 10.*

† 2 *Tim. iv. 11.*

\* Recognit.  
Clem. apud  
Baron. Annal.  
ad ann. LI. num.  
52, 54. Et not.  
ad Mart. Rom.  
Jun. xi.

[Ibid. Annal.  
num. 54.

13. WHAT became of *St. Barnabas* after this, and whither he went, is very uncertain. \* Some tell us, that from *Cyprus* he went on to *Rome*, and preached the Gospel there, even before *St. Peter* came thither. But tho' *Baronius* can by no means allow this, yet is he content that *Barnabas* should be thought to have come thither after him. At least this he || pretends to be without Dispute, that *St. Barnabas* came into *Italy*, and preach'd the Gospel in *Liguria*; where he founded the ancient Church of *Milan*, as from many ancient Monuments and Writers, says he, might be made appear; tho' at the same time he produces not one Testimony in proof of it. I shall therefore conclude, till I am better inform'd, that  
*St. Barnabas*.

St. Barnabas spent the Remains of his Life in converting his own Countrymen the *Jews*; of which as I have before observed, there were such vast Numbers in that *Island*, and for whom we cannot but think he must have had a very tender regard. Or if we shall suppose him to have gone any farther, I presume it was only into the neighbouring parts of the *Lesser Asia*, and *Judea*, where he had before preach'd; or at farthest into \* *Aegypt*, where some tell \* Vid. in Vir. us he went, and consecrated his Ne- ejus Edit. O. phew St. *Mark* the first Bishop of the xon. Epist. p. *Christian Church* at *Alexandria*. 132.

14. AND in this Opinion I am the rather confirm'd from the consideration of his *Epistle* which I have here subjoyn'd: Which seems manifestly to have been design'd for the Benefit of the *Jews*; and to shew how all the parts of it had a farther Spiritual Meaning than what at first sight appear'd, and were design'd to lead them to the Faith and Piety of the *Gospel*.

15. IN this Exercise therefore he most likely spent his Life; and if we may credit the Relation of the † *Monk* † Alexandr. in *Surius*, who writes the *Acts* of this Monach. Encom. Barnaba. *Holy Evangelist*, at last suffer'd Martyrdom in the Prosecution of it: Being at the Instigation of certain *Jews* that came from

from *Syria* to *Salamis*, shut up in a *Synagogue* where he was disputing with them, and at Night stoned by them. What Truth there is in this Story I cannot tell; but this I must observe, which even \* *Baronius* himself is forced to acknowledg, that there is nothing of this kind to be met with in any ancient Author; nor does either *Eusebius* or || *St. Jerome*, where they treat expressly of this *Holy Man*, so much as once give the Title of *Martyr* to him.

\* *Baron. Annal.*  
ann. LI. num.  
54.

|| *Hieron. de*  
script. in *Barnab.*

16. BUT whatever were the manner of *St. Barnabas's* Death, yet famous is the Story of the *Invention* of his *Reliques*, deliver'd by the same *Monk*; and who, as † *Baronius* tells us, lived at the same time under *Zeno* the Empe-  
rour; and confirm'd by the concurrent \* *Testimonies* of *Theodorus*, *Nicephorus*, *Cedrenus*, *Sigebert*, *Marianus Scotus*, and others. With what Ceremony this was perform'd, and how this Blessed *Saint* appear'd twice to *Anthemius*, then Bishop of *Salamis*, in order to the Discovery of his own *Reliques*; and how the Empe-  
rour commanded a stately *Church* to be built over the *Place* of his *Burial*; I shall leave it to those who are fond of such Stories, to read at large in || *Baronius*, and the \* *Monk* whom I before mentioned. It will be of more concern to take notice that † *Nilus Doxapater* tells

† *Baron. An-*  
nal. ann. 485.

\* *Id. Annot.*  
ad *Martyrol.*  
*Rom. Jun. XI.*

|| *Annal. ann.*  
485.

\* *Apud Su-*  
*rium. Jun. XI.*  
*To. iii.*

† *Apud*  
*le Moyne Var.*  
*Sacr. Tom. I.*  
*p. 236.*

tells us, that this very thing was the Ground of the *Cyprian Privileges*: Where speaking of certain Provinces that depended not upon any of the Greater *Patriarchs*, he instances first of all in *Cyprus*; Which, says he, continues free, and is subject to none of the Patriarchs, because of the Apostle Barnabas being found in it. And the same is the Account which \* *Nicephorus* also gives us of it; and which was assign'd before both in the † *Notitia* ascrib'd to *Leo*, as I find it quoted by Monsieur *le Moyne*, in his *Preface* to his late *Collection* of several ancient Pieces relating to *Ecclesiastical Antiquity*.

Hist. Ecclef.  
lib. XVI c. 37.  
† See le Moyne  
Prolegom. ad  
Var. Sacr.

17. TOGETHER with his *Body*, was found, says || *Alexander*, the *Gospel* of St. *Matthew* written in the *Hebrew Tongue*, lying upon his *Breast*; but \* *Nilus* says, that of his Kinsman S. *Mark*. Which of the two it was, or whether any thing of all this were more than a mere Story, contriv'd by *Anthemius* to get the better of *Peter Patriarch* of *Antioch*, I shall not undertake to determine. It is enough that we are assured that by this means || he not only preserved his *Privileges* against *Peter*, but got his *See* confirm'd by the Emperour, as an *Independent See*; which was also afterwards again done by *Justinian*, at the Instigation of the Empress *Theodora*, who was her self a *Cyprian*.

|| Alex. Monach. loc. citat. So Theodorus Lector Collect. lib. II. p. 184.  
\* Nilus Doxap. inter Var. Sacr. p. 236.

|| Baron Annal. loc. supr. citat.

18. BUT to return to that which is more properly the Business of these Reflections. It do's not appear that *St. Barnabas* left any more in Writing than the *Epistle* I have here subjoyn'd. Indeed there were some heretofore who thought that the *Epistle to the Hebrews* was written by him. \* *Tertullian* confidently quotes it as his: Nor do's || *St. Hierome* censure him for it, but leaves it as a doubt whether it should be ascribed to him, or to *St. Luke*, *St. Clement*, or *St. Paul*; tho' he seems rather to incline to *St. Paul*. As for the present *Epistle*, I do not know that it is deny'd by any of the *Ancients* to have been written by *St. Barnabas*.

\* *Tertull.* de  
Podicit. c. 10.  
|| De Script.  
Ecclef. in  
S. Paulo.

† *Passim*. Vid.  
Testim. Core-  
Jeril.  
\* *Contra Cel-*  
sum lib. I.  
. Hist. Ecclef.  
lib. III. c. 25.  
|| De Scriptor.  
in Barnab.

† *Annot.* in  
*Euseb.*  
lib. III. c. 25.

\* *Hist. Ecclef.*  
lib. III c. 25.

† *Clemens Alexandrinus* both mentions and commends it as his. \* *Origen* calls it, The *Catholick Epistle of Barnabas*. ∴ *Eusebius*, and *St. Jerome*, tho' they place it among the *Apocryphal Books*, that is to say among such as were of doubtful Authority, and not admitted into the Canon of the Church; for so † *Valesius* shews we are there to understand them; yet make no question but that *Barnabas* was the Author of it, any more than that the *Epistles* of *St. James*, *St. Jude*, the *Second Epistle* of *St. Peter*, and the *Second and Third* of *St. John*, together with his *Revelations*; which \* *Eusebius* places in the same rank; were written

written by those whose Names they bear.

19. WHICH being so, I cannot but wonder at some in our own Times, who upon such weak Grounds peremptorily pronounce it to be none of St. *Barnabas's*; which, says our Learned Bishop \* *Pearson*, none of all the Ancients pretended to doubt of. And of this † *Corelerius* seems to have been sensible; Who tho' he did not care to ascribe it to the Blessed *Evangelist* of whom we are now discoursing, yet was forced to suppose that some other *Barnabas* wrote it, and without which he saw there could be no way of answering the concurrent Verdict of all *Antiquity*, which has universally agreed in *Barnabas* as the *Author* of it. But now who this Other *Barnabas* was, or that in those Times there was any such Person, he pretends not to tell us; and they who ascribe it to *Barnabas*, expressly speak of him as the same of whom I have hitherto been discoursing \*.

\* *Lectio* in  
Act. ii. num.  
10. p. 44.  
† *Corel. Nor.*  
in *Barnab.*  
p. 7. B. C.

\* *Vid. Clem.*  
*Alex. Hieron.*  
*&c. inter Te-*  
*stim. Coreler.*

20. BUT of all Others, most unaccountable is the Fancy of Monsieur || *le Moyne* concerning the *Author* of this *Epistle*. He had observed that in several Manuscripts it was immediately continued on with that of St. *Polycarp*: And from this Ignorance or Negligence of a

|| *Proleg. in*  
*Var. Sacr. is*  
*Polycarpo.*

few *Transcribers* has this Learned Man concluded the two *Epistles* to have been both written by *St. Polycarp*; in which as he had none to go before him, so I believe he will scarcely meet with any to follow him†.

† Vid. Tentzel.  
Exercit. Sc-  
lect. de Polyc.  
§ 38, 39. Præf.  
Usser. in Edit.  
Oxon. S. Bar-  
nab. p. v.

‡ Coreler. Not.  
in Barnab. p. 7.  
C. Natal. A-  
lex. Hist. Ec-  
cles. Tom. I.  
§. I. p. 100.  
Le Moyne Pro-  
leg. ad Var.  
Sacr.

21. NOR are the Arguments which they bring against the Authority of it, of such Moment as to overthrow the constant *Testimonies* of the *Ancients* on its behalf. They tell us || first; that it is evident from the XVI<sup>th</sup> Chapter of this *Epistle*, that it was written after the *Destruction* of *Jerusalem*. But why may not *Barnabas* have been then living, as well as we are sure *St. John*, and several others of the *Companions* of the *Apostles* were? And if he may have been living after it; why shall not we suppose that he was, as well as they, that he was not? Seeing it does not appear from the *Testimony* of any *Antient Writers* when he died.

\* Coreler. Not.  
in Barn. p. 5, 6.  
Natal. Alex.  
ibid. Le Moyne  
Prolegom. ad  
Var. Sacr.

22. BUT 2<sup>dly</sup>, \* They argue yet farther against it: For if this, say they, be the *Genuine Epistle* of *St. Barnabas*, how comes it to pass that it is not received as *Canonical*? Certainly had the *Primitive Christians* believed it to have been written by such a Man, they would without Controversie have plac'd it among the sacred Writings; and not have censured

censured it as of *doubtful Authority*. This is indeed a very specious Pretence, but which being a little examined will be found to have no strength in it: It being certain that the \* *Primitive Fathers* did own this for St. *Barnabas's Epistle*, and yet not receive it into their *Canon*; and therefore that it do's not follow, that had they believed it to have been his, they must have esteem'd it *Canonical*.

\* Vid. Coteler. Not. in Barnab. p. 6 E. 7. A.

23. WHAT Rules they had, or by what Measure they proceeded in those *First Times* in judging of the *Canonical Scriptures* of the *New Testament*, it is not necessary for me here to enquire. It is enough that we know what *Books* the *Church* did at last agree in as coming under that *Character*: And for the rest, as we cannot doubt but that there was a due care taken in examining into a matter of such Importance, and that those *Primitive Fathers* did not without very good reason distinguish what were written by *Divine Inspiration*, from what were not; So we are very sure that all was not admitted by them into the rank of *Canonical Scripture* that was written by any *Apostolical Man*; and therefore that it can be no good Argument, that *Barnabas* was not the *Author* of this *Epistle*, because it is not placed among the *Sacred Writings* of the *New Testament*.



24. BUT there is yet one *Objection* more, and that much insisted upon by those who are Enemies to this *Epistle*.

\* C xel. Nor.  
ad Barnab. p. 5.  
D. Natal. A.  
lex. Hist. Ec-  
cles. Sæc. I.  
To. I. p. 100.  
Le Moynes  
Prol. ad var.  
sacr.

\* They tell us it is full of a strange sort of *Allegorical Interpretations* of *Holy Scripture*; and therefore unworthy to be farther'd upon so *Evangelical* an *Author*. And yet notwithstanding this, we find *Clemens Alexandrinus* and *Origen*, *Eusebius* and *St. Jerome*, some of the greatest and most learned *Criticks* of those *Ages* that were the nearest to the time in which it was written, not doubting to ascribe it to *St. Barnabas*, and to think it worthy too of such an *Author*.

25. I NEED not say how general a way this was of *interpreting Scripture*, in the time that *St. Barnabas* lived. To omit *Origen*, who has generally been noted as excessive in it; and for whom yet a † *Learned Man* has very lately made a reasonable *Apology*: Who has ever shewn a more diffusive Knowledge, than *Clemens Alexandrinus* has done in all his *Composures*? And yet in his *Works* we find the very same Method taken of *Interpreting* the *Holy Scriptures*, and that without any *Reproach* either to his *Learning*, or to his *Judgment*. What *Author* has there been more generally applauded for his admirable *Piety* than the other *Clement*, whose *Epi-*

† Huetius O. i.  
gen lib. ii.  
Quæst. 13. p.  
170, &c.

*Ale-*

file to the *Corinthians* I have here inserted? And yet even in that plain piece, || Vi<sup>l</sup>. Annor<sup>t</sup>  
we meet with more than one Instance of Vossii in Bar-  
the same kind of *Interpretation*; which nab. p. 310.  
was never the less admired by the best  
and most *Primitive Christians*.

26. EVEN \* St. Paul himself in \* *Su* 1 Cor. x.  
his *Epistles* received by us as *Canonical*, 1. 4. Galar. iv.  
affords us not a few Instances of this 21. Ephes. v.  
which is so much found fault with in 31. Hebr. ix.  
St. Barnabas: As I might easily make 8. 23. 24. x. 1,  
appear from a multitude of Passages out &c.  
of them, were it needful for me to en-  
large my self on a Point, which every  
one who has read the *Scriptures* with  
any care, cannot chuse but have ob-  
served.

27. NOW that which makes it the  
less to be wonder'd at in St. Barnabas  
is, that the \* *Jews*, of which Number he \* *Su* Hist. Crit.  
was himself originally one, and to whom du v. T. Liv.  
he wrote, had of a long time been iii. chap. vi.  
wholly addicted to this way of *Inter-*  
*preting* the Law; and taught Men to  
search out a Spiritual Meaning for almost  
all the *Ritual Commands* and *Ceremonies*  
of it. This is plain from the Account  
which † *Aristeus* has left us of the † *Abud* Euseb.  
Rules which Eleazar the High Priest, Præparat. E-  
to whom Ptolomy sent for a Copy of van 7. lib. VIII.  
the *Mosaical Law*, gave him for the cap. 2.  
understanding of it. When it being  
g 4 objected

objected to him, "That their *Legislator* seem'd to have been too curious in little Matters; such as the *Prohibitions* of *Meats* and *Drinks*, and the like, for which there appeared no just reason: He shew'd him at large, that there was a farther, hidden Design, in it than what at first sight appear'd; and that these *Outward Ordinances* were but as so many Cautions to them against such *Vices*, as were principally meant to be forbidden by them. And then goes on to explain this part of the Law, after the same manner that *Barnabas* has done, in the following *Epistle*.

\* *Præpar. Evang. lib. VIII. c. 10. p. 376.*

28. BUT this is not all; \* *Eusebius* gives us yet another Instance to confirm this to us; viz. of *Aristobulus*, who lived at the same time, and gave the same Account of the *Spiritual Meaning* of the Law, that *Eleazar* had done before. And that this was still continued among the *Hellenistical Jews*, is evident from the Account that is left us by one of them, who was contemporary with St. *Barnabas*, and than whom none has been more famous for this way of Writing, I mean, † *Philo* in his Description of the *Theraputæ*: Whether the same whom in the beginning of his || Book he calls by the Name of *Essenes*, as ∴ *Scaliger* supposes; Or a particular

† *Apud Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. II. c. 17.*

|| *De Vit. Contempl. p. 289.*

∴ *Scalig. de Emend. Tempor. lib. V.*

particular Sect of *Jews*, as \* *Valesius* will have it; Or lastly, a kind of *Monkish Converts* from *Judaism* to *Christianity*, as || *Eusebius* heretofore described them, and as some ∴ other Learned Men, seem rather to conjecture. But whatever becomes of this, herein they all agree, that they were *originally Jews*; and therefore we may be sure they follow'd the same Method of *Interpreting Scripture*, that the *Alexandrian Jews* were wont to do.

\* *Valef. Annor.*  
in *Euseb. lib.*  
II. c. 17. p. 30,  
31.  
|| *Hist. Ecclef.*  
lib. II. c. 17.  
p. 43. A. B. &  
p. 45. A. B.  
∴ *Bruno de*  
*Therapeut.*  
dissert. p. 183,  
&c.

29. NOW the Account which \* *Eusebius*, from *Philo*, gives us of them, is this. " Their *Leaders*, says he, left them " many ancient Writings of their No- " tions, clothed in *Allegories*. And a- gain; " \* They interpret the *Holy Scri- ptures*, viz. of the *Old Testament*, *Al- legorically*. For you must know, con- tinues he, that they liken the *Law* to " an *Animal*; the *Words* of which make " up the *Body*, but the *hidden Sense* " which lies under them, and is not seen, " that they think to be the *Soul* of it. And this was that which a late Learned || *Author* supposes render'd their *Conversion* to *Christianity* the more easie. For be- ing wont to seek out the Spiritual Mean- ing of the *Law*, they more readily em- braced the *Gospel*, than those who look- ed no farther than the outward Letter; and were therefore the harder to be per- suaded

\* *Euseb. Hist.*  
*Ecclef. loc. cit.*  
p. 44. B.

\* *Ibid. p. 45.*  
B. C.

|| *Bruno de*  
*Therap. p. 193*

suaded to come over to so Spiritual an Institution.

30. AND, I suppose, it was from hence that the most early *Herenicks* were so wedded to their *Mystical Interpretations* of *Scripture*, and so much valued themselves upon the account of them. And against whose false and impure *Doctrines*, our late great Critick, \* *Dr. Hammond*, supposes *St. Barnabas* to have principally design'd his *Epistle*: And therefore that being to deal with Men who valu'd nothing but such kind of *Expositions*, he was forced to confute them in their own way; both as most suitable to their *Manners*, and as most proper either to convince them of their *Errors*, or at least to prevent others, especially the *Jewish Converts*, from falling into them.

\* Dissert. de  
Antichristo,  
c. VII.

31. BUT whether this were so or no, thus much is evident from what has been said; that the *Hellenistical Jews*, to whom it is most probable *St. Barnabas* address'd his *Epistle*, were altogether used to this way of *Interpreting* the *Holy Scriptures*: And therefore that howsoever it may appear to others, who are so utterly unaccustomed to it, yet we ought not to wonder that *St. Barnabas*, who was himself a *Jew*, should at such a *Time*, and upon such an *Occasion* as this, make use of it; or suppose it at all unworthy of him so to do.

32. NOR

32. NOR indeed were they the *Jews* only that led the *Holy Men* in those days into these *Mystical Expositions* of the Sacred *Scriptures*. Even the *Gentile Philosophers* too conducted towards it: Whilst the better to cover over the *fabulous Stories* of their *Gods*, and which they saw were too ridiculous to be maintain'd; they explain'd the whole *System* of their *Idolatry* by *Allegorical Analogies*, and shew'd all the *Poetical Accounts* of them to be only the out-side *Shadows* of a sort of *Natural Theology* included under those *Fictions*. Thus \* *Heraclides* of *Pontus* wrote a whole *Book* of the *Allegories* of *Homer*: And \* *Metrodorus* of *Lampsacus* is fallen foul upon by *Tatian*, in his *Oration* against the *Greeks*, for pretending that neither *Juno*, nor *Minerva*, nor *Jupiter* were what those imagin'd who built *Temples* and *Altars* to them, οὐδὲν ὅντινός ἐστι καὶ οὐχὶν ἡθελοποιήσας. Nay so far went this last *Author* in his *Allegories*, as to turn all the *Trojan* and *Gracian Heroes* into mere *Fictions*: And to make *Hector*, and *Achilles*, and *Agamemnon*, and even *Helena* her self, nothing less than what one would think they were, and what the common *People* ignorantly imagin'd them to be.

\* *Tatian. contr. Græc. p. 160. B. C.*

33. AND for the Influence which this had upon the † *Ancient Fathers* who

† See *Hist. Crit. du v. T. Liv. from iii. chap. viii.*

from *Philosophers* became *Christians*; the Writings both of *Justin Martyr* and *Clement Alexandrinus* sufficiently shew. And if we may believe \* *Porphery*, an Enemy, in the Case of *Origen*; he tells us in the same place in which he complains of him, "For turning those things that were clearly deliver'd by *Moses* into *Mystical Significations*, not only that he did this in *Imitation* of the *Græcians*; but that it was his frequent † *Conversation* with *Numenius* and *Gronius*, *Moderatus*, *Nichomachus*, and Others among the *Pythagoreans*; and with *Charemon* and *Cornutus* among the *Stoics*; that he had learnt his *Allegorical* way of Expounding the Holy *Scriptures*, and applied that to his *Religion*, which they were wont to do to their *Superstition*.

\* Apud Euseb.  
Hist. Eccles.  
lib. VI. c. 19.  
p. 178.

† Ibid. p. 179.  
Vid. Annot.  
Valef. p. 108,  
109.

34. FROM all which it appears, that this way of Writing in Matters of Religion, was in those days generally used not only among the *Jews*, but among the Wiser and more Philosophical of the *Gentiles* too: And from both came to be almost universally practis'd among the Primitive Christians. Which being so, we ought to be far from censuring of *St. Barnabas* for his *mystical Application* of what God prescribed to the *Jews* in the *Old Testament*, to the *Spiritual Accomplishment* of it in the *New*. Much less should we ever the more call in question

question either the *Truth*, or *Credit*, of his *Epistle* upon this account.

35. HAVING said thus much either in *Vindication* of the *Allegorical Expositions* of this *Epistle*, or at least by way of *Apology* for them; I shall add but little more concerning the *Epistle* it self. I have before observed as to the *Time* of its *Writing*, that it was somewhat after the *Destruction* of *Jerusalem*; and as we may conjecture from the Subject of it, (for *Title* at present it has none, nor do's it appear that ever it had any) was address'd to the *Jews*, to draw them off from the *Letter* of the *Law*, to a *Spiritual Understanding* of it; and by that means dispose them to embrace the *Gospel*. Whether he had besides this a farther Design in it, as \* Dr. *Hammond* supposes, to confute the *Errours* of the *Gnostick Hereticks*, and to prevent the *Jewish Converts* from falling into them, it is not certain; but may from the chief Points insisted upon by him be probably enough supposed. If any one shall think it strange, that disputing against the *Jews* for the *Truth* of the *Gospel*, he should not have urged any of those *Passages* relating to the *Messiah*, which seem to us the most apposite to such a purpose; Such as the *Oracle* of *Jacob* concerning the *Time* that *Shiloh* was to come; the *LXX Weeks* of *Daniel*; the *Prophecies* of

\* Dissert. de Antichristo, cap. VII.



## Of the Catholick Epistle

\* Proleg. ad  
var. sacr.

of *Haggai* and *Malachi*, of his coming while the *Second Temple* stood; and which was now destroyed when he wrote this *Epistle*, and the like: \* *Monsieur le Moyné* will give him a ready Answer; viz. that these Passages relate chiefly to the *Time of Christ's appearing*, and that this was no Controversie in those days; the *Jews* not only confessing it, but being ready at every turn through this Persuasion to set up some or other for their *Messiah*, to their Shame and Confusion. It was therefore then but little necessary to use those Arguments against them, which now appear to be the most proper and convincing; since the *State of the Question* is alter'd, and the *Jews* either deny that their *Messiah* is come; or that it was necessary for him to have come about that time, that our *Saviour Christ* appeared in the *Flesh*.

\* Praefat. Usser.  
ad Edit. Oxon.  
p. 11. &c.

36. BUT tho' the chief Design of this *Epistle* was to convince the *Jews* of the Truth of our *Religion*, yet are there not wanting in the latter part of it, many excellent Rules, to render it still very useful to the *Pious Reader*. \* Indeed some have doubted whether this did originally belong to this *Epistle*; or whether it has not since been added to it. But seeing we find this part quoted by the *Fathers*, as belonging to *St. Barnabas*, no less than the other; and that the Measure

Measure assign'd to it in the ancient *Stichometries*, can hardly be well accounted for without it: I do not see but that we ought to conclude, that our *Author* did divide his *Epistle* into the two Parts, in which we now have it; and that this latter, as well as the former, was written by him.

37. AS for the *Translation* which I have here given of it; I have made it up out of what remains of the *Original Greek*, and of the *Old Latin Version*; and of each of which, tho' a Part be lost, yet it has so fallen out, that between them we not only have the whole *Epistle*, but that too free of those *Interpolations* which \* *Vossius* tells us some had endeavour'd to make in this, as well as in *Ignatius's Epistles*. In both I have endeavour'd to attain to the Sense of my *Author*, and to make him as plain and easie as I was able. If in any thing I shall have chanced to mistake him, I have only this to say for my self; that he must be better acquainted with the Road, than I pretend to be, who will undertake to travel so long a Journey in the dark, and never to miss his way.

\* H. Vossius  
Annot. in  
Barnab. p. 318.

## CHAP. VIII.

Of the Shepherd of St. Hermas;  
and of the Second Epistle of  
St. Clement to the Corinthians.

*That the Hermas mention'd by St. Paul, Rom. xvi. 14. was the Author of that Book which is here subjoyn'd under his Name. There is little remaining of his Life, more than what is taken out of his own Book. Of his Death; Uncertain whether he died a Martyr. The Ancient Fathers divided in their Opinions of this Book: Nor are our later Criticks left. That there are many useful things in it. Of the Second Epistle of St. Clement: That it is not of equal Reputation with the Former. By some deny'd to be St. Clements. It is most probable that it was written by St. Clement; and has many excellent things, and worthy of that Holy Man; in it. These two Pieces now the first time translated into our own Language.*

1. **T**HERE is not a greater Difference between the Learned Men of the present Times concerning the Epistle of St. Barnabas, than there was

was among the Ancient *Fathers* heretofore, concerning the *Authority* of that *Book*, which next follows, under the Name of *Hermas*. Who this *Hermas* was, what he did, and what he suffer'd for the Faiths sake, is in great measure unknown to us. That there was one of that Name at *Rome* when *St. Paul* wrote his *Epistle* to the *Church* there, his Remembrance of him *Rom. xvi. 14.* will not suffer us to doubt. Nor is it improbable but that it was the same

\* *Hermas* who afterwards wrote this Book: And who appears not only still to have continued his Relation to the *Church* of *Rome*, but to have written at such a time as may well agree to one of *St. Paul's* Acquaintance. The former of these may be collected from his † *Second Vision*, which he seems to have had at the same time that *Clement* was *Bishop* of *Rome*, and to whom therefore he is commanded to carry a Copy of it. And for the latter, if the Conjectures of two of our \* *Greatest Critics* may be allow'd, in applying the *Great Affliction* of which he speaks in another of his || *Visions*, to the *Destruction* of *Jerusalem* then at hand; it is evident that this Book must have been written within XL. Years after the *Death* of *Christ*, and by consequence by some Author who lived at the very time, that the *Hermas* of whom *St. Paul* speaks, most certainly did.

\* Vid. Baron. Annot. ad Martyrol. Rom. Maii ix.

† *Vid. Second, num. iv.*

\* Dr. Hammond, & Mr. Dodwell. Vid. Cave Hist. liter. in Herm. || *Vision* IV S. 3.

\* Hom. in  
Rom. lib. X.  
c. 16.

† Hist. Ecclef.  
lib. III. c. 3.

|| Hieron. de  
Script. in  
Herm.

\* Lib. III.

† In Vir. Pii  
Papæ.

|| Epist. I. at-  
trib. Pio PP.  
p. 194. Edit.  
Blondell.

2. HENCE \* *Origen* in his *Homily* upon that place of *St. Paul* before mentioned, delivers it as his Opinion, that it was the *Hermas* there spoken of who wrote this *Book*. But † *Eusebius* do's more; He tells us that it was the received Opinion in those days, that it was composed by him. And that it continued to be so in the Age after, || *St. Hierome* witnesses; who speaks yet more positively than *Eusebius* to that purpose. And from all which we may conclude what is to be judg'd of that Mistake which our latter Writers have fallen into, by their too credulous following \* the *Author* of the *Poem* against *Marcion* under the Name of *Tertullian*, viz. that it was written by *Hermes* Brother to *Pope Pius*; and in which not only the † *Authors* of the *Pontifical* ascribed to *Pope Damascus*, and of the pretended || *Decretal Epistles* of the ancient *Bishops* of *Rome*, but the *Martyrologists* of the Middle Ages, *Bede*, *Ado*, &c. have generally been involved.

3. IT is true, *Cardinal Baronius* has endeavour'd to make up this Difference, by supposing that the *Hermes* spoken of by *St. Paul*, was Brother to *Pope Pius*, and so all Parties may be in the right. But besides, that this *Book* was written by *Hermas*, not the *Hermes* of whom  
St. Paul

St. *Paul* there speaks ; the difference of the \* Time renders it altogether incredible, that a Person of some considerable Age at St. *Paul's* writing his *Epistle*, should have lived so long as that *Pope's* Brother is said to have done : Whom the † *Cardinal* himself observes to have been living CLXIV. Years after *Christ* ; that is to say, CVII. Years after the writing of St. *Paul's* *Epistle* to the *Romans*. And this his *Epitomator* † *Spondanus* was aware of: And therefore tho' he seems to have allow'd of the Conjecture, yet could not chuse but add this Reflection of his own upon it ; that according to this reckoning, *Hermas* must have been CXXX Years old when he died, and in all probability a great deal more.

\* See Bellarm. de Script. §. I. P. 45. in Herm.

† Annal. Eccl. in fine Anni 164

† Spondan. Epitom. Annal. Baron. ad Ann. 159.

4. WHAT the Condition of this *Hermas* was before his *Conversion*, we cannot tell ; but that he was a Man of some Consideration, we may conclude from what we read of him in his *Third* \* *Vision*: Where he is said to have been formerly unprofitable to the LORD upon the account of those *Riches*, which after he became a *Christian*, he seems to have dispensed in Works of Charity and Beneficence.

\* Vision III. nu n. VI. below, P. 348.

5. NOR have we any more knowledge how he was converted, than what

h 2 his

\* *Vision* I.  
num. 3. *Vif.* II.  
num. 2, 3.

his Condition was before: It is probable from several Passages in his \* *Book*, that he was brought over to *Christianity* himself, before his Family; who continued yet in the practice of many and great Impieties. During this while, *Hermas* was not only very kind to them, but seems to have been so indulgent towards them, as to permit them rather to go on in their Sins, than he would take any rough Measures with them, to draw them off from them.

† See below,  
p. 325.

6. BUT this was not all; he not only patiently bore with them, but was himself disturb'd with many anxious † Cares, to supply them in their Extravagances, and often times did not behave himself so well as he ought upon that account. But however, being of an honest and upright Disposition, and having a great Sincerity in his Religion; it pleased God at last not only to convince him of his Faults, in thus neglecting his Family, but to give them Grace to hearken to his Admonitions, and to embrace at once both the *Christian Faith*, and a *Practice* also suitable thereunto.

7. WHAT he did after this we have no account; but that he lived a very strict Life, we may reasonably conjecture, in that it pleased God to vouchsafe

safe such extraordinary Revelations to him; and to employ him in several Messages to his *Church*, both to correct their Manners, and to warn them of the *Tryals* that were about to come upon them.

8. **THIS** was so singular a Grace, even in those Times of *Miracles*, that we find some other *Christians*, not so humble as they ought to be, became Enemies to him upon the account of them. However this did not hinder, but that God still continu'd to make use of his Ministry in admonishing Sinners; and he as readily and faithfully went on, both in warning them of their danger, and in exhorting them to repent and save their Souls.

9. **THIS** then was the Business of this *Holy Man*, in which he spent his *Life*; and if we may believe the *Roman Martyrologie*, his *Death* was not unsuitable to it: Where we read, that *being illustrious for his Miracles, he at last offer'd himself a worthy Sacrifice unto God.*

But upon what Grounds this is establish'd

\* *Baronius* himself could not tell us: \* Annot. ad  
Insomuch that in his *Annals* he durst Mart. Rom.  
not once mention the manner of his Mai. ix.

Death, but is content to say †, " That † Euseb. An.  
" having undergone many Labours and nal. Eccles. ad  
" Troubles in the time of the Persecu. ann. 161.

" tion under *Aurelius*, ( and that too



“ without any Authority ) he at last  
 “ rested in the LORD, *July XXVI.* and  
 “ which is therefore observed in Com-  
 “ memoration of him. And here is in-  
 deed a pleasant Mistake, and worthy the  
*Roman Martyrologie*. For this *Author*,  
 from the *Book* of which we are now  
 discoursing, being sometimes called by  
 the Title of *Pastor*, or *Shepherd*, the  
*Martyrologist* has very gravely divided  
 the good Man into *two Saints*: And they  
 observe the Memorial of *Hermas* \*,  
*May IX<sup>th</sup>*, and of *Pastor*, *July XXVI<sup>th</sup>*.  
 Unless we shall rather say that this was  
 indeed the *Cardinal's Blunder*, and the  
*Martyrologie* in the right, to make two  
 distinct Persons of St. *Hermas* remem-  
 bered by St. *Paul*, and the Brother of  
*Pope Pius*, to whom the \* Passages men-  
 tion'd *July XXVI.* do manifestly belong:  
 And erred only in applying the Chara-  
 cter of † *Pastor* to the latter, which,  
 with the Treatise of which we are now  
 discoursing, ought, as the ∴ *Cardinal* has  
 truly observed, to have been ascribed to  
 the former.

\* Vid. Marty-  
 rol. Rom. ad  
 Maii ix. &  
 Jul. xxvi.

\* Comp. Mar-  
 tyrol. Rom.  
 Jul. xxvi. with  
 Baron. Annal.  
 A° 162, 164,  
 166.

† Martyrol.  
 Rom. Jul. xxvi.  
 ∴ Annot. b. ad  
 Martyrol.  
 Rom. Maii ix.

10. BUT not to insist any longer on  
 the *Author* of this *Book*: As for the  
 Work it self, we find both the *Ancient*  
*Fathers*, and the *Learned Men* of our  
 own Times, not a little divided in their  
 judgments concerning it. Some there  
 are, and those the nearest to the time  
 when

when this Book was written, that treat it almost with the same Respect that they would do the *Canonical Scriptures*.

\* *Irenaeus* quotes it under the very Name of the *Scripture*. † *Origen*, tho' he sometimes moderates his Opinion of it, upon the account of some who did not, it seems, pay the same Respect with himself to it; yet speaking of *Hermas* being the *Author* of this Book in his *Comments* on the Epistle to the *Romans*, gives us this Character of it, *That He thought it to be a most useful Writing; and was, as he believed, Divinely Inspired.* || *Eusebius* tells us, that tho' being doubted of by Some, it was not esteem'd *Canonical*, yet was it by Others judged a most necessary Book, and as such read publicly in the Churches. And St. \* *Hierom* having in like manner observed that it was read in some Churches, makes this Remark upon it, That it was indeed a very profitable Book; and whose Testimony was often quoted by the *Greek Fathers*. † *Athanasius* places it in the same rank with the *Books of Scripture*, and calls it a most useful Treatise: And in || another place tells us, That tho' it was not strictly *Canonical*, yet was it reckon'd among those Books which the Fathers appointed to be read to such as were to be instructed in the Faith, and desired to be directed in the Way of Piety.

\* Lib. IV. ad-  
vers. Hæres. &  
apud Euseb.  
Hist. Eccles.  
lib. IV. c. 8.  
† Origen E-  
narrat. in E-  
pist. ad Rom.  
p. 411. D.

|| Hist. Eccles.  
lib. III. c. 3.

\* Catalo-  
Script. in  
Herm.

† De Incarnar.  
Verb. Tom. I.  
p. 55. D.

|| Epist. Pasch.  
Tom. II. p. 39,  
40.

11. HENCE we may observe, as a farther Evidence of that Respect which was paid to this *Book* heretofore, that it was not only *openly read in the Churches*, but in some of the most *ancient Manuscripts* of the *New Testament*, is joyned together with the other Books of the *Holy Scriptures*. An Instance of this \* *Cotelerius* offers us in that of the Monastery of *St. Germans* in *France*, in which it is continued on at the End of *St. Paul's Epistles*. And in several of the Old *Stichometries*, it is put in the same Catalogue with the *Inspired Writings*. As may be seen in that which the same || *Author* has published out of a Manuscript in the *King's Library*, in his *Observations upon St. Barnabas*; and in which *St. Barnabas's Epistle* is placed immediately before the *Revelations*, as the *Acts of the Apostles*, and *Hermas's Shepherd* are immediately after it.

\* Annot. ad  
Herm. p. 41.

|| Annot. in  
Barnab. p. 9,  
10,

12. AND yet after all this, we find this same Book not only doubted of by Others among the *Ancient Fathers*, but slighted even by some of those, who upon other Occasions have spoken thus highly in its Favour. Thus \* *St. Jerome* in his *Comments* Exposes the Folly of that *Apocryphal Book*, as he calls it, which in his *Catalogue of Writers* he had  
so

\* Comment. in  
Habac. l. 14.  
vol. 83. D.

so highly applauded. \* *Tertullian*, who<sup>\* De Orat. cap. XII.</sup> spake it not honourably yet calmly of it whilst a Catholick, being become † *Montanist*, rejected it, even with † De Pudicitia, Scorn. And most of the other † Fathers<sup>cap. X.</sup> who have spoken the highest of it themselves, yet plainly enough insinuate, that † Vid. Testimon. in Edit. Coteler. p. 28, there were those who did not put the &c. same Value upon it. Thus \* *Origen* \* Philocal. c.I. mentions some who not only deny'd, but despis'd its *Authority*. And † *Cassian* † Cassian. Col. having made use of it in the *Point* lar. xiii. c. 12. of *Free-Will*, † *Prosper* without more † Contr. Colado rejected it as a Testimony of no lator. c.XXX. Value. And what the Judgment of the *Latter Ages* was as to this matter, especially after ∴ *Pope Gelasius* had ranked it among the *Apochryphal Books*, may be seen at large in the Observations of \* *Antonius Augustinus* upon that Decree.

∴ Decrer. Gratian. Dist. XV.

\* De Emend. Gratiani Dial. VI. p. 63, 64.

13. HOW far this has influenced the Learned Men of our present Times in their Censures upon this Work, is evident from what many on all sides have freely spoken concerning it: Who not only \* deny it to have been written by *Hermas* the Companion of *St. Paul*, but utterly cast it off, as a Piece of no Worth, but rather full of Error and Folly. Thus † *Baronius* himself, tho' he delivers not his own Judgment concerning it, yet plainly enough shews that he ran in with the severest Censures of the

\* See Postev. Apparac. Tom. II. titul. Pastor.

† Baron Annal. ann. CLIX. num. 5, 6.

the *Ancients* against it : And in effect charges it with favouring the *Arrians*, tho' upon a mistaken Authority of

\* Epist. ad Afrosapud Theodoret. Hist. Eccles. lib. I. cap. 8.  
† Script. Eccles. Centur. I. in Herm.

\* *St. Athanasius*, and which by no means proves any such Errour to be in it. But † *Cardinal Bellarmine* is more free : He tells us that it has many hurtful things in it, and particularly that it favours the *Novatian Heresie* ; which yet I think a very little Equity in interpreting of some Passages that look that way, by others that are directly contrary thereunto, would serve to acquit it of. Others are

¶ Jo. M. Brasichellan. apud Labbeum de Script. To. I. p. 791.  
† De Script. in Herm. Tom. I. p. 431.

yet more severe ¶ : They censure it as full of Heresies and Fables : Tho' this \* *Labbe* would be thought to excuse, by telling us that they have been foisted into it by some later Interpolations, and ought not to be imputed to *Hermas*, the Author of this Book.

† Rivet. Critic. Sac. lib. I. c. 12.  
Hoernbeck. Theol. PP. To. I. Miscellan. Sac. p. 91.  
Scutcl. Medulla PP. pag. 375. Dailé de Script. Ignat. Larroque. O. serv. in Vind. Ignat. Part. I. p. 19. Add. Give Hist. Litter. p. 21, &c.

14. NOR have many † of those of the *Reform'd Churches* been any whit more favourable in their Censures of the present Treatise. But then as the Chiefest of the most Ancient Fathers heretofore, tho' they admitted it not into the *Canon of Holy Scripture*, yet otherwise paid a very great Deference to it ; so the more moderate part of the Learned Men of our present Times, esteem it as a Piece worthy of all Respect, and clear of those Faults which are too lightly charged by some Persons upon

upon it. Thus \* *Petavius*, none of the most favourable Critics upon the *Ancient Fathers*, yet acknowledges, as to the present Book, that it was never censured by any of the *Ancients* as guilty of any false Doctrine or Heresie; and especially as to the Point of the *Holy Trinity*. † *Cotelerius*, one of the latest Editors of it, esteems it as an Ecclesiastical Work of good note, and a great Defence of the Catholick Faith against the Errors of *Montanism*: Whose Judgment is not only follow'd by their late Historian \* *Natalis Alexander*, but is made good too in the Defence of it against those Objections, which some have brought to lessen its Reputation. And for those of our own Communion, I shall mention only two, but They such as will serve instead of many to all judicious Persons, who have at large justified it against the chief of those Exceptions that have been taken at it; the One, the most Excellent Bishop \* *Pearson* in his Vindication of St. *Ignatius*; the Other the Learned Dr. † *Bull*, in his Defence of the *Nicene Faith*, in the Point of our Blessed Saviour's *Divinity*; and which he largely shews our present *Author* to have been far from doing any Prejudice unto.

\* Praefat. in  
To. II. Dogm.  
Theol. c.2. §.6.

† Norz in  
Herm. p.43.C.

\* Alex. Natal.  
§. I. Tom. I.  
P. 103, 104.

\* Vind. Ignat.  
part. I. c. 4.

† Defens. Fid.  
Nicen. §. I. c. 2.  
P. 30.

15. SUCH then have been the different Judgments of *Learned Men*, both here-

heretofore, and in our present Times, concerning this Book. It would be too great a Presumption for me to pretend to determine any thing as to this matter; and having subjoyn'd the Work it self in our common Language, every one may be able to satisfie himself what Value he ought to put upon it. That there are many useful things to be found in it, but especially in the Second, and I think, the best part of it, cannot be deny'd. And for the other Two, it must be considered, that tho' such *Visions* as we there read of, being no longer continu'd to these latter Ages, may warrantably be despised in the Pretenders of the present days; yet we cannot doubt but that at the time when this Book was written, the extraordinary Gifts of the Holy Ghost were very frequent; And we need not question but that such Revelations too among the rest, were communicated to Holy Men for the Benefit of the Church.

16. BUT I shall not pursue this Subject any farther: Nor will I add very much to what I have before said with relation to St. *Clement* and his *First Epistle*, concerning that *Part* which still remains of a *Second* under his *Name*, and which concludes the following *Collection*.

17. THAT

17. THAT this *Second Epistle* was not of so great a Reputation among the

*Primitive Fathers*, as the foregoing,

\* *Eusebius* not only plainly tells us, but

gives us this Testimony of it, That he

could not find it quoted, as the Other

was, by any of them. But St. \* *Jerome*

is more severe; he represents it to us

as rejected by them: And † *Photius* af-

ter him, calls it a *Spurious Piece*. And not

to mention any more; our most Reve-

rend Bishop \* *Usher* not only concurs in

the same Censure, but offers several

Arguments too in proof of it.

\* Hist. Eccles.  
lib. III. c. 38.

\* De Script. in  
Clemente.

† Phot. Cod.  
112, 113.

\* Dissert. de  
Script. Ignat.  
cap. X.

18. AND yet, when all is done, it

do's not appear but that St. *Clement* was

indeed the *Author* of this, as well as of

the other *Epistle*, before spoken of; tho'

it was not so much esteem'd, nor by

consequence so generally known to the

*Ancients* as that. In the \* *Manuscript* of

St. *Thecla* we find this set forth under

the same Title with the other. And in

all the other Catalogues of the *Ancients*,

wherever One is spoken of, the Other

is for the most part set together with

it: As may particularly be observed in

the *Apostolical* † *Canons*, one of the most

early Collections of this kind.

\* Vid. Catal.  
Bevereg. Co-  
dex Canon.  
Vindicat.  
289.

† Canon.  
LXXXV.

19. NOR does \* *Eusebius* deny this

*Epistle* to be St. *Clement's*, but only says

\* Hist. Eccles.  
lib. III. c. 33.

that



\* Divinat. de  
Epist. Clem.  
† Beverege  
Cod. Canon.  
Vindic. lib. II.  
c. 9. §. 10. p.  
286.  
|| Euseb. Hist.  
Ecclef. lib. IV.  
c. 23.

that it was not so celebrated as the Other. And true it is, we do not find it either so often, or so expressly mention'd, as that. But yet if the Conjecture of \* *Wendeline*, approved by a very, Learned † Man of our own Country may be admitted; || *Eusebius* himself will afford us an Instance of one who not only spake of it, but spake of it as wont to be publicly read in the Church of *Corinth*. For discoursing of the *Epistles* of *Dionysius*, Bishop of that See; he tells us, that in One of them which he wrote to the *Romans*, he took notice of St. *Clement's* *Epistle* in these Words: *Today have we kept the LORD's Day with all Holiness; in which we have read your Epistle, as we shall always continue to read it for our Instruction, together with the former written to us by Clement.* What that *Epistle* was, that *Dionysius* here speaks of, as written by the Church of *Rome* to that of *Corinth*, and publicly read in the Congregation there, it do's not appear; nor can we give any account of it, unless it was that which St. *Clement* wrote to them in the Name of the Church of *Rome*, and which *Eusebius* tells us was publicly read in that Church in those days. But then if this be so, as I think it most likely that it is; we must conclude that the *Epistle* of which we are now speaking, was indeed the first written to them, however called  
his

his *Second Epistle*; and wont to be read, together with that other which he sent in the Name of the *Roman Church* to them, in their Assemblies.

20. NOW that which yet more favours this Opinion is, that it seems by many Arguments to appear, that this *Letter* which he wrote in his own Name (tho' as being sent from a particular Person, and not in it self so considerable as the Other, it was usually set after that which he wrote by the Order of the *Church*, and in their Name, to the *Corinthians*) was yet indeed the \* first written. And for being read in the *Churches*, † *Epiphanius* expressly tells us, that this *Epistle*, no less than the foregoing, was in his time wont to be publickly read in the Congregation. And tho' *St. Jerome* and *Photius* indeed speak but meanly of it in those places where they seem to deliver the Judgment of *Eusebius* rather than their own Opinion; yet upon other || Occasions, they make no exception against the Authority of it, but equally ascribe it to *St. Clement* with the Other, of which there is no doubt.

\* See Divinar.  
Wendelin. ad  
secund Epist.  
Clem. Add.  
Coteler. An-  
not. ad PP. A-  
postol. p. 108.  
† Hæres.  
XXVII. num.  
6.

|| See Hieron.  
adv. Jovin.  
Tom. III. fol.  
12. Photius  
Cod. 126. in  
Clem.

21. IT were an easie matter to shew that the same was the Opinion of the other *Ecclesiastical Writers* of those Times: But this having been done at large by  
Wendeline

† Wendel. Dio.  
de Clem. E-  
pist.

¶ Noræ ad  
Clem. p. 104,  
105.

∴ Natal. Alex.  
Dissert. Hist.

S. I. Tom. I.  
in Clem.

† *Wendeline* first, and since by ¶ *Cotelerius*, and his perpetual Transcriber ∴ *Natalis Alexander*, I shall forbear; and conclude with this, That it is an *Epistle*, tho' not of equal Value with the Other, yet of good use, and which if it were not written by *St. Clement*, as I make no doubt but it was, has yet nothing in it that is in the least unworthy of him.

22. AND now having said thus much concerning these two last Pieces, and with which the present Collection is concluded; I have but this to add, That they are Both of them now first of all put into our own Language; and presented to the perusal of the *English Reader*: The *Former* from the *Old Latin Version*, which is by † some much complained of, tho' by ¶ others as stiffly defended: The *Latter* from the Original *Greek*, as it was publish'd by *Mr. Patrick Young* from the *Alexandrian Manuscript*, the only *Copy* that, for ought appears, do's at this day remain of it.

† Barthius apud  
Coteler. Not. in Herm.  
P. 44.  
¶ Cotelerius  
ibid.

23. IF any one shall ask how it came to pass that our Learned Country-Man *Mr. Burton*, when he set out the former *Epistle* of *St. Clement* in *English*, did not subjoyn this to it; the Answer which † himself warrants us to return is this: That taking what has been said by the

† Burton Notes  
on S. Clement.  
p. 94.

*Ancients*

*Antients* before mentioned, in the strictest Sense, he looked upon this *Epistle* as a Spurious Piece: And which tho' it carried the Name of St. *Clement*, was yet truly no more his, than those *Constitutions* and *Recognitions*, which are also publish'd under the same Name; but are generally acknowledged to be none of his, as in the prosecution of this Discourse I shall take occasion more particularly to shew.

24, AS for the *Epistle* it self, I have concluded it somewhat sooner, than the *Greek*, which yet remains of it, do's. But that which I have omitted being only an imperfect Piece of a *Sentence*, and which would have made the *Conclusion* much more abrupt than it is now; I chose rather to add what follow'd here, than to continue it there. And to make the *Reader* the better amends for this Liberty, I have not only subjoyn'd what remains of St. *Clement*, but have endeavour'd to make out the Sense of what is wanting in our Copy from the Other *Clement*, who seems to have follow'd this *Original*.

† “ FOR the LORD himself be- † Clem. Rom.  
 “ ing asked by a certain Person, when ex MS. Regio.  
 “ his Kingdom should come; answer'd,  
 “ When Two shall be One, and that  
 “ which is without as that which is with-  
 “ in; and the Male with the Female,  
 “ neither

\* Ex Clem. A-  
lexandrin.

“neither Male nor Female. Now *Two*  
 “*are One*, when we speak the Truth to  
 “each other; and there is, (without Hy-  
 “pocrisie,) one Soul in two Bodies. *And*  
 “*that which is without, as that which is*  
 “*within*; He means this; he calls the  
 “Soul that which is within, and the  
 “Body that which is without. As there-  
 “fore thy Body appears, so let thy Soul  
 “be seen by its good Works. *And the*  
 “*Male with the Female, neither Male*  
 “*nor Female*; ——— \* He means this;  
 “He calls our Anger the Male, our  
 “Concupiscence the Female. When  
 “therefore a Man is come to such a  
 “pass, that he is subject neither to the  
 “One or Other of these, both of which  
 “through the prevalence of Custom,  
 “and an evil Education, cloud and dar-  
 “ken the Reason; but rather having  
 “dispell’d the Mist arising from them,  
 “and being full of Shame, shall by Re-  
 “pentance have united both his Soul and  
 “Spirit in the Obedience of Reason;  
 “then as *Paul*, says, there is in us nei-  
 “ther *Male nor Female*.

## CHAP. IX.

That the *Pieces* here put together are All that remain of the *most Primitive* and *Apostolical* Antiquity.

*That there are several Other Treatises pretended to have been written within the compass of this Period; But none such as truly come up to it. Of the Epistle of our Saviour Christ to Abgarus, and the Occasion of it: That it is not probable that any such Letter was written by him. The Epistles ascribed to the Virgin Mary, spurious. So is the Epistle pretended to have been written by St. Paul to the Laodiceans. Of the Acts, the Gospel, the Preaching and Revelations of St. Peter. Of the Liturgy attributed to St. Matthew: And the Discourse said to have been written by him concerning the Nativity of the Blessed Virgin. Of the Liturgies ascribed to St. Peter, St. Mark, and St. James. Of the Gospels attributed to several of the Apostles. Of the Apostles Creed; and the Canons called Apostolical. Of the other Pieces under the Names*

## Of some Other Treatises

of *St. Clement and St. Ignatius: And particularly of the Recognitions and Epitome of Clement. Of the History of the Life, Miracles, and Assumption of St. John, pretended to have been written by Prochorus, One of the Seven Deacons. Of the Histories of St. Peter and St. Paul, ascribed to Linus Bishop of Rome. Of the Lives of the Apostles attributed to Abdias Bishop of Babylon. Of the Epistles of St. Martial. Of the Passion of St. Andrew, written by the Presbyters of Achaja. Of the Works ascribed to Dionysius the Areopagite. That, upon the whole, the Pieces here put together, are all that remain of the Apostolical Times, after the Books of the Holy Scripture.*

1. **A**ND now having said thus much concerning the several *Pieces* here put together, and the *Authors* of them; it is time to go on to the *Other Part* of this *Discourse*, and consider what may be fit to be observed concerning them *All together*, and as they are now first of all set forth, in our own *Language*, in the following *Collection*.

2. **NOW** the first thing that may be fit to be here taken notice of is, That the following *Collection* is truly what the *Title* pretends it to be, A full  
and

and perfect Collection of all the *Genuine Writings* that remain to us of the *Apostolical Fathers*: And carries on the *Antiquity* of the *Church* from the time of the *Holy Scriptures* of the *New Testament*, to about an Hundred and Fifty Years after *Christ*.

3. TO make this the more evident, it will be necessary for me to consider, what those other Writings are which some have endeavoured to raise up into the Rank of *Apostolical Antiquity*; and shew, that they are indeed Writings either of no *Credit* nor *Authority* at all, or at least, not of such as they are falsly pretended to be. And to the end I may proceed the more clearly in this Enquiry, I will divide the several Pieces now to be examined into the *Three* following Ranks: The, *First*, of Those which are *Antecedent* to any I have here collected; as being pretended to have been written either by our *Saviour Christ* himself, or by the *Virgin Mary*, or by the *Apostles*. The, *Second*, of such Other *Tracts* as are ascribed to some of those *Fathers*, whose *Genuine Remains* I have here put together. And the, *Third*, of such Pieces as are said to have been written by some *Other Authors* who lived in the *Apostolical Times*; and wrote, if we will believe some Men, several *Books* much more considerable than any I have here collected.



4. OF the first of these kinds is that pretended Letter of our Blessed *Saviour* to *Abgarus* King of *Edessa*, a little City of *Arabia* \*, a part of which *Country* was subject to him. Now this may seem to be of so much the better Credit, in that † *Eusebius* tells us he had himself faithfully translated it out of the *Syriac* Language, as he found it in the *Archives* of *Edessa*. Nor was it very long after, that ‖ *Ephram*, a *Deacon* of that *Church*, made mention of this Communication between our *Saviour* and *Abgarus*, as the Occasion of the first Conversion of that Place; and exhorted his People upon that Account, the rather to hold fast to their Holy Profession, and to live worthy of it. \* *Evagrius* who wrote about Two Hundred Years after this, not only confirmed all that had been said by Both these, but added, from *Procopius*, several other Circumstances, unknown, for ought appears, to either of them. And particularly, that of the *Impression* which our *Saviour* had made of his Face upon a *Napkin*, and sent to that Prince; and which, he tells us, was of no small Advantage to them in the defence of their Town against *Chosroes* King of *Persia*, who by this means was hindered from taking of it.

\* Vid. Annor. Valefii in Euseb. p. 18, 19.

† Hist. Eccles. lib. I. c. 13.

‖ Testam. S. E. phram inter Oper. p. 788.

\* Evagrii Hist. Eccles. lib. IV. cap. 27.

5. AND now, since the Addition of this new Story, to the old account of this Matter; it is not to be wondred if the *Patrons of Images* among the *Greeks*, from henceforth contended with all Earnestness for the Truth of both. Inso-much that we find they instituted a particular *Festival* in Memory of it, *August* the XVI<sup>th</sup>; and transcribed at large the whole History of this Adventure into their *Menaon*, and recited it upon it.

6. AND upon the same account I suppose it is, that some of our late Authors, tho' they do not care to assert the Truth of this Story, are yet unwilling to deny all Credit to it. \* *Baronius* reports both the *Relation* and the *Epistle* from *Eusebius*, but will not answer for the Truth of either. † *Spondanus* delivers the same from the *Cardinal*, that he had done from *Eusebius*; and passes no Censure either One way or Other upon it: Only in his *Margent* he observes that *Gretser* the *Jesuit* in his *Discourse of Images*, &c. had vindicated the Authority of our *Saviour's Epistle* to *Abgarus*, from the Exceptions of *Casaubon* in his *Exercitations* upon *Baronius* against it. || *Gerard Vossius* in his *Scholia* upon the *Testament of St. Ephraem*, contents himself to refer us to the Authority of the Ancients for the Truth of this Re-

\* *Annal. Eccl.*  
ann. XXXI.  
num. 60.

† *Epitom. An-*  
*nal. Baron.*  
Ann. XXXI.  
num. 22.

|| *Annot. ad O-*  
*per. Ephraem.*  
syr. p. 796.

\* Annot. in  
Euseb. Hist.  
Ecclef. p. 25. A.

lation; who, he pretends, did without Controversie look upon it to be authentick. And \* *Valesius* himself, tho' he do's not go about to confute this Story, but rather endeavours to rectifie those Errors that seem'd the most considerable in it; yet plainly enough shews that he was not out of all doubt concerning the Truth of it.

† Apud Gratian, Dist. XV.  
c. 3. Simon  
Hist. Crit. du  
N. T. ch. iii.  
p. 23.

|| Exercit. in  
Baron. XIII.  
§. 31. p. 289.  
\* Szcul. I. Vol.  
I. p. 266.

† Nouvelle  
Bibl. Vol. I.  
p. 1.

7. BUT Others, even of the Church of Rome, have not observed so much Caution in this particular. They roundly stand by the Censure of Pope † *Gelafius* who pronounced this *Epistle* of our Saviours to be *Apocryphal*: And not only shew by many probable Arguments the Falseness of it; but what is yet more, pass the same Censure upon the Story of the Image too that || *Gasaubon* had done, notwithstanding all that *Gretser* could say in Favour of it. \* *Natalis Alexander* delivers this Conclusion concerning it: *The Epistle of Abgarus to our Saviour, and his Answer to it, are Supposititious and Apocryphal*; And at large answers all that is usually urged in Favour of them. And † *Du Pin* after him, yet more solidly convinces it of such manifest Errors, as may serve to satisfy all considering Persons, that *Eusebius* and *Ephram* were too easie of Belief in this particular: And did not sufficiently examin into it, when they deliver'd that as a certain

tain Truth, which in several Circumstances shews it self to be evidently otherwise.

8. I SHALL not need to say any thing of the Opinions of the Learned Men of the \* *Reformed Religion* as to this Matter; which generally agree in the same *Censure*. But yet seeing both *Eusebius* and *St. Ephraem* have spoken with such Confidence of this Story, and whose Authority ought not to be lightly esteemed; I shall chuse rather with the † middle sort, to leave it to every one to judg as he pleases, than determine any thing in this Case. And that they may the better do it, I will subjoyn at length the Two *Epistles*, as they are rendered by *Eusebius* from the Original *Syriac* into *Greek*; and from him translated into our own *Tongue*.

\* Vid. apud Balaagnm Exercit. Hist. Crit. in Baron. ad ann. XLIII. num. 18. pag. 430.

† Casaubon. Exerc. in Baron. XIII. p. 289. Montacutius Orig. Eccles. Tom. I. part. 2. p. 63. Cave Hist. Literaria, §. I. p. 1. in Jesu Christo.

*The EPISTLE of Abgarus  
to our Blessed Saviour.*

9. “ **A** *Bgarus* Prince of *Edessa*, to Jesus the Good Saviour, who has appeared in the Country about *Jerusalem*, Health. I have received an account of Thee, and Thy Cures; how without any Medicines or Herbs they are done by Thee. For Report  
“ says,

" says, that thou makest the Blind to  
 " see, the Lame to walk; that thou  
 " cleanse the Lepers, and castest out  
 " unclean Spirits and Devils, and healest  
 " Those who have laboured under long  
 " Diseases, and raisest up the Dead.  
 " And having heard all this concerning  
 " Thee, I have concluded with my self  
 " one of these two things; either that  
 " Thou art *God*, and that being come  
 " down from Heaven, thou doest all  
 " these mighty Works; Or that Thou  
 " art *the Son of God*, seeing thou art a-  
 " ble to perform such things. Where-  
 " fore by this present Letter I intreat  
 " Thee to come unto me, and to cure  
 " me of the Infirmary that lies upon me.  
 " For I have also heard that the *Jews*  
 " murmur against Thee, and seek to do  
 " Thee Mischief. But I have tho' but  
 " a small, yet a very pretty City which  
 " may be sufficient both for Thee and  
 " me.

*The* ANSWER *of our*  
 Saviour *to* Abgarus.

10. " **A** *Bgarus*, thou art blessed, in  
 " that tho' Thou hast not  
 " seen me, thou hast yet believed in me.  
 " For it is written concerning me, That  
 " those who have seen me should not  
 " believe

“ believe in me ; that so they who have  
 “ not seen me, might believe and live.  
 “ As for what thou hast written unto me,  
 “ that I should come to thee ; It is ne-  
 “ cessary that all those things for which  
 “ I was sent, should be fulfilled by me  
 “ in this place : And that having ful-  
 “ filled them, I should be received up  
 “ to him that sent me. When there-  
 “ fore I shall be received into Heaven,  
 “ I will send unto thee some One of  
 “ my Disciples, who shall both heal thy  
 “ Distemper, and give Life to thee, and  
 “ to those that are with thee.

II. HAVING said thus much concerning this pretended Entercourse between our *Saviour Christ* and this *Prince* ; I should in the next place mention the Letters ascribed to his *Mother*, the Blessed *Virgin Mary*, but that there is not the least shadow of Truth to give Credit to them ; nor any Arguments brought in favour of them, that may deserve a Refutation. I shall therefore say nothing to these, but pass on without any more ado, to those Pieces which have been attributed either to some particular *Apostle* or *Evangelist* ; or else are pretended to have been composed by the whole Colledge of the *Apostles* together.

12. OF the former kind is the *Epistle* of *St. Paul* to the *Laodiceans*, set out by

\* Bibl. Sanct.  
lib. II. in Paulo.  
Add. Frasse-  
nium Disq. Bi-  
blic. p. 731, &c.

by *Hutter* in his *Polyglott New Testament*, and inserted by \* *Sixtus Senensis* into his *Bibliothèque*, together with the Other *Epistles* that are in the like manner pretended, tho' without any just ground, to have pass'd between the same *Apostle*, and *Seneca* the *Philosopher*. Now that which gave occasion to the forging of such an *Epistle*, was; that *St. Paul* himself seems to speak, *Coloss. iv. 16.* as if he had written an *Epistle* to that *Church*. For having commanded the *Colossians* when they should have read the *Epistle* which he wrote to them, *To cause it to be read in the Church of the Laodiceans*; He adds, *That they likewise should read the Epistle from Laodicea*. But whoever shall examin the true Import of those Words, will find that *St. Paul* do's not there speak of an *Epistle* sent to the *Laodiceans*; but either of some *Epistle* that had been written \* from thence, (as † *Theophylact* thinks his *First Epistle* to *Timothy*; ) Or of some *Epistle* which the *Apostle* had written to some Other *Church*, but order'd to be sent on to them: As the *Epistle* to the *Corinthians* was directed not only to that One place, but to all the *Churches* of *Aschaja*, 2 *Cor. I. 1.* And as in the very Passage under debate, the *Epistle* to the *Colossians* is order'd to be communicated to the *Church* of the *Laodiceans*, and to be read in it. And then taking this to have been the mean-  
ing

\* So Chrysoft.  
Theodoret,  
&c.

† Theophy-  
lact. in loc.

ing of that Expression, it will not be improbable but that by the *Epistle* from *Laodicea* he may have meant his *Epistle* to the *Ephesians*; and which \* *Tertullian* \* *Tertull. adv. Marcion. lib. V. cap. xi. p. 476.* tells us was wont in those days to be sometimes called by that Name.

13. NOW that which favours this Conjecture is, that *Ephesus* was in those days looked upon, even in the *Civil* Account of the *Empire*, as the *Chief City* and *Metropolis* of the *Lesser Asia*. Here it was that the || *Emperours* order'd their *Edicts* relating to that *Province* to be publish'd; (in like manner, as we find in several † *Laws* of the *Theodosian Code*, that they were wont to be proposed at *Rome* for *Italy*, and at *Carthage* for *Africa*.) Here the *Common-Councils* of *Asia* assembled: And to name no more, Here the *Publick Sports* and *Sacred Rites*, &c. that concerned the whole *Community* of that *Province*, were usually transacted.

|| Vid. Euseb. Eccles. Hist. lib. IV. c. 13.

† Vid. Annor. Valef. in Euseb. p. 60. A.

14. AND much greater was the respect which it had with relation to *Ecclesiastical Matters*; both as it was a *Church* founded by *St. Paul*, and as it was the *Seat* of the *Beloved Disciple St. John*, who continued there to the very time of *Trajan*, above 100 Years after *Christ*. Hence \* *Tertullian* directing those who were desirous to know what

\* *Tertull. de Prescript. cap. XXXVI. pag. 215.*



\* Hist. Ecclef.  
lib. III. c. vi.  
P. 339.

Rev. I. 11. II. 1.

what the true Faith of *Christ* was, to enquire among the Chiefest Churches in every part, what had been deliver'd to them, and was the Faith received and taught amongst them; bids them if they were in *Italy* go to *Rome*, if in *Achaja* to *Corinth*; if in *Macedonia*, to *Philippi*; if in *Asia*, to *Ephesus*: In-  
somuch that, as \* *Evagrius* tells us, the Bishop of *Ephesus* had a *Patriarchal Power* within the *Diocese* of *Asia* till the Time of the *Fourth General Council*. And long after that, *Theodorus* Bishop of this See, subscribing to the *A&S* of the *Sixth General Council*, calls himself Bishop of *Ephesus*, the *Metropolis* of the *Province* of *Asia*. And even in the Times of which we are now discoursing, *St. John* writing to the *Seven Churches* of *Asia*, (of which *Laodicea* was One,) places || *Ephesus* at the head of them, as that which had the Precedence of all the rest in those Parts.

15. SEEING then such was the Pre-rogative, which the Church of *Ephesus* had, from the beginning, over all the other Churches of the *Asian Diocese*; and that *St. Paul* himself had first planted *Christianity* there: And seeing it appears from the Command which he gave to the *Colossians*, Chap. iv. 16. to cause the *Epistle* which he had written to them, to be read in the Church of the *Laodiceans*, that he was wont to order the  
Epistles

*Epistles* which he wrote to One *Church* to be sent to, and be read in the Others that we reneer unto it: Seeing, lastly, we are told both by \* *Tertullian* and *Epiphanius*, that the *Epistle* to the *Ephesians*, was anciently called by some the *Epistle* to the *Laodiceans*; I think it may not be improbable, but that by the *Epistle* from *Laodicea*, he may have meant the *Epistle* which he wrote to † the *Ephesians*, at the same time, and by the same Person, that he wrote to the *Colossians*; and which being from them communicated to the *Laodiceans*, might be ordered by *St. Paul* to be sent on to the *Colossians*, who were a Neighbour *Church* to *Laodicea*, and afterwards subject to it as their *Metropolitane*.

\* *Tertull. adv. Marcion lib. V. c. xvii. p. 481. Epiphani. Hæref. xlii. num. xii.*

† *Vid. L'Histoire Critique de Monsieur Simon sur le N. T. c. xv. p. 166.*

16. BUT whatever becomes of this Conjecture: Whether by the *Epistle* from *Laodicea* we are to understand some *Epistle* written from that place, and that either by *St. Paul* to some other Church or Person, or by the *Laodiceans* \* to him; Or whether we are to understand by it some *Epistle* that was to be communicated from thence to the *Colossians*, which seems to me the more probable, and particularly that which he wrote by *Tychicus* to the *Ephesians*, at the same time that he wrote by him to the *Colossians*: Certain it is that the *Epistle* now extant under that Title is none of *St. Paul's*; nor do's

\* *Frassenius Disq. Biblic. p. 730, 731.*

do's his Expression in that place to the *Colossians*, before mentioned, any more prove there was ever any such, than that Other in 1 *Cor.* v. 9. proves a *Third Epistle* to the *Corinthians*, which some also have pretended, as \* *Sixtus Sinensis*, and Others observe.

\* *Sixt. Sinens.*  
Bibl. sanct. lib.  
II. in St. Paulo.

17. IT would be endless to insist upon all the other Spurious Pieces of the like kind that have been attributed to this great *Apostle*. It is sufficient to observe, that neither † *Eusebius*, nor St. || *Jerome*, knew any thing more of his Writing than what we have in those *Epistles* that are still extant in our *Bibles* under his Name; except it were the *Epistle* to the *Hebrews*, and which tho' doubted of by some in the Primitive Church, is yet ascribed to him by *Eusebius*, who expressly accounts XIV. of his *Epistles*, and speaks of that to the *Hebrews* as his; tho' he adds, that being not received by the Church of *Rome*, it was by some suspected whether it were indeed the true *Epistle* of St. Paul.

† *Euseb. Hist.*  
*Eccles. lib. III.*  
c. 3.  
|| *Hieron. de*  
*Script. Eccles.*  
in St. Paulo.

18. BUT much greater is the Authority of those *Supposititious Pieces* which the same \* *Eusebius* tells us were, even in those days, attributed to that other great *Apostle* St. Peter, viz. The *Acts*, the *Gospel*, the *Preaching*, and the *Revelations* of St. Peter. Nevertheless, seeing he at  
the

\* *Euseb. Hist.*  
*Eccles. lib. III.*  
c. xxx. Comp.  
*Hieron. in*  
*cat. Script. Ec-*  
*cles. in S. Petro.*

the same time declares that they were never look'd upon as *Catholick*, but rather as set out by some Hereticks of those Times, (as many other Pieces of the like kind were,) under the venerable Name of that *Apostle*, the better to gain thereby Credit to their Doctrine; How ancient soever they may otherwise be, yet they will not fall within the compass of the present Collection: Nor indeed is there any thing of them remaining to us, except the *Names*; and perhaps a few *Fragments*, scatter'd up and down in the *Quotations* that have been made by *Ecclesiastical Writers* out of them.

19. TO these let me add in the *third* place, the Discourses attributed to \**St. Matthew*, the first Writer of the *New Testament*. Two *Books* there are still remaining under his Name; A *Liturgy* pretended to have been composed by him, and a Discourse concerning the *Nativity* of the *Blessed Virgin*: But both rejected by Learned Men, as the Works of some *Impostor*, many Ages after the Death of that Holy *Apostle*.

\* Vid. Cave  
Hist. literar.  
p. 9. Natal. A-  
lex. S.I. Vol. I.  
p. 85. Du Pin.  
Bibl. Vol. I.  
P. 21.

20. AND the same must be said of the \* *Liturgies* ascribed in like manner to *St. Peter*, *St. Mark*, *St. James*, and Others; and of the Falsity of which all the Learned World seems now to be universally agreed. Which makes it

\* Cave. Natal.  
Alex. Du Pin.  
ib. Hoornb.  
Theol. PP. p.  
41. Rivet. Cri-  
tic. Sacr. lib. I.

\* Bona de Reb.  
Liturgic. lib. I.  
c. 8.

† Leo Allatius  
Dissert. de  
Sym. part. I.  
p. 176.

the more to be admir'd that such Great Men as \* Cardinal *Bona* and † *Leo Allatius* were, should be so far prejudiced in their Favour, as to think at least the *Liturgy* of St. *James* to have been truly compos'd by that Apostle; and only corrupted and interpolated by some other hand in the following Ages.

21. NOR may we judg any otherwise of the *Gospels* set out under the Names of several of the *Apostles*, and Others who were contemporary with them: And of which however some were very ancient; yet is it generally agreed among the most judicious of all sides, that they were not only not written by those whose Names they carry, but were for the most part set out by *suspected Persons*, and for *ill Ends*, after their Deaths.

22. AS for the Writings of the whole Colledge of *Apostles*; Two Pieces there are, besides the *Synodical Letter* spoken of by St. *Luke*, *Acts* xv. 23. which not only go under their *Names*, but have been by some ascribed to them, as the *Authors* of them. And those are, first the *Creed*, and secondly the *Canons* of the *Apostles*.

23. FOR the former of these, the *Apostles Creed*, it has been thought by many that

that it was so called, not only as being a Summary of the *Apostles Doctrine*, but because it was really composed by them. And that either in their first Assembly after our LORD's *Resurrection*, *Acts i.* or else immediately before their Dispersion, upon the breaking out of *Herod's Persecution*, *Acts xii.* which *Baronius* and others esteem the more probable. It is not my intention to enter on any particular Examination of this Matter, which has been so fully handled, not only by the late Criticks of the *Church of Rome*, \* *Natalis Alexander*, † *Du Pin*, &c. but yet more especially by || *Arch-Bishop Usher*, ∴ *Gerard Vossius*, \* *Suicer*, † *Spanhemius*, || *Tentzelius*, and \*\* *Sam. Basnage*, among the *Protestants*. It shall suffice to say, that as it is not likely, that had any such thing as this been done by the *Apostles*, *St. Luke* would have pass'd it by, without taking the least notice of it: So the Diversity of *Creeds* in the *Ancient Church*; and that not only in *Expression*, but in some whole *Articles* too, sufficiently shew's; that the *Creed* which we call by that *Name*, was not compos'd by the *Apostles*; nor probably reduced into that form in which it now is, for some Hundreds of Years after their Deaths.

\* *Nat. Alex.*  
§ I. Vol. I.  
p. 490, &c.  
† *Du Pin*, *Biblioth. Eccles.*  
Vol. I. p. 25,  
&c.  
|| *Diatrib. de*  
*Symb.*  
∴ *Voss Dissert.*  
*de tribus Sym-*  
*bolis.*  
\* *Suicer. The-*  
*saur. Eccles.*  
To. II. Voce  
*συμβολον*, p.  
1085, &c.  
† *Spanhem.*  
*Introd. ad Hist.*  
*Eccles.* §. ii.  
c. 3.  
|| *Ernest Tent-*  
*zel. Exercit.*

select. Exercit. I. \*\* *Sam. Basnage Exercit. Hist. Crit. ad Ann.*  
XLIV. num. 17, 18.

26. NOR is it any more probable that the *Canons* now extant under their Name were truly compiled by them; but rather as our Pious and Learned \* Dr. Beverege has shewn, were a Collection of the *Canons* made by the Councils of the *first Ages*, put together at several times; and finished, as we now see them, within CCC Years after *Christ*, before the assembling of the first *General Council* of *Nice*. This is the earliest date that is now ascribed to them by the most † Judicious Writers of the *Roman Communion*, as well as of the *Reformed Religion*; and || some there are who will by no means allow them to be so ancient, as even this Opinion supposes them to be.

\* Annot. in Pandect. Canon. Oxon. To. II. p. 1. Id. Codex Can. Vindicat. c. 11, &c.  
† Vid. Albaspin. Obs. lib. I. c. 13. p. 28.  
De Marca apud Bevereg. Annot. in Pandect. p. 4. num. xii. Coteler. Not. in Patr. Apostol. p. 327, 328. Du Pin Bibl. Eccles. Tom. I. p. 36. Natal. Alex. §. I. Vol. II. p. 138. || Daillé de Pseudop. Apostol. lib. III. Larroque Observat. in. Bevereg. Hoornbeck Theolog. Patr. p. 35, &c.

27. IT is evident then, that except the *Holy Scriptures*, there is nothing remaining of the truly Genuine Christian Antiquity, more early than what is here put together. Nor have the *Authors*, whose Tracts I have now set forth, any Other Pieces yet remaining, besides those that appear in the following Collection. Indeed for what concerns two of the *Fathers* here mentioned, *St. Clement*, and *St. Ignatius*; several Treatises there are, and

and some that may seem much more considerable than any I have subjoyn'd, that have been sent abroad under the Authority of their Names ; but which are at present universally exploded by all Learned Men. Such are the *Constitutions*, and *Recognitions* of *St. Clement*. The *Collection* called from the same *Father*, The *Clementines*. The *Epitome* of *Clement*, and the *Epistles* ascribed to *Ignatius*, besides the VII. here set out ; and which alone were either mention'd by *Eusebius*, or known to the Church for some Ages after \*.

\* See this discuss'd at large by Bishop Usher, Dissert. ad Ignat. cap. V, VI, XIX, p. 2.

28. I SHALL not here enter upon any particular Enquiry when these several Pieces were first sent abroad into the World ; or how it came to pass that Some even among the † Ancients themselves receiv'd them for the *Genuine Writings* of these Holy Men ; only corrupted, as many others were, by the *Hereticks* of those first Times, the better to give some Colour to their *Errours*. I will only observe, that the *Recognitions* of *St. Clement* ; not only the most *Learned*, but the most *Ancient* too of any of these, as near as we can guess, were not set forth till about the middle of the *Second Century* ; and are rejected by || *Eusebius* as none of his, but as One of those many *Impositions* which

† Epiphanius. Hæres. XXX. Ruffinus de Adulterat. libr. Origen. Tract. XXXV. in Matthæum. Author Oper. Imperfect. in Math. inter Oper. Chrysost. ad Mat. x. & xxiv.

Vid. Coteler. Nor. in Script. PP. Apost. p.

343. Natal. Alex. S. I. Tom. I. p. 125. Du Pin Bibl. Vol. I. p. 80, 81.



were even then publish'd under his Name. And for the rest, tho' some of them have been Ancient too, yet it is evident that none of them come up to the Period of which I am now speaking; nor even to the Age of the *Recognitions* before mentioned \*.

\* Coteler. An.  
not. in Script.

PP. Apost. p. 113. A. 115. D. 403. A. 431. C. D. Sixt. Senens. Biblioth. lib. II. in Clement. Possevin. Appar. p. 328. Bellarm. de Script. S. I. in Clement. Natal Alex. S. I. Tom. I. p. 129. Id. ibid. cap. de St. Ignar. p. 139. Du Pin. Biblioth. p. 81, 83, 102, &c.

29. AS for the *Epitomé* of St. *Clement*,

\* Notæ in  
Script. PP. A.  
post. p. 431.  
C. D.

† Surius ad  
Nov. xliii.  
‖ Allarius in  
Diarib. de Sy-  
meonum Scri-  
ptis.

\* Du Pin Li-  
brioth. Tom. I.  
p. 89. r.

† Vid. Geogr.  
sacr. à S. Paulo,  
p. 11, 43.

\* *Cotelerius* esteems it to have been yet later than any of the rest. Perhaps it was collected by *Metaphrastes*, whom I take to have been the Author of the *Martyrdom* of that Holy Man, set out by † *Surius* and ‖ *Allatius*, and reprinted by *Cotelerius* at the end of the Works ascribed to St. *Clement*. This is certain, that it was composed in some of the latter Ages; As was also the Account of the *Miracle* pretended to have been wrought at his *Martyrdom*, which got's under the Name of *Ephrem*, *Archbishop* of *Cberson*, and where (as \* *Du Pin* well observes) there never was any. And this *Cotelerius* seems to have been aware of; and therefore in his *Annotations* upon this Relation, calls him *Archbishop* or *Bishop* of *Cberson*. Now that there was such a Bishop appears both from the Ancient † *Notitia* of the Province

*Province of Europe under the Patriarch of Constantinople; and from the Subscription which \* Peter Bishop of this place made to the Council of Chalcedon, for Cyriacus Archbishop of Heraclea, in whose Province that See lay.*

\* Ibid. p. 233.  
in Chersoneso.

30. THERE is then nothing in any of those Pieces which make up the rest of *Cotelerius's* Collection, and are indeed All that still remain under the Names of those Fathers of which we are now speaking, that can with any good Grounds be relied upon as the Genuine Products of those Holy Men. Let us see, in the last place; Whether any of those Discourses which have been sent abroad under the Names of some others of the *Apostolical Fathers*, may deserve to be received by us, as coming truly from them.

31. AND here I shall in the first place take it for granted, that what those who are usually the most fond of such Spurious Pieces; I mean, the *Writers of the Church of Rome*, have yet almost unanimously rejected as false and counterfeit, may securely be laid aside by us, without any further enquiry into the Condition of them. Such are, *The History of the Life, Miracles, and Assumption of St. John*; pretended to have been written by *Prochorus* his Disciple, and one of the seven *Deacons*, chosen

by the *Church of Jerusalem*, *Acts vi.* The Histories of *St. Peter* and *St. Paul*, said to have been written by *Linus* one of the first *Bishops of Rome*. The *Lives* of the *Apostles*, ascribed to *Abdias* Bishop of *Babylon*, and supposed to have been written by him in the *Hebrew Tongue*. The *Epistles* of *St. Martial*; who is said to have been one of the *LXX Disciples* appointed by our *Saviour*, and one of the first *Preachers* of the *Gospel* in *France*. These are all so evidently *Spurious*, that

\* *Ecclef. Hist.* even \* *Natalis Alexander* himself was  
 §. I. To. I. p. ashamed to undertake the Defence of  
 95, 115. them: And not only he, but all the other

Writers of the same *Church*, *Baronius*, *Bellarmino*, *Sixtus Senensis*, *Possevino*, *Espencaus*, *Biscoli*, *Labbe*, &c. have freely acknowledged the little Credit that is to be given to them.

32. BUT two Pieces there are which *Alexander* is still unwilling to part with; tho' he cannot deny but that the most Learned Men, even of his own Communion, have at last agreed in the rejecting of them. And those are, the *Passion* of *St. Andrew*, written, (as is pretended,) by the *Presbyters* of *Achaja*; and the Works set out under the Name of *Dionysius* the *Areopagite*.

33. AS for the former of these, I confess there have not been wanting many

many from the VIII<sup>th</sup> Century downwards, who have undertaken the Defence of it. \* *Etherius* mention'd it about the Year DCC. LXXX. VIII. *Remigius* after: *Peter Damian*, *Lanfranc*, and *St. Bernard*, still later. And in this last Age *Baronius*, *Bellarmino*, *Labbe*, and a few Others, have yet more endeavour'd to establish it's Authority. But then as † *Du Pin* well observes, it is certain that the *Ancients* knew nothing of it; nor are the *Acts* we now have quoted by any before the time of *Etherius* before-mentioned. And yet how they could have escaped the Search of the Primitive Fathers, had they been extant in their days, it is hard to imagin.

\* Vid. Natal. Alex. S.I. To. I. p. 109. Labbe de Script. Eccl. To. I. p. 3, &c.

† Nouvelle Biblioth. To. I. p. 47, 48.

34. BUT much less is the Credit that ought to be given to the pretended Works of *Dionysius the Areopagite*: Which as || *Alexander* confesses, two very great \* *Criticks* of his own Communion, to have deny'd to have been written by that Holy Man; so has a † third very lately given such Reasons to shew that the Writings, now extant under his Name, could not have been composed by him, as ought to satisfy every considering Man of their Imposture. For not to say any thing of what occurs every where in those Discourses, utterly disagreeable to the State of the Church in the time that that *Dionysius* lived: Can it

|| Natal. Alex. S. I. Vol. I. p. 136. Labbe de Script. Tom. I. in *Dionysio*. \* He might have added several others: See *Bellarmino* de Script. p. 56. † *Du Pin* Nouvelle Biblioth. To. I. p. 90.

it be imagin'd, that had such considerable Books as these been written by him, none of the Ancients of the first IV Centuries should have heard any thing of them. Or shall we say that they did know of them; as well as the Fathers that lived after, and yet made no mention of them, tho' they had so often occasion to have done it, as *Eusebius*, and *St. Jerome*, not to name any Others, had?

35. IN short, one of the first times that we hear of them, is in the Dispute between the *Severians* and *Catholicks* about the Year D. XXX. II. When the Former produced them in favour of their Errors, and the Latter rejected them as Books utterly unknown to all Antiquity, and therefore not worthy to be received by them.

36. IT is therefore much to be wondered, that after so many Arguments as have been brought to prove how little Right these *Treatises* have to such a *Primitive Antiquity*; nevertheless, not only *Natalis Alexander*, but a Man of much better Judgment, I mean \* *Emanuel Scholstrat*, the late Learned Keeper of the *Vatican Library*, should still undertake the Defence of them. When they were written, or by what Author, is very uncertain: But as † *Bishop Pearson* supposes them to have been first set

\* Vid. Cave  
Hist. liter. §. IV.  
p. 177.

† Vindic. Ig-  
nat. part. I. c.  
10.

set forth about the latter end of *Eusebius's* Life; so † *Dr. Garve* conjectures, † *Loc. supr.* that the Elder *Apollinarius* may very probably have been the *Author* of them.

\* Others there are who place them yet later, and suspect Pope *Gregory* the Great to have had a hand in the Forgery. And indeed the Arguments which our very Learned || *Mr. Dodwell* brings to prove that they were originally written by one of the *Roman Church*, are not without their just Weight. But whatever becomes of this, thus much is certain, that these Books were not written before the middle of the IV<sup>th</sup> Century, and therefore are without the Compass of the present Undertaking.

\* *Dailé apud Pearson. loc. supr. cit.*

|| *Dodwell de Sacerdot. Laicor. cap. VIII. §. III. p. 389.*

37. AND now having taken such a View as was necessary for the present Design, of all those other Pieces which have been obtruded upon the World for *Apostolical Writings*, besides what is either here collected, or has been before publish'd in the Sacred Books of the *New Testament*; I suppose I may with good Grounds conclude, that the little I have now put together is all that can with any Certainty be depended upon, of the most *Primitive Fathers*: And therefore that from these, next to the *Holy Scriptures*, we must be content to draw the best Account we can of the *Doctrine and Discipline of the Church*,  
for

for the first *Hundred Years* after the  
Death of *Christ*.

---

## C H A P. X.

Of the *Authority* of the following *Treatises*, and the *Deference* that ought to be paid to them upon the account of it.

*This is shewn from the following Considerations: 1st, That the Authors of them were Contemporary with the Apostles, and instructed by them. 2dly, They were Men of an eminent Character in the Church; and therefore to be sure such as could not be ignorant of what was taught in it. 3dly, They were very careful to preserve the Doctrine of Christ in its Purity, and to oppose such as went about to corrupt it. 4thly, They were Men not only of a perfect Piety, but of great Courage and Constancy; and therefore such as cannot be suspected to have had any Design to prevaricate in this Matter. 5thly, They were endued with a large Portion of the Holy Spirit, and as such, could hardly*

hardly err in what they deliver'd as the Gospel of Christ. And 6thly, Their Writings were approved by the Church in those days, which could not be mistaken in its Approbation of them.

**B**UT, Secondly, and to proceed yet farther: The following *Collection* pretends to a just Esteem, not only upon the account of its *Perfection*, as it is an *Entire Collection* of what remains to us of the *Apostolical Fathers*; but yet much more, from the Respect that is due to the *Authors* themselves, whose Writings are here put together.

2. IF, *First*, we consider them as the Contemporaries of the *Holy Apostles*; Some of them bred up under our *Saviour Christ* himself, and the rest instructed by those Great Men whom he commissioned \* to go forth and preach to all the World, and † endued with an extraordinary Assistance of his Blessed Spirit for the doing of it: We cannot doubt but that what they deliver to us, must be, without Controversie, the pure Doctrine of the Gospel; What Christ and his Apostles taught, and what they had themselves received from their own Mouths. This is the least Deference we can pay to them, to look upon them as faithful Deliverers of the Doctrine and Practice of the Church in those most early

\* Mat. xxviii.

19. Mark xvi.

† Luke xxiv.

49. Acts i. 8.

Acts ii.



early Times : When *Heresies* were not as yet so openly broke out in it, Nor the true Faith so dangerously corrupted with the Mixture of those erroneous Opinions, which afterwards more fatally infected the Minds of Men, and divided the *Church* into so many Parties and Factions. So that here then we may read with Security, and, let me add, with Respect too : And not doubt but what these *Holy Men* deliver to us, is as certainly the true Doctrine of *Christ*, as if we had received it, like them, from our *Saviour* and his *Apostles*.

3. BUT, Secondly, The *Authors* of the following Pieces had not only the Advantage of living in the *Apostolical Times*, and of hearing the *Holy Apostles*, and conversing with them, but they were of a very *Eminent Character* in the *Church* too; Men raised up to the highest pitch of *Honour* and *Authority* in some of the most famous *Churches* of the World; Chosen by the *Apostles* to preside in their own proper *Sees*; at *Rome*, at *Antioch*, at *Smyrna*; One of them set apart, by the express Command of the *Holy Ghost*, to be the Companion of the Great *St. Paul* in his Work of the Ministry; and the rest for the most part commended for their rare Endowments, in the inspired Writings of the *Holy Scriptures* delivered to us. And therefore we may be sure that

that such Men as these must needs have been very carefully *instructed* in the *Mystery* of the *Gospel*, and have had a most perfect and comprehensive *Knowledge* of the *Faith*, as it is in *Jesus*.

4. HAD they been some ordinary and obscure Writers, even of the *Apostolical Times*, Men of no Note, no Authority in the *Church*; tho' still whilst we had a good Account of their Integrity, the very Advantage of the *Age* wherein they lived would have rendered their Discourses justly Venerable to us; yet should we not perhaps have been obliged to pay such a Deference to their Writings, as not to make Allowance for some little Defects or Mistakes that might have happen'd to them. But now having to do with Men, not only instructed in common by the *Apostles*, with the other *Christians* of those days, but particularly bred up, and instituted by them: Having here the Writings of Men who had attained to such a perfect Knowledge in the *Mystery* of Godliness, and were judg'd to have been so well grounded and settled in it, as to deserve to be raised up by the *Apostles* themselves to the Government of such eminent Churches, as those over which these Holy Men were *Over-Seers*: It is plain that we cannot with any reason doubt of what they deliver to us, as the *Gospel* of  
of

of *Christ*; but ought to receive it, if not with equal Veneration, yet but with a little less Respect, than we do the *Sacred Writings* of those who were their Masters and Instructors.

5. YET farther, *Thirdly*: The following *Authors*, were not only such Eminent Men, and bred up under such mighty Advantages, and so well instructed in the Knowledge of the *Gospel*, as I have now observed; but they were moreover Persons of a *Consummated Piety*, adorn'd with all those *Christian Virtues* they so affectionately recommend to us. But especially, they were zealous *Watchmen* over their *Churches*; careful to instruct them in the true *Faith* and *Doctrine* of *Christ*, and no less careful to preserve them against the Contagion of those *Heresies*, which even in their days began to corrupt the Purity of it. Hence we read with what Earnestness that Blessed Martyr *Ignatius* first, and then his Fellow-Disciple *St. Polycarp*, set themselves against those who would insinuate some *Other Doctrines* into the Minds of their People, than what the *Apostles* had deliver'd unto them. What wise *Directions* they gave them for the *Discovery* of such *false Teachers*; \* and how earnestly they *exhorted* them by keeping firm to their respective *Bishops* and *Presbyters*, and to the *Apostolical Doctrine* deliver'd

\* Euseb. Hist.  
Ecclef. lib. III.  
c. 35.

livered by them, to prevent their gaining any Advantage against them.

6. WITH what Assurance do they deliver the Doctrine which they had received? How confidently do they declare it to be the *true Doctrine of Christ*? And exhort the *Churches* to whom they write, not to give any heed to such as would insinuate any Other Doctrine into their Minds? And how did they themselves shew them by their own Examples, how they should avoid such Persons? Insomuch that \* *Irenaeus* tells us, that if St. *Polycarp* at any time chanced to hear any One deliver any Other Doctrine than what he had been taught, he did not only not give any Countenance to such an One; but was wont to stop his Ears at him, and cry out with Astonishment and Grief, *Good God! To what Times hast thou reserved me, that I should endure this?* Nay he would not tarry in the same place with such a Person, but would leave the House, if he knew that any *Hereticks* were in it.

\* Epist. ad Flor. in num. apud Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. V. c. 20.

7. BUT of the Care which these Holy Men had to keep close in every the least Circumstance to the Doctrine and Practice of the *Apostles*, we cannot, I think, desire a fairer Instance to convince us, than what † *Eusebius* has recorded of the same Blessed *Martyr*.

† Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. V. c. 25.

How

How that hearing of the Difference between the *Eastern* and *Western Churches* about the *Time* of keeping *Easter*, he thought it worthy his Pains, at an extreme old Age, to take a Journey as far as *Rome* for the composing of it. And notwithstanding all that *Anicetus*, who was then *Bishop* of that *Church*, could say to move him from his *Practice*; yet having this Ground for it, that *St. John* was wont to keep *Easter* as he did; the good Man held close to it, and would not hear of changing a *Custom* which that blessed *Apostle* had deliver'd to him.

8. AND when such was the Care which these Holy Writers had of holding fast, even to the least particular, of what they received from the *Apostles*, that they would not comply with the rest of the *Church* in such an indifferent matter, only because by so doing they should depart from the Practice of One of them; Surely we may with Confidence depend upon the *Doctrine* which they deliver, as most pure and genuine; What our Saviour taught his *Apostles*, and his *Apostles* them. And what \* *Irenaeus* once said of his Master *Polycarp*, we may with equal Truth and Assurance apply to all the rest of those *Fathers*, whose *Treatises* I have here put together; That they taught evermore what they had received from the *Apostles*, which also they deliver'd

\* Iren. adv.  
Hæref. lib. III.  
c. 30.

*deliver'd to the Church, and which only is the true Doctrine of Christ.*

9. TO this general Piety of their Lives, and Care for the Truth and Purity of their Religion; let me add, *Fourthly*, their Courage and Constancy in the maintaining of it. How great this was I have already shewn, in the particular Accounts which I have given of the several *Fathers* whose *Writings* are here subjoyn'd. It shall suffice in this place to observe, that the most of them after having spent their Lives in a careful administration of the great Charges to which they were called, were at last made perfect by *Martyrdom*; and underwent the most *exquisite Cruelties* with a *Courage* and *Constancy*, worthy both of the *Religion* they profess'd, and of the eminent *Characters* which they had obtained in the *Church*.

10. NOW tho' this do's not immediately argue the *Purity* of their *Doctrine*, yet being added to what I have before observed, will give us a new Ground to rely upon the Truth of what they deliver. For since we cannot reasonably doubt but that such Persons as these, must needs have known what the *Doctrine* of the *Apostles* was; and have been perfectly instructed in that Religion which they were esteem'd able

and worthy to preach to others : We have in this a clear Demonstration of their Integrity both in their Teaching and Writing of it ; and must conclude, That they who liv'd such excellent Lives, and took so much Pains in the *Ministry* of the *Gospel*; that stuck with such Firmness to it, notwithstanding all the Endeavours of their Enemies to the contrary; and chose rather to undergo the most bitter Deaths, than they would in any wise depart from it; have doubtless dealt most uprightly in this matter, and deliver'd nothing to us but what they took for the true Doctrine of *Christ*, and what therefore we may conclude, undoubtedly was so.

II. SUCH good reason then have we upon all these Accounts to look upon the *Writings* of these *Holy Men*, as containing the *pure* and *uncorrupted Doctrine* of our *Blessed Saviour* and his *Apostles*. But now, *Fifthly*, and to advance yet higher : These Writers were not only thus qualified by these Ordinary means to deliver the *Gospel* of *Christ* to us, but in all probability were endued with the *Extraordinary Assistance* of the *Holy Spirit* too. So that what they teach us, it not to be look'd upon as a mere traditionary Relation of what had been deliver'd to them, but rather, as an *Authoritative Declaration* of the *Gospel* of *Christ*.

*Christ* to us; tho' indeed as much inferior to that of the *Apostles* and *Evangelists*, as their *Gifts* and *Assistances* were less than theirs.

12. FOR, (1st.) That the *Extraordinary Gifts* of the *Holy Spirit* with which the *Apostles* were endued, and which the \* *Holy Scriptures* themselves \* See 1 Cor. iv. 12. Ephes. i. 6, &c. Acts viii. 14, 17. xix. 6, &c. tell us were in those days distributed to *Other Believers*, as well as unto *Them*, continu'd still in the *Church* after their departure; we have the express assurance of † *Justin Martyr*, one of the most ancient Writers, after those I have here subjoin'd, to assure us. They were communicated not only to *Men* but || *Women*: And that we may be sure he spake nothing in this matter but what he could undeniably have made out, we find him boasting of it against *Trypho* the *Jew*, and urging it as an unanswerable *Argument* in the Behalf of *Christianity*, and against the *Jews*, from whom these *Gifts* had a long time been departed. And even in the *Fathers*, whose Writings are here put together, there appear sufficient Indications of the Continuance of these *Extraordinary Powers*.

† Vid. Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. IV. c. 15. Just. Mart. Dial. cum Tryph. p. 308. || Ibid. p. 315.

13. THIS \* *St. Clement* manifestly \* See below, declares in his First *Epistle* to the *Corinthians*. He tells us that some in that *Church* not only had such *Gifts*, but

1 3 were



were even proud and conceited upon the account of them. *Let a Man*, says he, *have Faith*, i. e. such a Faith by which he is able to work Miracles ; *Let him be powerful to utter Mystical Knowledge* ; (for to that his Expression manifestly refers ; ) *Let him be wise in discerning of Speeches* ; Another Gift common in those Times : *But still*, says he, *by how much the more he seems to excel Others*, viz. upon the account of these extraordinary Endowments, *by so much the more will it behove him to be humble-minded, and to seek what is profitable to all Men, and not to his own Advantage.*

† See his Salutation to the Smyrnaeans, p.

193. 194.

\* *Epist. to the Philadelph*

§ VII. p. 182.

*To the Tralians*, Sect. V.

p. 149.

And St. Ignatius not only † supposes that such Gifts might be in Others, but plainly intimates, that he \* himself was endowed with a large Portion of them.

14. WHICH being so, we cannot doubt ( 2dly. ) but that, as it was most reasonable, both the *Apostles* were careful to set those in the chiefest Places of Honour and Authority in their several Churches, who were the most eminent for their Gifts ; And that God was also pleased to grant to such Persons a more than ordinary Portion of the *Holy Spirit*, for the better discharge of those eminent Places to which they were called.

15. CONCERNING the former of these, we are told by St. Paul, *Acts vi.*  
that

that when the *Apostles* thought it necessary to establish a new *Order* of *Ministers* in the *Church*, that might take care of those things, which they, who were of a higher Rank, could not find Leisure to attend to; tho' their *Ministry* were of the lowest Nature, and which required much lesser Capacities in those who were to discharge it, than theirs whose Business it was to *Govern* and *Instruct* the *Church of Christ*; yet they particularly laid it down to the *Brethren*, as one of the *Qualifications* that was to be required in Those whom they chose for that purpose, that they should be *Men well approved of, full of the Holy Spirit and of Wisdom*, *Verf. 3.* And of One of them, *viz. St. Stephen*, it is particularly observed, *Verf. 8. That he was full of Faith and Power, and did Signs and great Wonders among the People.* And when the *Jews* disputed against him, we read *Verf. 10. That they were not able to stand against the Wisdom and Spirit by which he spake.*

16. NOW if such were the Care which they took in the Choice of those who were to be admitted into the lowest *Ministry* of the *Church*; We cannot doubt but that they were certainly much more careful not to admit any into the highest Rank of Honour and Authority in it, but what were in a yet

\* Clem. Epist.  
num. xlii. p.  
58. num. xlii.  
p. 60.

† 1 Cor. xii. 10.  
Heb. iv. 12.

|| Clem. Alex.  
de Divit. Salv.  
num. xlii. Eu-  
feb. Hist. Ec-  
clesi. lib. III. c.  
23.

more eminent manner endued with the *same Gifts*. Hence \* *St. Clement* tells us, that *The Apostles* did prove by the Spirit the first Fruits of their Conversions, and out of them set Bishops and Pastors over such as should believe. And by which we must understand One of these Two things, and very probably they were both meant by it: Either that the Apostles made use of their own extraordinary Gift of the Spirit (One † Use of which was to discern and try the Spirits of Others) in chusing Persons fitly qualified for the Work of the Ministry; Or else, that by the extraordinary Gifts of those whom they pitch'd upon, they perceiv'd that they were worthy of such an Employ, and therefore chose them out for it. And the Other || *Clement* yet more plainly speaks the same thing: That *St. John* being returned from his Banishment in *Patmos*, went about the Country near unto *Ephesus*, both to form and settle Churches, where he saw occasion; and to admit into the Order of the Clergy, such as were mark'd out to him by the Spirit.

17. AND then for the Other thing observed; It is clear that the very Imposition of Hands, did in those days confer the Holy Spirit, in an extraordinary manner, upon Those who were ordain'd to the Ministry of the Gospel. This  
St. Paul

St. Paul intimates in his *First Epistle* to *Timothy*, *Ch. iv. 14.* where he exhorts him to stir up, τὸ χάρισμα, the Gift, i. e. the extraordinary Power of the *Holy Spirit*, which, says he, is in thee by the *Imposition of my hands.* 2 *Tim. i. 6.* And would you know how this Ceremony of setting him apart for such a Service came to endue him with such an extraordinary Power; the same *Apostle* will tell you, 1 *Tim. iv. 14.* That it was given unto him by Prophecy; with, or through the *Imposition of Hands* upon him. That is to say; God, who by his *Prophets* had before design'd and mark'd him out for that great Office, 1 *Tim. i. 18.* upon the actual admission of him into it by the outward Rite of *Laying on of Hands*, and upon the solemn Prayers that were then withal made for him, did bestow the Gifts of his *Blessed Spirit*, in an extraordinary manner upon him.

18. NOW this as will it afford us just cause to conclude that those Holy Men, whose Writings we have here collected, were doubtless endued with a very large Portion of the extraordinary Gifts of the *Holy Ghost*: Whether we consider the Frequency of those Endowments in the Age in which they lived; Or the extraordinary Strictness and Piety of their Lives; Or the Greatness of those Stations to which they were called in the

## Of the Authority

the Church; Or lastly, the *Judgment* which the *Apostles*, who called them to those *high Offices*, were by the *Spirit* enabled to make of them; So, (3dly) If we look to those *Accounts* which still remain to us of them; they will plainly shew us that they were endued, and that in a very singular manner, with this *Power* and *Gift* of the *Blessed Spirit*.

19. OF *Barnabas*, the *Holy Scripture* it self bears Witness, that *He was a good Man, full of the Holy Ghost, and of Faith*, *Acts xi. 24.* *Hermas* is another of whom *St. Paul* himself makes mention, *Rom. xvi. 14.* as an early Convert to *Christianity*: And what extraordinary *Revelations* he had, and how he foretold the *Troubles* that were to come upon the *Church*, his following *Visions* sufficiently declare.

20 *CLEMENT* is not only spoken of by the same *Apostle*, but with this advantageous *Character* too, that he was the *Fellow-Labourer* of that great Man, and had his *Name written in the Book of Life*, *Phil. iv. 3.* And when we shall consider to how much lesser and worser Men these *Gifts* were usually communicated at that time; we can hardly think that so excellent a Man, and the Companion of so great an *Apostle*; employed first in the *planting* of the *Gospel* with

with him, and then set to govern one of the most considerable *Churches* in the World, should have been destitute of it.

21. AS for St. *Ignatius*, I have before observed that he had this *Gift*; and by the help of it, warned the \* *Philadelphians* against falling into those Divisions, which he fore-saw were about to rise up amongst them.

\* *Epist. to the Philadelphians*, ch. vii. p. 182, 183. Add the *Martyrdom of Ignatius*, num. xli. p. 226.

22. *POLYCARP* not only *Prophecy'd* of his own Death, but spake often times of things that were to come: And has this Witness from the whole *Church* of *Smyrna*, that nothing of all that he foretold ever failed of coming to pass according to his Prediction.

23. IT remains then that the Holy Men whose Writings are here subjoin'd, were not only instructed by such as were *Inspir'd*, but were themselves *Inspir'd* too. And therefore we must conclude, that they have not only not mistaken the Mind of the *Apostles*, in what they deliver to us as the *Gospel of Christ*, but were not capable of doing of it. By consequence, that we ought to look upon their Writings, \* tho' not of equal Authority with those which we call in a singular manner *The Holy Scriptures*; (because neither were the *Authors* of them called in so extraordinary a way to the writing

\* Vid. Dodwell. Dissert. in Iren. Præfat. & Dissert. 2.

of

of them, nor endued with so eminent a Portion of the Gifts of the Blessed Spirit for the doing of it; Nor have their Writings been judg'd by the common Consent of the Church in those inspir'd Ages of it, when they were so much better qualified, than we are now, to judge of the Divine Authority of those kind of Writings, to be of equal Dignity with those of the Apostles and Evangelists; yet worthy of a much greater Respect than any Compositures that have been made since; however Men may seem to have afterwards written with more Arr, and to have shewn a much greater Stock of humane Learning, than what is to be found, not only in the following Pieces, but even in the Sacred Books of the New Testament it self.

24. I SHALL add but One Consideration more, the better to shew the true Deference that ought to be paid to the Treatises here collected, and that is, Sixthly: That they were not only written by such Men as I have said, instructed by the Apostles, and judg'd worthy by them both for their Knowledge and their Integrity, to govern some of the most eminent Churches in the World; and lastly, endued with the extraordinary Gift of the Holy Ghost; and upon all these Accounts to be much respected by us: But were moreover received by the Church

Church in those First Ages, as Pieces of a very great value, which could not be mistaken in its Judgment of them.

25. THE Epistle of St. Clement was a long time read publickly with the Other Scriptures in the Congregations of the Faithful; made a part of their Bible, and was numbred among the Sacred Writings, however finally separated from them. And not only the Apostolical Canons, but our most ancient Alexandrian Manuscript, gives the same place to the Second, that it do's to the First of them: And Epiphanius after both, tells us, that they were both of them wont to be read in the Church in his Time \*.

\* Epiphanius.  
Hæres. xxx.  
num. 15.

26. THE Epistle of St. Polycarp, with that of the Church of Smyrna, were not only very highly approved of by particular Persons, but like those of St. Clement, were read publickly too in the Assemblies of the Faithful. And for those of Ignatius, besides that we find a mighty Value put upon them by the Christians of those Times, they are sealed to us by this Character of St. Polycarp; "That they are such Epistles, by which we may be greatly profited; For," says he, "They treat of Faith and Patience, and of all things that pertain to Edification in the LORD."

27. THE



\* Annot. in  
Epist. in Bar-  
nab. p. 9, 10.

27. THE *Epistle* of *Barnabas* is not only quoted with great Honour by those of the next *Age* to him, but as I have before shewn, is expressly called *Catholick* and *Canonical*. And in the ancient \* *Stichometry* of *Cotelerius*, we find it placed the very next to the *Epistle* of *St. Jude*, and no difference put between the *Authority* of the One and of the Other.

28. AND for the *Book* of *Hermas*, both *Eusebius* and *St. Jerome* tell us, that it was also used to be read in the *Churches*. In the same *Stichometry*, I before mentioned, it is placed in the very next Rank to the *Acts* of the *Holy Apostles*: And in some of the most ancient Manuscripts of the New Testament, we find it written in the same Volume with the Books of the *Apostles* and *Evangelists*, as if it had been esteem'd of the same Value and Authority with them.

29. SO that now then we must either say that the *Church* in those days was so little careful of what was taught in it, as to allow such *Books* to be publicly read in its *Congregations*, the Doctrine whereof it did not approve; Or we must confess, that the following Pieces are deliver'd to us, not only by the Learned Men of the *First Ages* of the *Church*, but by the whole Body of the Faithful, as containing

taining the pure *Doctrine of Christ*; and must be look'd upon to have nothing in them, but what was then thought *worthy of all Acceptation*.

30. NOW how much this adds to the *Authority* of these Discourses, may easily be concluded from what I have before observed. For since it is certain that in those Times the *Extraordinary Gifts* of the *Holy Ghost* were bestowed, not only upon the *Bishops* and *Pastors* of the *Church*, (tho' upon them in a more eminent degree) but also upon a great many of the common *Christians* too: Since One particular *Design* of these *Gifts* was for the *Discerning of Prophecies*, to judg of what was *proposed* by any to the *Church*, or *written* for the *Use* and *Benefit* of it: We cannot doubt but what was universally approved of and allow'd, not by a *few Learned Men*, but by the *whole Church* in those days; what was permitted to be publicly read to the Faithful for their *Comfort* and *Instruction*; must by this means have received a more than *Humane Approbation*; and ought to be look'd upon by us, tho' not of *Equal Authority* with those *Books* which they have deliver'd to us as *strictly Canonical*, yet as standing in the first Rank of *Ecclesiastical Writings*, and as containing the true and pure *Faith of Christ*, without the least *Error* intermix'd with it.

CHAP.

## C H A P. XI.

Of the Subject of the following Discourses; and of the Use that is to be made of Them.

*That in the following Treatises, there is deliver'd to us a good account, both of the Doctrine and Discipline of the Church, in the Apostolical Times. This shewn in several particulars. What they taught concerning God the Father, our Saviour Christ, and the Holy Ghost. Of Angels and Spirits. Of the rest of the Articles of the Apostles Creed. Concerning the two Sacraments of Baptism, and the Lord's Supper. Of the Holy Scriptures, and the Divine Authority of them. What we meet with in these Treatises concerning the Government of the Church. Of the Necessity of Communicating with the Bishops and Pastors of it. Of Schismaticks, Hereticks, and Apostates. Of their publick Assembling for the Service of God, and what was done by them in those Meetings. Of several other Instances of their Discipline; particularly, of their Fasting and Confession of Sins. Of the Care which their*

their Bishops had of the whole Church. Of the Respect that was paid to them. Of their Martyrs; and the Veneration which they thought due to them. Of their Practical Instructions, and how severe their Morality was; shewn in several particulars. That upon the whole, we may here see what the State of Christianity then was, and still ought to be.

I. **A**ND now having shewn in the foregoing *Chapter*, what Defe-  
rence we ought to pay to the *Authority*  
of those *Holy Men*, whose *Writings* I  
have here collected; it may not be a-  
miss, in the *Third* place to enquire, What  
it is which they deliver to us; what ac-  
count we find in them, of the *Doctrine*,  
and *Discipline* of the *Church*, in those  
Times in which they lived.

2. IT would be endless for me to go about to make a just *Catalogue* of all the Particulars of this kind that occur in the following Pieces; and I have already in a great measure perform'd it, in the *Index* which I have for that purpose subjoyn'd to them. I shall therefore here consider only a few particulars, in such Points as may seem most worthy to be remark'd; and by them (as by a short *Specimen* shew) How the Judicious *Reader* may himself improve it, into a more particular

ticular *History* of the Faith and Practice of the Church, in the best and most ancient State of it.

3. AND (1st.) for what concerns the *Doctrines* of those Times; there is hardly any *Point* that is necessary to be *believed* or *known* by us, that is not very plainly delivered in Some or Other of the following *Pieces*.

See the Index,  
God.

4. HERE we may read what we are to believe concerning the first *Article* of all of our *Creed*, *God the Father*. That he is *One*, *Almighty*, *Invisible*; the *Creator* and *Maker* of all things. That he is *Omniscient*, *Immense*; Neither to be *comprehended* within any *Bounds*, nor so much as to be perfectly *conceived* by us. That his *Providence* is over all things: And that we can none of us *flee* from him, or escape his *Knowledge*. That we are to *believe* in him, to *fear* him, to *love* him; And *fearing* him, to *abstain* from all *Evil*.

See *ibid.* in  
Christ.

5. IF from thence we go on to the next *Person* of the Blessed *Trinity*, Our *Saviour Jesus Christ*; here we shall find all that either our *Creed* teaches us to profess concerning him, or that any *Christian* need to believe. That he *Existed* not only before he came into the *World*, but from all *Eternity*. That he is not only

only the *Son of God*, but is himself also *God*. That in the fulness of Time he took upon him our *Nature*, and became *Man*: Was born of the *Virgin Mary*, was crucified under *Pontius Pilate*; That he suffer'd for our *Salvation*, and was raised again from the dead, not only by the *Power* of the *Father*, but by his *Own* alſo. That he is our *High-Prieſt* and *Protector* now, and ſhall come again at the End of the *World*, to judge the whole Race of Mankind. That there is no coming unto God but by him: Inſomuch that even the *Ancient Fathers*, who died before his Appearing, are yet ſaved by the ſame means that we are now.

6. AS for what concerns the *Holy Spirit*, the Third *Perſon* in the Glorious *Godhead*; he is here ſet out to us not only as a *Perſon*, but as diſtinct from the *Father* and the *Son*. And to ſhew what kind of *Spirit* he is; We may here ſee him joyn'd together in the ſame *Worſhip* with the *Father*, and our *Saviour Jeſus Chriſt*. See ibid. Trinitie.

7. AND now I am mentioning the *Holy Spirit*; let me add, that we may here ſee what is needful to be known, concerning all the Other *Spirits* of an inferior Nature. How the *Holy Angels* miſtiſter unto us; but eſpecially then, when we have moſt need of them, at the time See the Index, Angel, Devil.

of our *Death*. And that tho' the *Devil* may attacque us, and use all his Arts to draw us away from our *Duty*; yet it must be our own Faults if we are overcome by him, and therefore that we ought not to be afraid of him.

*See ib. Peace,  
Unity, Par-  
tyes, Re-  
liquies, &c.*

8. BUT to return to our *Creed*, and the *Articles* of it: Here we may farther see, both what a great Obligation there lies upon us to keep up a *Communion* of *Saints* in the *Unity* of the *Church* on *Earth*, and what is that true *Fellowship* that we ought to have with those, who are gone before us to *Heaven*. That it consists not in the *Worship* of any, tho' never so gloriously exalted by God; but in *Love* and *Remembrance*; in *Thanks-giving* to God for their *Excellencies*, and in our *Prayers* to him, joyn'd with hearty *Endeavours* of our own, to imitate their *Perfections*.

*See Repen-  
tance.*

9. AND whilst we do this, we are here assured of the *Forgiveness* of our *Sins* too, through the *Merits* and *Satisfaction* of *Jesus Christ*. And that not only of those which we committed before our *Baptism*; but of all such as we shall chance to fall into after, if we truly *repent* of them.

*See ibid. Re-  
surrection.*

10. AS for the next Point, the *Resurrection of the Body*; it is not only asserted,

serted, but at large proved too, in the following Discourses. There we may see, not only that there shall be a *future Resurrection*; but that we shall be raised in the very *same Bodies* in which we go down into the *Grave*. And that being raised, we shall be judged by *Christ* according to our *Works*; and be <sup>ibid.</sup> *Punish-* either *unspeakably rewarded*, or *exceeding-* <sup>ment.</sup> *ly punished*, and that to all *Eternity*.

11. IF from the *Articles* of our *Creed*, we go on to the *Sacraments* of the <sup>See ibid. Sa-</sup> *Church*: Here we have set out to us the <sup>crament, Ba-</sup> great *Benefit* of our *Baptism*, and of <sup>ptism, &c.</sup> what a mighty *Concern* it is to us in the business of our *Salvation*. And for the *Other Sacrament*; Here we are taught, <sup>See ib. Tran-</sup> that the *Elements* of *Bread* and *Wine* are <sup>Substantia-</sup> the same (as to their *Substance*) after <sup>tion.</sup> *Con-* *secration*, that they were *before*; and are only in a *Spiritual Sense*, the *Flesh* and *Blood* of our *Saviour Christ*.

12. AND, *Lastly*; For that great, <sup>See ibid.</sup> comprehensive *Point* of our *Religion*, the *Foundation* of our *Faith*, the *Holy Scriptures*: Here we may see what *Opinion* these *Holy Men* had of the *Divine Inspiration* of them; what *Deferences* they paid to them, and how they looked upon them to contain the *true Words* of the *Holy Ghost*.



See Bishops,  
ibid.

13. SUCH is the *Doctrine* of Faith, that is here delivered to us. If from thence we pass; 2dly, to what concerns the *Publick Order* and *Government* of the *Church*, in the first Establishment of it: Here we may see by what Persons it was directed; and how exactly our own *Church* do's in this particular resemble the *Primitive*, perhaps beyond any other at this day in the *World*, in the *Apostolical Orders*, of *Bishops*, *Priests*, and *Deacons*.

Ibid.

14. HOW necessarily they esteem'd it their Duty, to keep up a strict *Communion* with these *Governours*, and how little they thought the very *Name* of a *Church* could belong to those who separated from them, we are here likewise taught. And how light soever some may make of the Business of *Schism* now, yet it is plain these *Holy Men* had a very different Apprehension of it, and hardly thought that such could be saved as continued in it.

Ibid. See  
*Schism*.

Ibid. Heretick,  
Apostate.

15. AND the same, or rather much worse, was their Opinion of *Hereticks* and *Apostates*. To the latter of which, as they seem even to have deny'd *Repentance*; so 'tis manifest that without it, they thought the Others must perish. And in the mean time, they declare, that

that we ought not to have any Communion with them: Only we must *pray* for them, that they may be *converted*, which yet they supposed would be very hard.

16. AS for those who continued in the *Doctrine and Communion of the Church*; See Index, Worship, &c. here we may see how zealous they were in attending all the *publick Offices* of it. How constantly they assembled together for the *Worship of God*, notwithstanding all the Malice and Fury of their Enemies against them upon the Account of it. Here we may see, how from the beginning they had their set *Times and Places of Worship*: And how they look'd upon such *Offertories*, both as more acceptable unto God, and more prevalent with him, than any *Private Addresses* that they could make to him.

17. IN these *Assemblies*, they not only put up their *Prayers to God*, but received also the *Holy Sacrament of the Lords Supper*. See ibid. Sacrament, Bishop. And in that part of their *Service*, none officiated but either the *Bishop* himself, or he who was appointed, or allow'd, by him.

18. FOR this purpose they had in every such place of their *Assembling*, See below, p. 110, 121, 128. One *Table or Altar*, at which they perform'd this *Service*. And they communicated

municated after the same manner, that our *Saviour Christ* had set them the *Example*; of one *common Loaf*, which was *broken* and *distributed* to them, not of little separate and unbroken *Wafers*, as some now do.

See below, p.  
220.

19. NOR was this yet all: In these *Assemblies*, the *Holy Scriptures* were read to them; and (as I have before shewn) some of the very *Treatises* I have here subjoyn'd, together with them. And the *Bishop* besides, himself *instructed* the *People*, and expounded the *Doctrine of Christ* to them.

See the Index,  
Marriage,  
Bishop.

20. BY the *Bishop* were the *Christians* blessed, and joyn'd together in the *Holy State of Matrimony*. And indeed without him was nothing done of all that pertain'd unto *Religion*.

Ib. See Diet.

21. IN those *Times* the *Clergy* were marry'd, as well as *Laity*; nor do we find it esteem'd the least *Scandal* for them so to be.

Ibid. Fast.

22. HERE we may see, what the ancient manner of *Fasting* was; and what was thought requisite to render such *Exercises* acceptable to *God*, and profitable to our own *Souls*.

23. IN

23. IN short, Here we may perceive Ibid. Repen-  
 what their Opinion was of *Repentance* for tance.  
*Sins*; and how hardly they thought of  
 those who were still *Repenting*, and yet  
 still continuing to *sin on*, notwithstanding  
 their frequent *Repentance*. But es-  
 pecially, here we are told that we must  
 finish our *Repentance* before we *die*; for  
 that there is no place for *Repentance* af-  
 ter.

24. AND tho' they prescribe *Con-* Ibid. *Con-*  
*fession*, as one *Act* of *Repentance*, and ne- fession.  
 cessary to be perform'd in order to our  
 Forgiveness; yet we find them advising  
 it to be done to *God only*, and intimate  
 to us that that alone was sufficient.

25. BUT the Care of their *Bishops* See Ignatius's  
 in those first times was not confin'd with- Epistles and  
 in the narrow Bounds of their own Martyrdom,  
*Churches*, but extended to All the Faith- &c.  
 ful, wheresoever they were. And they  
 were still ready to look to those who  
 were at the greatest distance from them,  
 whenever they thought their Advice  
 or Authority might be either useful to  
 them, or for the Honour and Benefit of  
 their Religion.

26. FROM this, and from the gene- See the Index,  
 ral Piety and Excellence of their *Lives*, Bishop.  
 joyn'd to the Greatness of their *Gba-*  
*raetier*

rafter in the Church, came that mighty Respect, that was shewn to the *Bishops* in those days: And which how great it was, the following *Treatises* abundantly shew.

Ibid. *Par-*  
*res*, and *be-*  
*low*, p. 236.

See Index,  
Duffr.

27. BUT much greater was their Veneration for those, who not only Govern'd well, and adorn'd their *Holy Profession* by an *Exemplary Life*, but confirm'd the Truth of it with their *Blood*. They were indeed of Opinion that no Man ought causelessly to expose himself unto *Suffering*: But if God called a Man to it, they doubted not but that our *Saviour Christ* would both support him in his *Conflicts*, and most gloriously reward him for the enduring of them. Hence was it their Opinion, that *Martyrdom* blotted out all *Sins*: That they who suffer'd for the Faith, should have a *Degree* of *Glory* peculiar to themselves, above all *Other Saints* in *God's Kingdom*. And when God shew'd such regard for them, they concluded that they could never almost do enough, to testify their Respect to them.

Ibid. See *Re-*  
*liques*, *Par-*  
*res*.

28. TO this we must ascribe the Care they took to gather up their *Remains*, the *Honour* which they gave to them, and the *Solemnities* with which they deposited them into the Earth. Hence came their *Customs*, which we here find  
of

of writing down the particulars of their *Conflicts*; and sending them abroad to the *Churches* round about. Hence their *Anniversary Meetings* at their *Tombs* and *Monuments*, Where they recited the *Acts* of their *Martyrdoms*, and sometimes made express *Discourses* in *Praise* of their *Martyrs*, and to *exhort* One Another to the like *Constancy*.

29. BUT not to insist any longer on these Particulars: There is yet a (3d.) sort of Matters contain'd in these *Discourses*, and those of no less Use to us, than either of the foregoing; and that is, the *Practical Rules* of *Life*, that are here deliver'd to us.

30. HERE we may see what Care *See* *ibid.* *Sin.* we are to take, not only not to *Sin* our selves, but, as far as in us lies, not to let any that belong to us continue in Sin; least we also become *Partakers* of their evil *Doings*.

31. HERE we are taught not only *See* *below*, to have a care of our *Words* and *Actions*, p. 321, &c. but of our very *Thoughts* and *Desires*: Which must not only not be indulged in any *Instances* of *Sin*, but not be suffer'd, if it be possible, to wander on any thing that is in the least measure *wanton* or *irregular*.

32. IF

32. IF we will hearken to these Holy Men; we must learn not only to *do the Will of God*, (but if it be his Pleasure) to *endure patiently* whatever he shall send upon us. We must consider, that *Troubles* and *Afflictions* are not only sent upon us to punish us for our Sins; but as *Monitors* too, to draw us off from them.

See Index,  
Riches,  
Alms-giving, &c.

33. TO convince us the more effectually of this; We are here shewn the mighty *Danger* of *Riches*, especially where Mens Hearts are in any degree set upon them; and how very hardly such Persons shall be saved. We are taught what *Use* we should make of our *Abundance*, that so it may not prove a Snare to us. But especially, we are shewn the great Advantage of *Alms-giving* to this End; and what mighty Engagements there lie upon us to the Practice of it.

Ibid. Christian,

34. AND then, as for our *Lives*; We are here told, that a *Christian* must not only be *Good*, but *Exemplary*: He must shew the Truth of his Profession by a *suitable Conversation*; and be known by his *Actions*, rather than by his *Words*.

35. HE must pray for *all Men*, even for his very *Enemies*; nay, for the very *Enemies* of the *Church*; for *Hereticks* and

and *Schismatics*; for those of whom there is but little Hope that they will ever come to *Repentance*, or that God will give them *Grace* so to do.

36. HE must be *kind* and *charitable* to all Men; free from *Envy* and *Contention*: He must neither *raise* any *Differences* among his *Brethren*, nor follow any in the doing of it. To this End, he must carefully observe those *Duties* which relate to his *Neighbour*, as well as those he is to pay to *God*. He must *obey Magistrates*; must *respect* the *Aged*; must have a *due Regard* to all Men. Is he a *Husband*, a *Parent*, or a *Child*? He must then be sure to exercise himself in the several *Duties* becoming those several Relations. In short; In the following Writings we may see in all the Parts of our *Duty* towards *God*, our *Neighbour*, and our *Selves*, what we are to *do*, and what to *avoid*: And are assured, that *God* both *sees* all our *Actions* now, and will *reward* or *punish* us for them hereafter to all Eternity.

37. AND thus have I given a short Prospect, of what is more largely contain'd in the following *Collection*. I need not say either how useful a Variety of Matter it is, or how worthy to be known by all of us. But sure I am, whosoever shall take the pains impartially to compare



compare what is here found, with the *Sacred Writings* of the *New Testament*; may be able both with Clearness and Certainty to understand whatever is requisite to his *Eternal Salvation*: And that with much more *Satisfaction* and *Security* too, than from many *Volumes* of our *later Writers*; who for the most part spend a great deal of Time, and take much Pains, to *Obscure* rather than *Explain*, the most easie and intelligible Points of our *Religion*.

---

## CHAP. XII.

*Of the Manner after which these Discourses are written; And the Simplicity of Stile used in them.*

*That the Writers of those Times used no Affectation of Humane Eloquence; but deliver'd themselves with the greatest Plainness that they were able. This manner of Writing the best and most proper for Instruction. A short Account of the Occasion of the present Collection, and the Translation that is here made of the following Treatises.*

### I. THERE

1. **T**H**ERE** is yet one thing to be observed by me, with Reference to the *Discourses* here subjoyn'd; and that is, *Fourthly*, concerning the *Manner* after which they are *written*, and that true primitive Simplicity, which appears in all the parts of them.

2. **I**T is one Property of *Truth*, that as it do's not need any Disguises, so neither does it seek any vain Ornaments of Humane Eloquence, to recommend it self to the Approbation of those to whom it is tender'd. When the *Apostles* preach'd the Gospel to the World, they did it not with Excellency of Speech, nor with enticing Words of Mans Wisdom; but in the demonstration of Spirit and of Power. They gave such convincing Proofs of their *Divine Mission*, as forced all indifferent Persons to acknowledg their Authority: And they thought it after that, too mean a thing to endeavour to catch Mens Ears, when without any such Arts they had before captivated their Reason, and forced them to confess the *Truth* of what they deliver'd.

3. **A**ND the same was the Method of those *Holy Fathers* who succeeded them. They knew the Excellency of their *Doctrine*, and the mighty Influence which the *Revelations* it made of the *Future State*,

State, would be sure to have upon the Minds of all considering Men: And therefore they contented themselves to lay these things before them in a plain and simple manner; and with such an <sup>un</sup>affected Sincerity, as is beyond all the highest *Rhetorick* in the World.

4. LET not then the Reader be surprised, if in the following Discourses he meets with none of those Ornaments, that are wont to recommend the Writings of Others to his perusal. But rather let him consider, that he has here to do with Men who were above such a Care. Their business was to *instruct* not to *please*; to speak to Mens *Hearts* and *Consciences*, not to their *Fancies*: And they knew that this is evermore best done by a plain and unaffected Discourse; by solid *Rules* and substantial *Motives*, not by *vain Words*; which if they satisfy a Man at the present, yet seldom leave any *lasting Impression* behind them.

5. BUT of the *Authors* of the following *Treatises*, and of the *Discourses* themselves I have said enough, perhaps too much: Tho' yet I think no more than what was necessary to prepare the *English Reader*, for whom I am now chiefly concern'd, to a useful perusal of them. As for the present *Collection*, I shall only say thus much; that it is the first of  
this

this kind that was ever set forth in our *own Language*; nor were the greatest part of the following *Pieces*, ever (that I know of) before *translated* into it.

6. I CONFESS, when I consider the great Usefulness of such a Work, and the high Esteem, which not only the *Ancient Fathers*, but the most Learned of all Ages have had of the *Treatises* here collected together; I have sometimes wondered, that among so many things as have of late been brought into the *English Tongue*, none has yet hitherto undertaken such a Task as this. But when I came to the Tryal, I soon found out what may perhaps have been one reason of it: Since, could I have foreseen the Difficulty of the Work, I much question whether I should ever have been persuaded to go about it. And this I say, not to magnifie any thing that I have done, which I have too much reason to fear will be far from deserving any great Commendation; but to suggest an *Apology* for whatever Defects those of greater Leisure, more Health, and better Abilities, shall chance to find in it, notwithstanding all the Care I have taken to guess aright at the Intention of my *Authors*, and to deliver what upon the best Examination I could make, I then took to be their Meaning.

7. I NEED not say any thing to convince those who are at all acquainted with these Matters, and who are alone the competent Judges of the present Performance, How hard oftentimes it is, with the help of the best *Copies*, to hit upon the true Meaning of an *Author* that lived so many *Ages* since, as those I have here collected. And what great Defects in many places there are, in the *Copies* I have here been forced to make use of, is not unknown to them. Had I whilst I was about this Work, been in another place, where I could have had recourse to the Assistance of a very Learned Friend; than whom none could have afforded me a better help in this particular, or would more readily have done it; I should have had much less reason to apprehend any *Defects* in it. But however, as it is, I am not aware of any great Errors that I have committed; and am in some hope that I have no where very much, nor at all very dangerously, mistaken the Meaning of those *Holy Men*, whose Sense I have undertaken to represent.

8. THIS I am sure of, that my Design in this whole Undertaking, was to minister the best I could to the Interests of *Truth* and *Piety*: And I thought my self at this time, the rather obliged to do it from the *Press*, in that it has pleased God

in

in some measure to take me off, from the Ability of doing it, from the *Pulpit*.

9. IF it shall be ask'd how I came to chuse the Drudgery of a *Translator*, rather than the more ingenuous part of publishing somewhat of my own Composing, it was in short this; Because I hop'd that such Writings as these would find a more general and unprejudiced acceptance with all sorts of Men, than any thing that could be written by any One now living: Who, if esteem'd by some, is yet in danger of being despis'd by more; whose Prejudice to his Person will not suffer them to reap any Benefit, by any thing, tho' never so useful, that can come from him; Whilst such *Tracts* as these may possibly receive a general Respect from all sorts of Persons; and meet not only with an *Entertainment*, but an *Esteem* too from *All*.

10. THESE were the *Motives* that first induced me to set about this Work; and in the Reasonableness of which should I chance to be mistaken, yet I cannot but persuade my self that the Honesty of my Intentions, shall excuse me to all indifferent Persons. Let Others then, to whom God has given better *Opportunities*, and greater *Abilities*, serve the *Church* in better and higher *Performances*. It shall suffice me in any way to minister to the

Souls of Men. And if by this present Undertaking I shall but in any measure have contributed to the reviving a true Sense of *Piety* and *Devotion* among us; but especially to the disposing of any number of Men to consider more seriously the fatal Consequences of our present Divisions, and to labour what in them lies to the Composing of them; I shall heartily bless God, both that he first prompted me to undertake this troublesome Task, and has since enabled me, tho' amidst many *Infirmities*, to go through with it.

---

---

The First  
**EPISTLE**  
OF  
St. *CLEMENT*  
TO THE  
**Corinthians.**

---





THE  
CONTENTS.

Ch. I, II. **H**E commends them for  
their excellent Order  
and Piety in Christ, before their  
Schism brake out.

III. How their Divisions began?

IV, V, VI. Envy and Emulation  
the Original of all Strife and Dis-  
order. Examples of the Mischiefs  
they have occasion'd.

VII, VIII. He exhorts them to look  
up to the Rules of their Religion,  
and repent of their Divisions, and  
they shall be forgiven.

IX, X. To encourage them whereunto,  
he sets before them the Examples  
of Holy Men, whose Piety is re-  
corded in the Scriptures.

XI, XII. And particularly such as  
have been eminent for their Kind-  
ness and Charity to their Neigh-  
bours.

XIII. What Rules our Religion has  
left us to this purpose?

## The Contents.

- XIV, XV. *Which he applies to the Case of the Corinthians ; exhorting them to put an End to their Contentions, so contrary to their Duty.*
- XVI, XVII, XVIII. *In order to this, he advises them to be humble ; and that from the Examples of our Saviour, and of Holy Men in all Ages.*
- XIX, XX. *He returns to the business of their Divisions ; which he by more Arguments persuades them to compose.*
- XXI. *He exhorts them to Obedience, from the Consideration of the Goodness of God, and of his Presence in every place.*
- XXIII, XXIV. *Of Faith : And particularly what we are to believe as to the Future Resurrection.*
- XXIV, &c. to XXVII. *This Article at large proved.*
- XXVIII. *He again exhorts them to Obedience : That it is impossible to escape the Vengeance of God, if we continue in Sin.*
- XXIX. *This farther enforced from the Consideration of their Relation to God, as his Elect.*
- XXX. *How we must live that we may please God ?*
- XXXII. *We*

## The Contents.

XXXII. *We are justified by Faith.*

XXXIII. *Yet this must not lessen our Care to live well; nor our Pleasure in it.*

XXXIV. *This enforc'd from the Examples of the Holy Angels, and from the exceeding greatness of that Reward which God has prepared for us.*

XXXV, XXXVI. *We must attain unto this Reward by Faith and Obedience.*

XXXVII. *Which we must carry on in an orderly pursuing of the Duties of our several Stations, without Envy-ing or Contention.*

XXXVIII. *The necessity of different Orders among Men. We have none of us any thing but what we received of God; Whom therefore we ought in every Condition thankfully to obey.*

XXXIX, &c. *From whence he exhorts them to do every thing orderly in the Church, as the only way to please God.*

XLII. *The Orders of Ministers in Christ's Church establish'd by the Apostles, according to Christ's Command.*

XLIII. *And after the Example of Moses.*

XLIV. *Therefore they who have been duly placed in the Ministry according*

## The Contents.

*according to their Order, cannot without great Sin be put out of it.*

**XLV, &c.** *He exhorts them to Peace from Examples out of the Holy Scriptures.*

**XLVII.** *Particularly from St. Paul's Exhortation to them.*

**XLIX.** *The Value which God puts upon Love and Unity: The Effects of a true Charity.*

**L.** *Which is the Gift of God, and must be obtain'd by Prayer.*

**LI.** *He exhorts such as have been concern'd in these Divisions to repent, and return to their Unity, confessing their Sin to God.*

**LIII.** *Which he infers from the Example of Moses:*

**LV.** *Nay of many among the Heathen; and of Judith, and Esther among the Jews.*

**LVI.** *The benefit of mutual Advice and Correction.*

**LVII.** *He entreats them to follow that which is here given to them.*

**LVIII.** *Recommends them to God.*

**LIX.** *Desires speedily to hear that this Epistle had had a good Effect upon them.*

**LX.** *And so concludes.*

The

---

T H E  
E P I S T L E  
O F  
St. C L E M E N T  
T O T H E  
**Corinthians.**

*The Church of God which is \* at \* Sojourneth.  
Rome, to the Church of God  
which \* is at Corinth, \* Elect, \* Called.  
Sanctified, † by the Will of God, See Dr. Ham-  
mond on Mart.  
through Jesus Christ our Lord : † Gr. in.  
Grace be to you ; and Peace from  
the Almighty God by Jesus  
Christ be multiplied. \**

*\* See Bishop  
Pearson's Note  
on this place.*

**T** H E \* suddain and unexpected  
Dangers and Calamities that P. 2.  
have fallen upon Us, BELOVED  
BRETHREN, have, we fear, made us  
B the

## St. Clement's Epistle

the more slow in our Consideration  
 of those things which you \* proposed  
 to Us : † As also of that Wicked and  
 † *and.* Detestable Sedition, so † unbecoming  
 † *Gr. strange to.* the Elect of God, which a few heady  
 and self-will'd Men have fomented  
 to such a Degree, that your Venera-  
 ble and Renowned Name, so worthy  
 of all Men to be beloved, is greatly  
 Blasphemed thereby. For who that  
 † *Gr. lodg'd as a Stranger.* has † ever been among you, has not  
 † *Your firm and fruitful Faith in all good Works, &c.* experimented † the firmness of your  
 Faith, and its Fruitfulness in all Good  
 Works? And admired the Temper  
 and Moderation of your Religion in  
 Christ? And publish'd abroad the  
 Magnificence of your Hospitality?  
 And thought you Happy in your  
 perfect and certain knowledge *of the Gospel.* For ye did all things with-  
 out respect of Persons; and walked  
 † according to the Laws of God:  
 Being subject to those who had the  
 Rule over you; and giving the Honour  
 that was fitting, to such as were the  
 † *in.* † Aged among you. The young Men  
 ye commanded to think those things  
 that were Modest and Grave. The  
 Women ye exhorted, to do all things  
 with

‡ *Presbyters.*

with an unblameable, and seemly and pure Conscience: Loving their own Husbands, as was fitting: And that keeping themselves within the <sup>4</sup> Limits of a due Obedience, they should <sup>\*</sup> order their Houses gravely with all <sup>5</sup> Discretion.

<sup>4</sup> Canon, Rule.

<sup>\*</sup>Themselves do their own business. Vid. Not. Junii in loc.

<sup>5</sup> Temperance, Sobriety.

<sup>1</sup> Pet. v. 5.

<sup>\*</sup> Proud. Acts xx. 35.

<sup>1</sup> Tim. vi. 8.

II. YE were All of you Humble minded, not <sup>\*</sup> Boasting of any thing: Desiring rather to be Subject than to Govern, to Give than to Receive, being content with the Portion God had dispensed to you: And hearkning diligently to his Word, ye <sup>\*</sup> received it into your Hearts, having his || Precepts always before your Eyes. Thus a firm, and <sup>6</sup> blessed and <sup>6</sup> profitable Peace was given unto you; and an unsatiable desire of doing Good; and a plentiful Effusion of the Holy Ghost was upon all of you. And being full of <sup>\*</sup> Good Desires, ye did with a <sup>7</sup> great readiness, and with a Religious Confidence stretch forth your hands to God Almighty; beseeching him to be merciful unto you, if in any thing ye had unwillingly sinn'd against Him. Ye contended day and night for the

<sup>\*</sup>Embraced it in your very Bowels  
|| See Junii Not. in loc.

<sup>6</sup> Gr.  $\lambda\iota\pi\sigma\sigma\epsilon\iota$ .

<sup>\*</sup>Holy Counsel, or Purpose, or Will.

<sup>7</sup> Gr. Good.



<sup>a</sup> *With Mercy  
and Conscience.*

<sup>b</sup> *Ye were with-  
out Repentance  
in all well-doing*  
Titus iii. 1.

Prov. vii. 3.

Deut. xxxii. 15.

<sup>10</sup> *Confusion, Tu-  
mults, &c.*

whole Brotherhood; that <sup>a</sup> through the Mercy of God, and a Good Conscience, the number of his Elect might be saved. Ye were sincere, and without Offence towards each other; not mindful of Injuries: All Sedition and Schism was an Abomination unto you. Ye bewailed every one his Neighbours Sins, esteeming their Defects your Own. Ye <sup>b</sup> were kind one to another without grudging; being ready to every Good Work. And being *thus* adorn'd with a Conversation altogether Virtuous and Religious, ye did All things in the fear of God; whose *Commandments were written upon the Tables of your Hearts.*

III. ALL Honour and Enlargement was given unto you; and *so* was fulfill'd that which is written; *My Beloved did Eat and Drink, he was Enlarged and waxed Fat, and he Kicked.* From hence came Envy, and Strife, and Sedition; Persecution and <sup>10</sup> Disorder, War and Captivity. So they who were of no Renown, lifted up themselves against the Honourable; Those of no Reputation, against those that

that were in Respect; The Foolish, against the Wise; The young Men against the Aged. Therefore Righteousness and Peace are departed from you, because Every one hath forsaken the Fear of the Lord; and is grown blind in His Faith; nor walketh by the Rule of Gods Commandments, nor liveth as is fitting in Christ: But every one " follows his own wicked Lusts, "walketh after. Having taken up an Ungodly and Unjust Envy, by which Death first entred into the World.

IV. FOR so it is written; *And in process of time it came to pass, that* Gen. iv. 3. &c. *Cain brought of the fruit of the ground an Offering unto the LORD. And Abel He also brought of the Firstlings of his Flock and of the fat thereof: And the LORD had respect unto Abel and to his Offering. But unto Cain and unto his Offering he had not respect. And Cain was very Wroth, and his Countenance fell. And the LORD said unto Cain, Why art thou Wroth? And why is thy Countenance fallen? \* If thou shalt offer* \* This is according to the Lxx. *aright, but not divide aright, hast thou not sinned? Hold thy peace: Unto Thee*

shall be his desire, and Thou shalt rule over Him. And Cain said unto Abel his Brother, let us go down into the Field. And it came to pass as they were in the Field, that Cain rose up against Abel his Brother, and slew him. Ye see Brethren, how Envy and Emulation wrought \* the Death of a Brother. For <sup>12</sup> this our Father Jacob fled from the Face of his Brother Esau. It was this that caused Joseph to be persecuted even unto Death, and Bondage. It was <sup>12</sup> this that forced Moses to flee from the Face of Pharaoh King of Egypt, when he heard his own Country-man ask him, *Who made Thee a Prince and a Judge over us? Wilt thou kill me as thou didst the Egyptian yesterday?* For <sup>12</sup> this Aaron and Miriam were <sup>13</sup> shut out of the Camp, from the rest of the Congregation seven days. Emulation <sup>14</sup> sent Dathan and Abiram quick into \* the Grave, because they raised up a Sedition against Moses the Servant of God. For <sup>12</sup> this David <sup>15</sup> was not only hated of Strangers, but was persecuted even by Saul the King of Israel.

\* fraticide.

<sup>12</sup> Envy.

Gen. 28.

Gen. 37. & 39.

Exod. ii. 15.

Exod. ii. 14.

<sup>13</sup> made to lodge out.

Numb. xii. 14,

15.

<sup>14</sup> brought.

\* Hades.

<sup>15</sup> had or underwent the Hatred, not only, &c.

V. BUT <sup>16</sup> not to insist upon an- <sup>16</sup> *to cease from.*  
 tient Examples, let us come to those  
<sup>17</sup> Worthies that have been nearest to <sup>17</sup> *Combatants,*  
 us; and take the brave Examples of <sup>17</sup> *Wrestlers.*  
 our own Age. Through Zeal and  
 Envy, <sup>18</sup> the most Faithful, and <sup>18</sup> *The Faithful*  
 Righteous Pillars of the Church, <sup>18</sup> *and most Righteous.*  
 have been persecuted even to *the*  
*most bitter Deaths.* Let us set before  
 our Eyes the <sup>19</sup> Holy Apostles: *Peter* <sup>19</sup> *Good.*  
 by unjust Envy underwent not One  
 or Two, but many <sup>20</sup> Sufferings; <sup>20</sup> *Labours.*  
<sup>21</sup> till at last being Martyr'd, he went <sup>21</sup> *and sc.*  
 to the place of Glory that was due  
 unto Him. <sup>22</sup> For the same cause, <sup>22</sup> *By Envy.*  
 did *Paul in like manner* receive the Re-  
 ward of his Patience: Seven times  
<sup>23</sup> he was in Bonds; He was Whipp'd, <sup>23</sup> *Having born*  
 was Stoned; He preach'd both in the <sup>23</sup> *seven times*  
 East and in the West; <sup>24</sup> leaving <sup>24</sup> *He received*  
 behind Him the Glorious Report of <sup>24</sup> *the &c.*  
 his Faith: And so having taught the  
 whole World Righteousness, and *for*  
*that end* travell'd even to the utmost  
 Bounds of the West; He at last suf-  
 fer'd Martyrdom <sup>25</sup> by the Command <sup>25</sup> *Vid. Pearson*  
 of the Governours, and departed out <sup>25</sup> *de Success.*  
 of the World, and went unto his Holy <sup>25</sup> *c. viii. § 9.*

place; being become a most eminent  
Pattern of Patience *unto All Ages.*

<sup>26</sup> Men who have  
lived Godly, is  
gathered toge-  
ther.

<sup>27</sup> become an ex-  
cellent Exam-  
ple among u.

<sup>28</sup> Envy.

\* The names of  
Danae and  
Dirce I omit.  
See Junius An-  
not. in loc.

<sup>29</sup> Cursed Affli-  
ctions or Tor-  
ments.

\* Envy or Emu-  
lation.

Gen. ii. 23.

<sup>30</sup> Great.

VI. TO these <sup>26</sup> Holy Apostles we  
may add, a very great number of  
others, who having through Envy  
undergone *in like manner* many Pains  
and Torments, have <sup>27</sup> left a Glorious  
Example to us. For <sup>28</sup> this *not only*  
*Men but even Women* have been Per-  
secuted: \* And having suffer'd very  
grievous and <sup>29</sup> cruel Punishments,  
have finish'd the Course of their Faith  
with Firmness; and though weak in  
Body, yet received a Glorious Re-  
ward. \* This has alienated the Minds  
*even* of Women from their Husbands;  
and changed what was once said by  
our Father *Adam*; *This is now Bone*  
*of my Bone, and Flesh of my Flesh.* In  
a word, Envy and Strife, have over-  
turn'd <sup>30</sup> whole Cities, and rooted out  
Great Nations *from off the Earth.*

<sup>31</sup> send.

\* Instructing  
you but also re-  
membring, &c.  
|| place of En-  
counter.

VII. THESE Things, Beloved,  
we <sup>31</sup> write unto you not only \* for  
your Instruction, but also for our own  
Remembrance. For we are all in  
the same || Field, and the same Com-  
bat

bat is <sup>32</sup> prepared for us all. Where- <sup>32</sup> *Imposed upon*  
fore let Us lay aside all Vain and <sup>33</sup> *all.*  
Empty Cares; and let us come up  
to the Glorious and Venerable Rule  
of our Holy Calling. Let us consider  
what is Good, and Acceptable, and <sup>1</sup> *Tim. v. 4.*  
Well-pleasing in the Sight of Him  
that made Us. Let us look stedfastly  
to the Bloud of Christ, and see how  
Precious his Bloud is in the sight of  
God: Which being shed for our Sal-  
vation, \* has obtain'd the Grace of <sup>\*</sup> *afforded or*  
Repentance for all the World. Let us <sup>given to.</sup>  
<sup>33</sup> search into the Ages *that have gone* <sup>33</sup> *Look dili-*  
*before us*; and let us learn that our Lord <sup>gently to.</sup>  
has <sup>34</sup> in every one of them still given <sup>34</sup> *from Age to*  
place for Repentance to all such as <sup>Age.</sup>  
would \* turn to him. Noah preach'd <sup>\*</sup> *be turned.*  
Repentance; and as many as heark- <sup>2</sup> *Peter ii. 5.*  
ened to him were Saved. <sup>Gen. vii.</sup> *Jonah de-*  
nounced Destruction against the <sup>Jon. iii.</sup> *Ni-*  
*nivites*: Howbeit they repenting of  
their Sins, appeased God by their  
Prayers, and \* were saved, tho' <sup>\*</sup> *received Sal-*  
*were Strangers to the Covenant of* <sup>vation.</sup>  
God.

VIII. HENCE *we find how* All  
the Ministers of the Grace of God  
have

<sup>35</sup> spoken.

Ezek. xxxiii. 11

<sup>36</sup> so much as his  
Repentance.

<sup>37</sup> Good Sentence.

<sup>38</sup> Repent from.

Ezek. xviii.

30, 32.

Jer. iii. 4. 19.

Isaiah 1. 16.

have spoken by the Holy Spirit of Repentance. And even the Lord of All has himself <sup>35</sup> declared with an Oath concerning it; *As I live, saith the LORD, I desire not the death of a Sinner,* <sup>36</sup> *but that He should repent.* Adding this <sup>37</sup> farther Assurance; *Turn from your Iniquity O House of Israel. Say unto the Children of my People, Tho' your sins should reach from Earth to Heaven; and tho' they should be redder than Scarlet, and blacker than Sackcloth: Yet if ye shall turn to me with all your Heart, and shall call me Father, I will hearken to you, as to a Holy People.* And in another place He saith on this wise: *Wash ye, make you clean; put away the Evil of your doings from before mine Eyes; Cease to do Evil, Learn to do well; Seek Judgment; relieve the Oppressed, judge the Fatherless, plead for the Widow. Come now and let us reason together, saith the LORD: Tho' your sins be as Scarlet they shall be as white as Snow; tho' they be red as Crimson, they shall be as Wooll.* If ye be willing and Obedient ye shall eat the Good of the Land: But if ye refuse and rebell ye shall be devoured with the Sword;

*Sword; for the mouth of the LORD hath spoken it. These things* has God establish'd by his Almighty Will, desiring that all his Beloved should come to Repentance.

IX. WHEREFORE let us obey his Excellent and Glorious Will; and <sup>39</sup> imploring his Mercy and Goodness, let us fall down *upon Our faces* <sup>19</sup> *Becoming Suppliants of, &c.* before him, and \* Cast our selves <sup>\* turn our selves to his Mercy.</sup> upon his Mercy: Laying aside all || Vanity, and Contention, and Envy || <sup>Vain Labour.</sup> which leads unto Death. Let us look up to those who have *the most* perfectly ministred to his Excellent Glory. Let us take *Enoch for our Example*, who being found Righteous in Obedience, was translated, and his Death <sup>Gen. v. 24.</sup> was not <sup>40</sup> known. *Noah* <sup>41</sup> being <sup>40</sup> *found.* proved to be Faithful, did by his Ministry preach Regeneration to the <sup>41</sup> *being found.* World, and the LORD saved by Him <sup>Gen. vi. vii. viii.</sup> all the Living Creatures, that went <sup>42</sup> with one Accord together into the <sup>42</sup> *in Unity.* Ark.

X. SO also *Abraham* who was called <sup>James ii. 23.</sup> Gods Friend, was *in like manner* found <sup>Isaiab xli. 8.</sup> Faith-



43 Words.

44 This Man.

Gen. xii. 1.

Gen. xiii. 14.

\* Towards the  
Sea.

Faithful ; in as much as he obeyed the  
 43 Commands of God. By Obedi-  
 44 ence 44 he went out of his own Coun-  
 try, and from his own Kindred, and  
 from his Fathers House ; that so for-  
 saking a small Country, and a weak  
 Affinity , and a little House, he might  
 inherit the Promises of God. For  
 thus God said unto Him : *Get Thee out  
 of thy Country, and from thy Kindred,  
 and from thy Fathers House, unto a  
 Land that I will shew thee. And I  
 will make thee a Great Nation, and I  
 will bless Thee, and make thy Name  
 Great, and thou shalt be blessed. And  
 I will bless them that bless Thee, and  
 Curse them that Curse Thee ; And in  
 Thee shall all Families of the Earth be  
 Blessed.* And again when he separated  
 Himself from Lot, God said unto him :  
*Lift up now thine Eyes, and look from the  
 place where thou art, Northward and  
 Southward, and Eastward and \* West-  
 ward: For all the Land which Thou  
 seest to thee will I give it, and to thy  
 Seed for ever. And I will make thy  
 Seed as the dust of the Earth, so that  
 if a Man can number the Dust of the  
 Earth, then shall thy Seed also be num-  
 bred*

*bred.* And again He saith; *And God* Gen. xv. 5. *brought forth Abraham and said unto Him, look now towards Heaven and tell the Stars; if thou be able to number them: So shall thy Seed be. And Abraham believed God, and it was counted to Him for Righteousness. Through Faith and Hospitality, \* he had a \* A Son was* Son given him in his Old Age; and *given unto Him.* through Obedience he offer'd him up in Sacrifice to God, upon One of the Mountains which God shew'd unto Him.

XI. BY Hospitality and Godliness *Gen. xix.* was Lot saved out of Sodom, when all *2 Pet. ii. 6.* the Country round about was \* de- *Jude 7.* *\* See Not. Junii* stroy'd by Fire and Brimstone. The *in loc.* LORD thereby making it manifest, that he will not forsake Those that trust in Him; but <sup>45</sup> will bring the Dis- <sup>45 But those that</sup> obedient to Punishment and Corre- <sup>turn another</sup> ction. For his Wife who went out <sup>way, he puts, &c.</sup> with Him, being of a different Mind, and \* not continuing in the same <sup>\* Not in Con-</sup> Obedience, was for that very reason <sup>cord.</sup> set forth for an <sup>46</sup> Example, being <sup>46 put for a sign.</sup> turn'd into a Pillar of Salt unto this day. That so all Men may know, that

<sup>47</sup> become.

that those who are double minded, and distrustful of the Power of God, are <sup>47</sup> prepared for Condemnation, and to be a sign to all succeeding Ages.

Jos. ii. 1, &c.

<sup>48</sup> He sent Men that should take them, that being taken, &c.

<sup>49</sup> Therefore Hospitable Rahab.

<sup>50</sup> Men being sent by the King and saying.  
Ver. 3.

Ver. 4, 5.

<sup>51</sup> Men.

Ver. 9.

<sup>52</sup> given you this City.

XII. BY Faith and Hospitality was *Rahab* the Harlot Saved. For when the Spies were sent by *Josbua* the Son of *Nun* to search out *Jericho*, and the King of *Jericho* knew that they were come to spy out his Country; He <sup>48</sup> order'd them to be taken, that so they might be put to death. <sup>49</sup> *Rahab* therefore, being Hospitable, received them, and hid them under the Stalks of Flax, on the Top of her House. And when the <sup>50</sup> Messengers that were sent by the King came unto Her, and asked Her saying, *There came Men unto Thee to Spy out the Land, bring them forth, for so hath the King Commanded*: She answered, *The two Men whom ye seek came unto Me but presently they departed, and are gone*: Shewing them withall a Contrary way. Then she said to the <sup>51</sup> Spies, *I know that the LORD your God has <sup>52</sup> given this City into your*

*your hands; for the fear of you is fallen upon All that dwell therein. When* Ver. 13.  
*therefore ye shall have taken it, ye shall save Me and my Fathers House. And they answered her saying, It shall be as Thou hast spoken unto Us. Therefore* Ver. 18, 19.  
*when Thou shalt know that we are near, thou shalt Gather all thy Family together upon the House top, and they shall be saved: But all that shall be found without thy House, shall be destroyed. And they gave her moreover a Sign; that* Ver. 18  
*she should Hang out of her House a Scarlet Rope: Shewing thereby, that by the Blood of our Lord, there should be Redemption to all that Believe and Hope in God. Ye see, Beloved, How there was not only Faith, but Prophecie too in this Woman.*

XIII. LET us therefore Humble our selves, Brethren, laying aside all Pride, and Boasting, and Foolishness, and Anger: And let us do as it is written, for thus saith the Holy Spirit, *Let not the Wise Man Glory in his* Jer. ix. 23.  
*Wisdom, nor the Strong Man in his Strength, nor the Rich Man in his Riches; But let him that Glorieth,*  
*Glory*

## St. Clement's Epistle

\* teaching us.  
 || for thus he  
 saith.  
 Luke vi. 36.

*Glory in the LORD, to seek Him, and to do Judgment and Justice. Above All, remembring the words of the Lord Jesus, which he spake \* concerning Equity and Long-suffering, || saying, Be ye Merciful, and ye shall obtain Mercy; Forgive and ye shall be Forgiven; As ye do so shall it be done unto you; As ye give so shall it be given unto you; As ye judge so shall ye be judged; As ye are kind to Others, so shall God be kind to you; With what Measure ye Meet, with the same shall it be measured to you Again. By this Command, and by these Rules, let us establish our selves, that so we may always walk obediently to his Holy Words; being humble minded: For so says \* the Holy Scripture; Upon Whom shall I look, even upon him that is poor and of a Contrite Spirit, and that trembles at my Word.*

\* Holy Word.  
 Isaiab lxvi. 2.

\* Holy.

\* in.

XIV. IT is therefore Just and \* Righteous, Men and Brethren, that we should become Obedient unto God, rather than follow such as \* through Pride and Disorder, have made themselves the Ring-leaders of

a detestable Emulation. For it is not an Ordinary Harm that *we shall do our selves*, but rather a very great Danger that we shall run, if we shall rashly give up our selves to the Wills of Men, who \* promote \* prick on to. See Junius Ann. Strife and Seditions, to turn us aside from what is fitting. But let us be kind to One Another, according to the Compassion, and Sweetness of him that made us. For it is written, *The Merciful shall inherit the* Psal. xxxvii. 9. *Earth; and they that are without Evil shall be left upon it: But the* Prov. ii. 20. *Transgressors shall perish from off the face of it.* And again He saith, *I have seen the Wicked in great Power,* Psal. xxxvii. 35 *and spreading himself like the Cedars of Libanus. I passed by, and Lo he was not; I sought his place, but it could not be found. Keep Innocency, and do the thing that is right, for there shall be a Remnant to the Peaceable Man.*

XV. LET us therefore hold fast to Those who \* religiously follow \* with Religion or Godliness. Peace; and not to such as || only pre- || with Hypocrisie Will it. tend to desire it. For He saith in a

C

certain

*Isaiah xxix. 13.* certain place, *This People honoureth me with their lips, but their heart is far from me.* And again, *They \* Bless with their Mouth, but † Curse in their Heart.* And again He saith, *They loved him with their Mouth, and with their Tongue they lied to Him. For their heart was not right with Him, neither were they*  
*Psal. lxi. 4.* *\* Blessed.*  
*† Cursed.*  
*Psal. lxxviii. 37.*  
*Psal. xxix. 19.* faithful in his Covenant. The Lord shall cut off all flattering lips, And the tongue that speaketh proud things. Who have said, with our tongue will we prevail, Our lips are our own, who is LORD over us? For the Oppression of the Poor, for the Sighing of the Needy, now will I arise saith the LORD; I will set him in safety, I will deal confidently with him.

\* Boasting.

*Isaiah Liii.*

XVI. FOR Christ is theirs who are Humble, and not who exalt themselves over his Flock. The Scepter of the Majesty of God our Lord Jesus Christ, came not in the shew of Pride, and Arrogance, tho he could have done so; But with Humility, as the Holy Ghost had before spoken concerning him. For thus he saith, LORD, who hath believed

believed our Report, and to whom is the Arm of the LORD revealed? For He shall grow up before him as a tender Plant, and as a root out of a dry Ground. He hath no Form nor Comeliness, and when we shall see Him, there is no Beauty that we should desire Him. He is despised and rejected of Men; A man of Sorrows and acquainted with Grief. And we hid, as it were, our faces from Him; He was despised, and we esteemed Him not. Surely He hath borne our Grievs, and carried our Sorrows; yet we did Esteem him stricken, smitten of God and afflicted. But he was wounded for our Transgressions, He was bruised for our Iniquities; The Chastisement of our Peace was upon Him; and with his Stripes we are healed. All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every One to his own way, and the LORD hath laid on Him the Iniquity of Us all. He was Oppressed and he was Afflicted, yet he Opened not his mouth: He is brought as a Lamb to the Slaughter; and as a Sheep before her Shearers is Dumb, so He openeth not his Mouth. He was taken from Prison and from Judg-



ment; And who shall declare his Generation? For he was cut off out of the Land of the Living: For the Transgression of my People was he stricken. And he made his Grave with the Wicked, and with the Rich in his Death, because he had done no Violence, neither was any deceit in his Mouth. Yet it pleased the LORD to bruise him, he hath put him to grief: When thou shalt make his Soul an Offering for sin, He shall see his Seed, he shall prolong his days; And the pleasure of the LORD shall prosper in his hand. He shall see of the travail of his Soul and shall be satisfied; by his Knowledge shall my righteous Servant justify many: For He shall bear their Iniquities. Therefore will I divide him a portion with the Great, and he shall divide the Spoil with the Strong; because He hath poured out his Soul unto death: And he was numbred with the Transgressors, and he bare the sin of many, and made Intercession for the Transgressors. And again he Himself saith, I am a Worm and no Man, a reproach of men, and despised of the People. All they that see me laugh

*Psal. xxii.  
Ver. 6.*

me to scorn; they shout out their lips, they shake their head saying; He trusted in the LORD that he would deliver Him, let him deliver him seeing he delighted in Him. Ye see, Beloved, what the Pattern is that has been given to Us. For if the Lord thus humbled himself, what should we do who are come under the Yoak of his Grace?

XVII. LET us be Followers of those who went about in Goat-skins and Sheep-skins; preaching the Coming of Christ. \* Such \* *We say.* were *Elias*, and *Eliseus* and *Ezekiel* the Prophets. † And let us add to these, such others as have received the like Testimony. *Abraham* has been greatly witnessed of; having been called the *Friend of God*. And yet He stedfastly beholding the Glory of God says with all Humility, *I am Dust and Ashes*. Again, of *Job* Gen. xviii. 27. it is thus written, *That he was Just* Job i. 1. and without Blame, True; One that served God and abstained from all Evil. Yet he despising himself, says, *No man is free from Pollution, no not* Job xiv. 4. *tho'*

\* Ministry.

*tho' He should live but one day. Moses was called Faithful in all Gods House; and by his \* Conduct God determined to deliver the Israelites from their Stripes and Pains. And yet even this Man, tho' thus Greatly Honoured, spake not greatly of Himself; but when the Oracle of God was delivered to him out of the Bush, he said, Who am I, that thou dost send me? I am of a slender Voice, and a slow Tongue. And again He saith, I am as the smoak of the Pot.*

*Exod. iii. 11.  
...iv. 10.*

*Psal. lxxxix. 20*

*Psal. Li. 20  
Ver. 17.*

XVIII. AND what shall we say of David, so highly testified of in the Holy Scriptures? To whom God said, *I have found a Man after my own heart, David the Son of Jesse, with my Holy Oil have I anointed Him.* But yet he Himself saith unto God, *Have mercy upon me O God, according to thy loving kindness; According unto the multitude of thy tender Mercies blot out my Transgressions. Wash me thoroughly from mine Iniquity; and cleanse me from my Sin. For I acknowledge my Transgressions, and my Sin is ever before Me.*  
Against

Against Thee only have I sinned, and done this Evil in thy sight, that Thou mightest be justified when Thou speakest, and be clear when Thou judgest. Behold I was shapen in Iniquity, and in Sin did my Mother Conceive me. Behold, Thou desirest Truth in the inward parts; and in the hidden part Thou shalt make me to know Wisdom. Purge me with Hyssop and I shall be Clean, wash me and I shall be whiter than Snow. Make me to hear Joy and Gladness, that the Bones which Thou hast broken may rejoyce. Hide thy face from my sins, and blot out All mine Iniquities. Create in me a clean Heart O God; and renew a right Spirit within Me. Cast me not away from thy presence, and take not thy Holy Spirit from Me. Restore unto me the Joy of thy Salvation, and uphold me with thy free Spirit. Then will I teach Transgressors thy ways, and Sinners shall be converted unto Thee. Deliver me from Blood-guiltiness O God, thou God of my Salvation, and my Tongue shall sing aloud of thy Righteousness. O LORD open thou my Lips, and my Mouth shall shew forth thy

*Praise. For thou desirest not Sacrifice, else would I give it; thou delightest not in Burnt-offerings. The Sacrifices of God are a broken Spirit, a broken and a Contrite Heart O God thou wilt not despise.*

\* Fearfulness.  
|| So great and  
such kind of  
Men.

† Witnessed of,  
or Celebrated.

\* in,

|| Let us return  
to the Mark of  
Peace given to  
us from the be-  
ginning.

† See him with  
our Under-  
standing.  
|| Soul.

XIX. THUS has the Humility and \* Godly Fear of these || great and excellent Men, † recorded in the Scriptures, through Obedience made not only Us but also the Generations before us Better; even as many as have received his Holy Oracles \* with Fear and Truth. Having therefore so many, and such Great and Glorious Examples, || let us return to that Peace, which was the Mark that from the Beginning was set before Us: Let us look up to the Father and Creator of the whole World; and let us hold fast to his Glorious and Exceeding Gifts and Benefits which are of Peace. Let us † consider and behold with the Eyes of our || Understandings his Long-suffering Will; and think how Gentle and Patient he is towards his whole Creation.

XX. THE

XX. THE Heavens \* holding <sup>\* Not starting from his Administration.</sup> fast to his Appointment, are subject to Him in Peace. Day and Night accomplish the Courses that he has allotted unto them, not disturbing one another. The Sun and Moon, and all the several † Companies and † <sup>Chorus's.</sup> Constellations of the Stars, run the \* Courses that he has appointed to <sup>\* Bounds.</sup> them in Concord, without departing in the least from them. The Fruitful Earth yields its Food plentifully in due Season both to Man and Beast, and to all that is upon it according to His Will; not \* disputing, nor <sup>\* Doubting.</sup> altering any thing of what was order'd by Him. So also the untrodden and unsearchable Floods of the Deep are kept in by his Command: || And || <sup>Vid. Edit. Comes. P. 53.</sup> the \* Conflux of the vast Sea being <sup>\* Hollow or Depth.</sup> brought together at the Creation into its several Collections, passes not the Bounds that He has set to it; but as he then † appointed it, † <sup>Commanded, so it does.</sup> so it remains. For he said, *Hitherto shalt thou come, and thy Floods shall* <sup>Job xxxviii.</sup> *be broken within Thee.* The Ocean, unpassable to Mankind, and the Worlds

\* Stations.

|| Service.

\* Mix together.

Worlds that are beyond it, are govern'd by the same Commands of their *great* Master. Spring and Summer, Autumn and Winter, give place peaceably to Each other. The several \* Quarters of the Winds, fulfil their || work in their Seasons, without offending one Another. The Ever-flowing Fountains, made both for Pleasure and Health, never fail to reach out their Breasts, to support the Life of Men. Even the smallest Creatures \* live together in Peace and Concord with Each other. All these has the Great Creator and Lord of all, commanded to observe Peace and Concord; being Good to all: But especially to Us who flee to his Mercy through our Lord Jesus Christ, to whom be Glory and Majesty for Ever and Ever, Amen.

† All of Us.

|| With Concord.

XXI. TAKE heed, Beloved, that his many Blessings be not to † us to Condemnation; except we shall walk worthy of Him, doing with || One Consent what is Good and Pleasing in his Sight. *The Spirit of*

*of the LORD is a Candle, searching all* Prov. xx. 27.  
*the inward parts of the Belly.* Let

us *therefore* consider how near he is  
 to us; and how that none of our

Thoughts are \* hid from him; nor  
 any of our Conversation which we  
 have *with one Another.* It is there-  
 fore Just that we should not forsake

our Rank, *by doing contrary* to his  
 Will. Let us chuse to offend a few

foolish and inconsiderate Men, lifted  
 up and Glorifying || in their own Pride,

rather than God. Let us Reverence  
 our Lord Jesus Christ whose Bloud  
 was Given for us. Let us Honour  
 Those who are set over us; let us

respect the Aged that are amongst  
 us; and let us instruct the younger

Men, in the Discipline and Fear of  
 the LORD. Our Wives let us \* direct

in Doing that which is Good. Let  
 them shew forth a lovely Habit of

Purity *in all their Conversation*; with  
 a sincere Affection of Meekness:

Let the government of their Tongues  
 † be made manifest by their Silence: †

Let their Charity be without respect  
 of Persons, alike towards all such as

truly fear God. Let your Children  
 || be

\* *That nothing  
 is hid to him of  
 our thoughts.*

|| *In the Pride of  
 their own Speech  
 or Reason.*

\* *Correct or a-  
 mend.*

† *Let them ma-  
 nifest.*



¶ Partake of.

† Saving.

|| be bred up in the Instruction of the Lord: *And especially* let them learn how great a Power Humility has with God; How much a Pure and Holy Charity avails with Him; How Excellent and Great his Fear is, and how it will † save all such as turn to Him with Holiness in a Pure Mind. For He is the Searcher of the Thoughts and Desires of the Heart; whose Breath is in Us, and when He pleases he can take it from Us.

¶ The Faith confirms.

Psal. xxxiv. 11.

XXII. BUT all these things || must be confirm'd by the Faith which is in Christ, for so He himself bespeaks us by the Holy Ghost. *Come ye Children and harken unto me, and I will teach you the fear of the LORD. What man is there that desireth Life, and loveth to see Good days? Keep thy Tongue from Evil, and thy Lips that they speak no Guile. Depart from Evil and do Good; seek Peace and ensue it. The Eyes of the LORD are upon the Righteous, and his Ears are open unto their Prayers. But the face of the LORD is against them that do Evil, to cut off the Remem-*

*Remembrance of them from the Earth. The Righteous cried, and the LORD heard Him, and deliver'd him out of all his Troubles. Many are the Troubles of the Wicked, But they that trust in the LORD, Mercy shall encompass them About.*

*Psal. xxxii. 10.*

XXIII. OUR All-Merciful and Beneficent Father hath Bowels of Compassion towards Them that fear Him; And Kindly and Lovingly bestows his Graces upon all such as come to Him with a simple Mind.

Wherefore let us not || waver, neither || let us have any doubt in our Hearts, of his Excellent and Glorious Gifts.

*|| Be double minded.*

† Let that be far from us which is written, Miserable are the double-minded, and those who are doubtful in their Hearts.

*† Let the writing be far from us.*

Who say, These things have we heard, and our Fathers have told us these things. But behold we are grown old, and none of them has happened unto Us. O ye Fools!

*James i. 2.*

*2 Pet. iii. 4.*

\* Consider the Trees; take the Vine for an Example. First it sheds its Leaves; then it Buds; after that it spreads its Leaves; then it flowers;

*\* Compare yourself unto a Tree.*

Malach. iii. 1.

flowers; then come the sower Grapes; and after them follows the Ripe Fruit. Ye see how in a little time the Fruit of the Trees comes to Maturity. Of a truth, yet a little while and his Will shall suddenly be accomplish'd. The Holy Scripture it self bearing witness, *That the LORD shall suddenly come to his Temple, even the Holy one whom ye look for.*

|| See.

\* Went forth,  
and so in the  
rest.

XXIV. LET us consider, Beloved, how the LORD does continually shew Us, that there shall be a future Resurrection; of which he has made our Lord Jesus Christ the First-fruits, raising him from the Dead. Let us || contemplate, Beloved, the Resurrection that is continually made *before our Eyes*. Day and Night manifest a Resurrection to Us. The night lies down, and the day arises: Again the day departs and the night comes on. Let us behold the Fruits *of the Earth*. Every one sees how the Seed is sown. The Sower \* goes forth, and casts it upon the Earth; and the Seed which when it was sown

sown fell upon the Earth dry and naked, in time dissolves: And from the Dissolution, the great Power of the Providence of the Lord raises it again; and of one Seed many arise, and bring forth Fruit.

XXV. LET us consider that wonderful || Type of the Resurrecti- || *Sign.*  
 on, which is *seen* in the Eastern Countries; that is to say in *Arabia*. There is a certain Bird called a *Phoenix*: Of this there is never but one at a time; and that lives five hundred Years. And when the time of its Dissolution draws near that it must Die; it makes it self a Nest of Frankincense, and Myrrhe, and other Spices, into which when its time is fulfilled it enters and dies. But its Flesh putrifying breeds a certain Worm, which being nourished with the Juice of the dead \* Bird brings forth Fea- \* *Animal*  
 thers; and when it is grown to † a † *Strong.*  
 perfect State, it takes up the Nest in which the Bones of its || Parent || *Progenitor.*  
 lie, and carries it from *Arabia* into *Egypt*, to a City called *Heliopolis*: And flying in open day in the sight  
 of

of all Men, lays it upon the Altar of the Sun, and so returns from whence it came. The Priests then search into the Records of the Time; and find that it return'd precisely at the end of five hundred Years.

¶ Do.

XXVI. AND || shall we then think it to be any very great and strange thing, for the Lord of all to raise up those that religiously serve him in the Assurance of a good Faith, when even by a Bird he shews us the greatness of his power to fulfil his Promise? For he says in a certain place, *Thou shalt raise me up and I shall confess unto Thee.* And again, *I laid me down and slept, and awaked, because thou art with me.* And again Job says, *Thou shalt raise up this flesh of mine, that has suffered all these things.*

Psalm. lll. 5.

Job xix. 23.

\* Let our Minds  
be fastned.

XXVII. HAVING therefore this Hope, let us \* hold fast to him who is Faithful in all his Promises, and Righteous in all his Judgments. Who has commanded us not to Lye, how much more shall he not Himself

self Lye? For nothing is impossible with God, but to Lye. Let his Faith then be stirred up again in us; and let us consider that all things are nigh unto Him. By the Word of his || Power He made all things; || *Majesty.* and by the same Word he is able, *when ever he will,* to destroy them. *Who shall say unto Him, what dost Thou? Or who shall resist the Power of his Strength?* When, and As he pleased he made All things; and nothing shall pass away of all that has been appointed by Him. All things are Open before him; nor can any thing be hid from his Counsell. \* *The* <sup>*If the, &c.*</sup> *Heavens declare the Glory of God, and Psal. xix. 1.* *the Firmament sheweth his handy work.* *Day unto Day uttereth Speech, and Night unto Night sheweth Knowledge.* *There is no Speech nor Language where their Voice is not heard.*

XXVIII. SEEING then all things are seen and heard by God; let us fear him, and let us lay aside our Corrupt Desires of Wicked Works; that through his Mercy we may be || delivered from the † Con- || *cond.*  
D                      demnation † *Judgments.*

demnation to come. For whither can any of us flee from his mighty Hand? Or what World shall receive any of those who run away from him? For thus saith the Scripture in *psal. cxxxix. 7.* a certain place, *Whither shall I flee [from thy Spirit] or whither shall I flee from thy presence? If I ascend up into Heaven, thou art there: If I shall go to the utmost parts of the Earth, there is thy right hand: If I shall make my Bed in the deep, thy Spirit is there.* Whither then shall any one go; or whither shall he run from him that comprehends all things?

† *Mind.*

† *A part.*

*Deut. xxxii.*  
8, 9.

*lxx.*

XXIX. LET us therefore come to him with Holiness of † Heart, lifting up Chast and Undeiled Hands unto him: Loving our gracious and merciful Father, who has made us † to partake of his Election. For so it is written, *When the most High divided the Nations, when he separated the Sons of Adam, he set the Bounds of the Nations, according to the number of his Angels: His People Jacob became the Portion of the LORD, and Israel the Lot of his Inheritance.* And in another

ther Place he saith, Behold the LORD Deut. iv. 34.  
 taketh unto himself a Nation, out of the  
 midst of the Nations, as a Man taketh  
 the First-fruits of his Flour; and she Num. xxvii.  
 Most Holy shall come out of that Nati-  
 on.

XXX. WHEREFORE we  
 being a part of the Holy One; Let  
 us do all those things that pertain  
 unto Holyness: Fleeing all Evil-speak-  
 ing against one another; all filthy  
 and impure Embraces, together with  
 all Drunkenness, Love of Innovati-  
 on, abominable Concupiscences, de-  
 testable Adultery, and execrable Pride.  
 For God resisteth the Proud, but giveth Prov. iii. 34.  
 Grace to the Humble. Let us there-  
 fore hold fast to those to whom || God || The Grace of  
 God has been  
 given.  
 has given his Grace. And let us put  
 on Concord, being Humble, Tem-  
 perate; free from all Whispering  
 and Detraction; and justified by our  
 † Actions, not our Words. For he † Works.  
 saith, \* *Dost he that speaketh and hear- \* He that speak-  
 eth many things, and that is of a ready eth many things  
 Tongue, suppose that he is Righteous? shall also hear,  
 &c.*  
 Blessed is he that is born of a Woman, Job xi. 2, 3.  
 that liveth but a few days: || Use not Lxx.  
 Be not much  
 in Words.  
 D. 2.



*therefore much Speech.* Let our Praise be of God, not of our selves ; For God hateth those that † commend themselves. Let the Witness of our good Actions be given to us of others, as it was given to the Holy Men that went before us. Rashness, and Arrogance, and Confidence, be to them who are Accursed of God : But Equity, and Humility, and Mildness, to such as are Blessed by him.

† See what are the ways of his blessing.  
¶ Unroll.

XXXI. LET us then hold fast to his Blessing, and let us † consider what are the ways by which we may attain unto it. Let us || look back upon those things that have happened from the beginning. For what was our Father *Abraham* Blessed? Was it not because that through Faith he wrought Righteousness and Truth? *Isaac* being \* fully perswaded of what he knew was to come, cheerfully yielded himself up for a Sacrifice. *Jacob* with Humility departed out of his own Country, fleeing from his Brother, and went unto *Laban* and served him : And so the Scepter of the Twelve Tribes of *Israel*, was given unto him.

\* With full persuasion, foreknowing what was to be, pleasingly became a Sacrifice.

XXXII. NOW what the Greatness of || this Gift was, will plainly appear, if we shall take the pains distinctly to consider all the parts of it. For from him came the Priests and Levites; who all Ministered at the Altar of God. From him came our Lord Jesus Christ, according to the Flesh. From him came the Kings and Princes, and Rulers in Judah. Nor were the rest of his † Tribes in any small Glory: † Scepters: See Jun. Annot. Gen. xlvii. 17. God having promis'd that Thy Seed, [says he,] shall be as the Stars of Heaven. They were all therefore \* greatly glorified, not for their own Sake, or for their own Works, or for the Righteousness that they themselves wrought; but through his Will. And we also being called by the same Will in Christ Jesus, are not justified by our selves, neither by our own Wisdom, or Knowledge, or Piety, or the Works which we have done || in the Holiness of our Hearts: But by that Faith by which God Almighty has justified those also who were from the Beginning; to whom be Glory for ever and ever, Amen.

|| The Gifts that were given by him, were, He shall know, who soever will one by one, carefully and distinctly consider them.

\* Glorified and Magnified.

|| In Holiness of Heart.

XXXIII.

XXXIII. WHAT shall we do therefore, Brethren? Shall we be Sloathful in Well-doing, and lay aside *our* Charity? God forbid that any such thing should be done by us. But rather let us hasten with all Earnestness and Readiness of Mind, to perfect every Good Work. For even the Creator and Lord of all things, rejoices in his own Works. By his  
 ¶ All-greatest. || Almighty Power he fixed the Heavens, and by his Incomprehensible Wisdom he adorned them. He also divided the Earth from the Water, with which it is encompassed; and fixed it as a secure Tower, upon the Foundation of his own Will. He also by his Appointment, commanded all the Beasts that are upon it, to exist. So likewise the Sea, and all the Creatures that are in it; having first created them, He enclosed them therein by his Power. And above all, he with his Holy and Pure Hands, formed Man, the most Excellent, and as to his Understanding, truly the greatest of all other Creatures, the Character of his own Image. For so

Gen. I. 26, 27. God says, *Let us make Man in our Image,*

*Image, after our own Likeness: So God created Man, Male and Female created he them. And having thus finished all these things, he commended all that he had made, and Blessed them, and said; Increase and Gen. i. 28. Multiply: We see therefore, how all Righteous Men have been adorn'd with Good Works: And not only so, but even the Lord himself, having adorn'd himself with his Works, rejoiced. Having therefore || such an || This. Example, let us without Delay, † fulfill his Will, and with all our † Come to. Strength, work the Work of Righteousness.*

**XXXIV. THE** Good Workman with Confidence receives the Bread of his \* Labour; But the Slug- \* Work, gish and Lazy, cannot endure to behold him that set him on work. We must therefore be ready and forward in Well-doing: For from him are all things. And thus he foretells us, *Behold the LORD cometh, and his Reward is with him, even before his Face, to render to every one according to his Work.* *Isaiab. XL. 12. Lxii. 11.* He warns us therefore beforehand,

† Every Good  
Work

\* Him.

\* His Will.  
Dan. vii. 10.

Isa. vi. 3.

† With Consci-  
ence.

Isa. Lxlv. 4.  
1 Cor. ii. 9.

with all his Heart, to this end, that we should not be Sloathful and Negligent in † Well-doing. Let our Boasting *therefore*, and our Confidence be in \* God: Let us submit our selves to his Will. Let us consider the vast Multitude of his Angels, how ready they stand to minister unto \* it? As saith the Scripture, *Thousands of Thousands stood before him, and Ten Thousand times Ten Thousand Ministered unto him. And they cry'd saying, Holy, Holy, Holy, is the Lord of Hosts: The whole Earth is full of his Glory. Wherefore let us also, being gathered together in Love and Concord with one another; with † one Mind as well as one Mouth, cry earnestly unto Him, that he would make us Partakers of his Great and Glorious Promises. For he saith Eye hath not seen, nor Ear heard, neither have entred into the Heart of Man, the things which God has prepared for them that wait for him.*

XXXV. How Blessed and Wonderful, Beloved, are the Gifts of God? Life in Immortality! Brightness

ness in Righteousness ! Truth in full Assurance ! Faith in Conviction ! Temperance in Holiness ! And all this has || *God* subjected to our Under- || *He.* standings : What therefore shall those things be which he has prepared for them that wait for him ? The Creator and Father of \* all things, the \* *Ages.* most Holy ; He *only* knows both the || Greatness and Beauty of them. Let || *Quantity.* us therefore strive with all Earnestness, that we may be found in the number of those that wait for him ; that so we may receive the † Reward † *Gifts.* which he has promised. But how Beloved, shall † we do this ? We † *If we shall.* must fix our Minds by Faith towards God, and seek those things that are pleasing and acceptable unto Him. We must \* act conformably to his \* *Perform those things that are agreeable.* Holy Will ; and follow the way of Truth, casting off all Unrighteousness and Iniquity, together *with all* Covetousness, Strife, Evil Manners, Deceit, Whispering, Detractions ; all Hatred of God, Pride and Boasting ; Vain-glory and Ambition : For they that do these things, are Odious to God ; and not only they that

Rom. i. 32.

Pal. L. 16. &amp;c.

that do them, but also all such as approve of those that do them. For thus saith the Scripture, But unto the Wicked God said, What hast thou to do to declare my Statutes, or that thou shouldst take my Covenant in thy Mouth? Seeing thou hatest Instruction, and castest my Words behind thee. When thou sawest a Thief, then thou consentedst with him; and hast been Partaker with Adulterers. Thou givest thy Mouth to Evil, and thy Tongue frameth Deceit. Thou sittest and speakest against thy Brother; Thou slanderest thine own Mothers Son. These things hast thou done and I kept Silence; Thou thoughtedst that I was altogether such a one as thy self: But I will reprove thee, and set them in order before thine Eyes. Now consider this ye that forget God, lest I tear you in pieces, and there be none to deliver. Whoso offereth Praise, Glorifieth me: And to him that disposeth his way aright, will I shew the Salvation of God.

XXXVI. THIS is the way,  
Beloved, in which we may find  
That which has the Power  
to save us. Our Saviour, even Jesus Christ, the  
High

High Priest of all our Offerings, the Defender and Helper of our Weakness. By him we look up to the † Highest Heavens, and behold as in a Glass, his spotless and most excellent Visage. By him are the Eyes of our Hearts opened; by him is our foolish and darkned Understanding enabled to behold his wonderful Light. By Him would God have us to taste the Knowledge of Immortality, *who* Heb. i. 2. *being the Brightness of his Glory, is by so much greater than the Angels, as he* Heb. i. 3. *has by Inheritance obtain'd a more excellent Name than they.* For so it is Written, *Who maketh his Angels Spirits, and his Ministers a Flame of Fire.* Psal. Civ. 4. Heb. i. 7. But to the Son, thus saith the LORD, *Thou art my Son, to day have I begotten thee. Ask of me, and I will give thee the Heathen for thine Inheritance,* Heb. i. 5. Comp. Psal. li. 7, 8. *and the utmost parts of the Earth for thy Possession.* And again he saith unto him, *Sit thou on my Right Hand, untill I make thine Enemies thy Footstool.* Hib. i. 13. Psal. cx. 1. But who are his Enemies? even the Wicked? and such who oppose their own Wills, to the Will of God.



† War.

\* Prefects.

| Commanders

of a Thousand.

† Centurions.

\* Commanders  
of 50, and so on.

1 Cor. xii. 13.

| Use one com-  
mon Subjection.

XXXVII. LET us therefore † go on, Men and Brethren, with all Earnestness in his Holy Laws. Let us consider those who Fight under our *Earthly* Governours: How orderly how readily, and with what exact Obedience they perform those things that are commanded them? All are not \* Generals, nor || Colonels, nor † Captains, nor \* inferior Officers: But every one in his respective Rank does what is commanded him by the King, and those who have the Authority over Him. They who are Great, cannot yet subsist without Those that are Little; nor the Little without the Great. But there must be a Mixture in all things, and then there will be Use and Profit too. Let us, for Example, take our Body: The Head without the Feet is nothing, neither the Feet without the Head. And even the smallest Members of our Body, are yet both necessary and useful to the whole Body. But all conspire together, and || are subject to one common Use, *namely*, the Preservation of the whole.

XXXVIII. LET therefore our whole Body be saved in Christ Jesus: And let every one be subject to another, † according to the Order in which he is placed by the \* *As also he has been placed.* Gift of God. Let not the strong Man \* *His Gift.* neglect to take care of the Weak; and let the Weak see that he reverence the Strong. Let the Rich Man distribute to the Necessity of the Poor: And let the Poor bless God, that he has given one unto him, by whom his Want may be supplied. Let the Wise Man shew forth his Wisdom, not in Words, but in Good Works. Let him that is Humble, not bear Witness to himself, but let him leave it to another to bear Witness of him. Let him that is pure in the Flesh, not grow proud of it, knowing that it was † from another † *Another that gave him.* that he received the Gift of Continence. Let us consider therefore, Brethren, † whereof we are made; † *Of what Matter.* who, and what kind of Men we came into the World, as it were out of a Sepulchre, and from outer Darkness. He that made us and formed us, brought us into his own World; having

|| Prepared for us. having || prevented us with his Benefits, *even* before we were Born. Wherefore, having Received all these things from Him, we ought upon all Occasions, to give thanks unto Him : To whom be Glory for ever and ever, *Amen*.

## XXXIX. FOOLISH and Un-

† And Imprudent and without Instruction. wise Men, † who have neither Prudence nor Learning, *may perhaps* Mock and Deride us ; being willing to set up themselves in their own

† For.

Conceits : † But what can a Mortal Man do ? Or what Strength is there in him that is made out of the Dust ? For it is written, There was no Shape before mine Eyes ; only I heard a || Sound

|| Air.

Job iv. 16. &c.

and a Voice. For what ? Shall Man be Pure before the LORD ? Shall he be blameless in his Works ? Behold, he trusteth not in his Servants ; and his Angels he charged with Folly. Yea, the Heaven is not clean in his Sight, how much less they that dwell in Houses of Clay ; of which also we our selves were made ? He smote them as a Moth ; and from Morning even unto the Evening they endure not. Because they were not able to help themselves they

they Perish'd: He breath'd upon them and they dy'd, because they had no Wisdom. *Call* Job iv. 1. &c. now if there be any that will answer thee; and to which of the Angels wilt thou look? For Wrath killeth the Foolish Man, and Envy slayeth him that is in Error. I have seen the Foolish taking Root, but to their Habitation was presently consumed. Their Children were far from Safety, they † Perish'd at the † Were crush'd Gates of those who were less than them upon. selves; And there was no Man to || help || Deliver. them. For what was prepared for them, the Righteous \* did Eat: And they shall \* Eat. not be delivered from Evil.

**X L. SEEING** then these things are manifest unto us, it will behove us, to take care that looking into the Depths of the Divine Knowledge, we do all things in order, whatsoever our Lord has commanded us to do. And particularly, that we perform our Offerings and Service to God, at their appointed Seasons: For these he has commanded to be done, not † † By chance. rashly and disorderly, but at Certain Determinate Times and Hours. And therefore he has ordained by his Supreme

preme Will and Authority, both where, and by what Persons they are to be perform'd : That so all things being piously done unto all  
 † *to his Will.* Well-pleasing, they may be acceptable unto † him. They therefore who make their Offerings at the appointed Seasons, are Happy, and Accepted : Because that obeying the Commandments of the Lord, they are free from Sin. *And the same care must be had of the Persons that Minister unto him.* For the Chief Priest has his proper Services ; and to the Priests their proper Place is appointed ; And to the Levites appertain their proper Ministries: And the Layman is confined within the Bounds of what is commanded to Lay-men.

XLI. LET every one of you *therefore*, Brethren, bless God in his proper Station with || a Good Conscience, and with all Gravity, not exceeding the Rule of his Service that is appointed to him. The daily Sacrifices † were not offer'd every where, nor the Peace-offerings, nor the Sacrifices appointed for Sins and Transgres-

|| *Being in a good Conscience.*

† *Are.*

Transgressions, but only at *Jerusalem*: Nor *might they be offer'd* in any Place there neither, but *only* at the Altar before the Temple; being first diligently examin'd by the High-Priest and the other Ministers we before mentioned. They therefore who \* did any thing besides \* *Do: Is:* what \* was agreeable to his Will, \* *Are: &c.* were punished with Death. † Con-† *Te set.* sider, Brethren, by how much the better Knowledge God has vouchsafed unto us, by so much the greater Danger are we exposed to.

XLII. THE Apostles have Preached to us from our Lord JESUS CHRIST: Jesus Christ from God. Christ therefore was sent by God, the Apostles by Christ: So both *their Offices* were orderly fulfill'd, according to the Will of God. For having received their Command, and being fully assured by the Resurrection of our Lord Jesus Christ; † *Thess. 1. 5.* and convinced by the Word of God, and the || Evidence of the Holy || *With the full Assurance.* Spirit, they went abroad, publishing, *That the Kingdom of God was at Hand.* And thus Preaching through Countries

tries and Cities, and proving by the Spirit, the first Fruits of their Conversions, they appointed *out of them* Bishops and Ministers over such as should afterwards believe. Nor was this any new Thing: Seeing that long before it was written concerning Bishops and Deacons. For thus saith the Scripture, in a certain place; *I will appoint their \* Overseers in Righteousness, and their \* Ministers in Faith.*

*Isaiah lx. 17.*  
*\* Bishops, Deacons.*

XLIII. AND what wonder if they to whom such a work was committed by God in Christ, establish'd such *Officers* as we before mentioned; When even that Blessed and Faithful Servant in all his House, *Moses*, || set down in the Holy Scriptures all things that were commanded Him. Whom also all the rest of the Prophets follow'd, bearing witness with one consent to those things that were appointed by him. For He, *perceiving* an *\* Emulation* to arise among the Tribes concerning the Priesthood, and that there was a Strife about it, which of them should be Adorned with that Glorious Title; commanded their  
 twelve

|| *Signified.*

*\* An Emulation  
 happening.*

twelve Captains to bring to him *twelve* Rods; every Tribe being *Numb. xvii.*  
 \* noted upon *its Rod* according to \* *Written.*  
 its Name. And he took them and bound them together, and sealed them with the Seals of the Twelve Princes of the Tribes; and laid them up in the Tabernacle of Witness, upon the Table of God. And when he had shut *the door of* the Tabernacle, he sealed up the Keys of it, in like manner || as he had done the || *And the Rods.*  
 Rods; And said unto them, Men and Brethren; Which soever Tribe shall have its Rod Blossom, that Tribe has God chosen *to Himself,* \* to Minister unto Him *in Holy Things.* And *To exercise the Office of the Priesthood, and to Minister, &c.*  
 when Morning was come, He called together All *Israel*, six Hundred Thousand Men; and shew'd to their Princes the Seals; and opened the Tabernacle of Witness; and brought forth the Rods. And the Rod of *Aaron* was found not only to have Blossom'd, but also to have Fruit upon it. What think you, Beloved? Did not *Moses* before know || what should happen? Yes *That this should be so.*  
 verily: But to the End there might be no Division nor Tumult in *Israel*,



He did in this manner, that the Name of the True and Only God might be Glorified: To Him be Honour for Ever and Ever, *Amen.*

\* About the  
name of the Bi-  
shoprick.

¶ That.

¶ Bishoprick.

XLIV. SO likewise our Apostles knew by our Lord Jesus Christ, that there should Contentions arise \* upon the Account of the Ministry. And therefore having a perfect fore-knowledge of this, they appointed Persons, as we have before said, and then gave Direction, || How when they should die, other chosen and approved Men should succeed in their Ministry. Wherefore we cannot think that those may justly be thrown out of their Ministry, who were either Appointed by Them, or afterwards *Chosen* by Eminent Men with the Consent of the whole Church, and have with all Lowliness and Innocency ministred to the Flock of Christ, in Peace, and without Self-interest, and for a long time commended by all. For it would be no small Sin in us, should we cast off those from their || Ministry, who Holily and without Blame  
\* fulfil

\* fulfil the Duties of it. Blessed are *\*Offer the Gifts.* those Priests, who having finish'd their Course before *these times*, have obtain'd a fruitful and perfect Dissolution: For they have no fear, lest any one should turn them out of the place in which they are *now* establish'd. But we see *how* you have put out some, who lived excellently *among you*, from the Ministry, with which they were *\* rightly* and inno- *\*Without blame* cently adorn'd.

XLV. YE are Contentious, Brethren, and Zealous for things that pertain not unto Salvation. Look into the Holy Scriptures, which are the true words of the Holy Ghost. Ye know that there is nothing unjust or Spurious || in them. There || *Written.* you shall not find that Just Men were ever cast off by such as were good themselves. † They were per- † *Just Men.* secuted 'tis true, but it was by the Wicked and Ungodly. They were cast into Prison, but *they were cast in* by those that were Unholy. They were stoned, but it was by Sinners and Transgressors. They were killed,

\*Suffering these things they underwent them Gloriously.

|| Dan. vi. 16.

† Shut into.

\* Dan. iii. 20.

|| Worshipping the Worship.

\* Full of Vertue.

|| Have inherited.

\* Have been exalted.

but by Accursed Men, and such as had taken up an Unjust Envy against them. \* And all these things they underwent Gloriously. For what shall we say, Brethren? Was *Daniel* cast into the || Den of Lyons, by Men fearing God? *Ananias, Azarias and Misael*, were they † cast into the \* Fiery Furnace by Men || professing the Excellent and Glorious Worship of the most High? God forbid. What kind of Persons then were they that did these things? They were Men Abominable, full of all Wickedness, who were incensed to so great a Degree, as to bring those into Sufferings, who with a Holy and Unblamable Purpose of mind worshipped God: Not knowing that the Most High is the Protector and Defender of all such as in a Pure Conscience serve his \* Holy Name: To whom be Glory for ever and ever, Amen. But they who with a full Perswasion have endured to the end, || are now made Partakers of Glory and Honour: And \* are Exalted and lifted up by God in their Memorial throughout all Ages, Amen.

XLVI. WHEREFORE it will  
 behove us also, Brethren, \* to follow <sup>\* To be Glued</sup>  
 such Examples *as these*; for it is <sup>to.</sup>  
 written, || *Hold fast to such as are* || *Psal. xviii. 25.*  
*Holy; for they that do so shall be san-*  
*ctified.* And again in another place  
 he saith, *With the Pure thou shalt be* *Psal. xvii. 20.*  
*Pure, but with the Perverse Man thou*  
*shalt be* \* *perverse.* Let us therefore \* *Turn aside.*  
 keep our selves firm to the Innocent  
 and Righteous; for such are \* Cho- \* *The Elect.*  
 sen of God. Wherefore are there  
 Strifes and Anger, and Divisions and  
 Schisms and Wars among Us? Have *Eph. iv. 4.*  
 we not all One God, and One Christ? *1 Cor. xii.*  
 Is not one Spirit of Grace poured  
 out upon us *All?* *Have we not One*  
*Calling in Christ?* Why then do we  
 rent and tear in pieces the Members  
 of Christ; And raise Seditions a-  
 gainst our own Body? And are  
 come to such a heighth of Madnes,  
 as to forget that *we were Members one* *Rom. xii. 5.*  
*of Another?* Remember the words  
 of the Lord Jesus, \* how he said, \* *For he said.*  
*Wo to that Man, [By whom Offences* *Luke xvii.*  
*come]* *It were better for him that he had*  
*never been Born, Than that he should*

## St. Clement's Epistle

have offended one of My Elect. It were better for him, that a Mill-stone should be tyed about his Neck, and he should be cast into the Sea, than that he should offend one of My little ones. Your Schism has perverted Many, has discouraged many : It has raised Doubts in many, and Grief in us All. And yet your Sedition continues still.

XLVII. TAKE the Epistle of the Blessed Paul the Apostle into your Hands ; What was it that he wrote to you in the very Beginning of his \* Instructions to you ? Verily he did || by the Spirit admonish you concerning himself, and Cephaz, and Apollos, forasmuch as even then ye had begun to fall into † Parties and Factions. Nevertheless your Inclinations then led you into a much less Sin : Forasmuch as ye \* placed your Affections on Apostles, Men of || Eminent Reputation in the Church, and on Another who was greatly try'd and approved of among you. But consider we pray you, who are they that have now led you astray : And lessen'd the \* Reputation of that

\* Gospel.

|| Spiritually  
send to you.

1 Cor. i. 12.

† Inclinations  
[for one above  
another.]

\* Inclined.

|| Witness'd of.

\* Gravity.

that Brotherly Love that was *once*  
 \* so Eminent among you? 'Tis a \* *So much spe-*  
 Shame, my Beloved, yea a very *ken of.*  
 great Shame, and unworthy of your  
 Christian || Profession, to hear, that || *Institution.*  
 the most firm and antient Church  
 of the Corinthians should by one or  
 two Persons, *be led* into a Sedition  
 against its Priests. And this Report  
 is come not only to us, but to those  
 also that † are without. Infomuch † *Differ from us.*  
 that the Name of the LORD is Blas-  
 phemed through your Folly; and  
 even ye your selves are brought into  
 Danger by it.

XLVIII. LET us therefore with  
 all hast \* put an End to *this Sedition*; \* *Take away.*  
 and let us fall down before the Lord,  
 and beseech him with Tears that he  
 would || be favourably reconciled to || *Becoming fa-*  
 us, and restore us again to a \* seem- *avourable.*  
 ly and Holy Course of Brotherly *\* Grave: Vener-*  
 Love. For this is the Gate of *able.*  
 Righteousness, opening unto Life:  
 As it is written, *Open unto me the Psalm cxviii.*  
*Gates of Righteousness; I will go in* 19, 20.  
*unto them and will praise the LORD.*  
*This is the Gate of the LORD, the*  
*Righteous*

*Righteous shall enter into it.* Although therefore there are many Gates that are opened, yet this Gate of Righteousness is that Gate in Christ, at which Blessed are All they that enter in, and direct their way in Holiness and Righteousness, doing all things without Disorder. Let a Man be Faithful, let him be Powerful in the Utterance of Knowledge; let him be wise in making an exact Judgment of words; let him be Pure in all his Actions. But *still* by how much the more he seems to be *Above others, by reason of these things,* by so much the more will it Behove him to be Humble-minded; and to seek what is profitable to All Men, and not his own Advantage.

|| *Greater.*

XLIX. HE that has the Love that is in Christ, let him keep the Commandments of Christ. For who is able to express the \* Obligation of the Love of God? What Man is sufficient to declare, as is fitting, the Excellency of its Beauty? The Height to which Charity leads, is inexpressible. Charity \* unites us  
to

\* *Bond.*

\* *Glues.*

to God: \* *Charity covers the multitude of sins*: || *Charity endures all things*, is long-suffering in all things. <sup>1 Pet. iv. 8.</sup>  
 There is nothing Base and Sordid in <sup>1 Cor. xiii. 7, &c.</sup>  
 Charity: Charity lifts not it self up above others; admits of no Divisions; is not Seditious; but does all things in *Peace and Concord*. By Charity were all the Elect of God made Perfect: Without it nothing is pleasing and acceptable in the sight of God. Through Charity did the LORD \* joyn us unto Himself; whilst \* *Take us up*, for the Love that he bore towards us, our Lord Jesus Christ gave his own Bloud for us by the Will of God; his Flesh for our Flesh; his Soul for our Souls.

L. YE see, Beloved, How great and wonderful a thing Love is; and how *that* no Expressions are sufficient to declare its Perfection. *But* who is fit to be found in it? Even such *only* as God shall vouchsafe to make so. Let us therefore Pray to him, and beseech him, that we may be Worthy of it; that so we may live in Charity; being Unblamable,  
 and



and without any Humane Affections to one more than another. All the Ages of the World, *from the Beginning of it*, even unto this time, are passed away: But they who have been made Perfect in Love, have by the Grace of God *obtain'd* a place among the Just, and shall be made manifest in the \* Judgment of the Kingdom of Christ. For it is written, *Enter into thy Chambers for a little space, till my Anger and Indignation shall pass away: And I will remember the Good day, and will raise you up out of your Graves.* Happy \* then shall we be, Beloved, if we shall have fulfilled the Commandments of God, in the Unity of Love; that so, through Love, our Sins may be forgiven us. For so it is written, *Blessed are they whose Iniquities are forgiven, and whose Sins are covered. Blessed is the Man to whom the Lord imputeth no Sin, and in whose Mouth there is no Guile.* Now this Blessing is fulfilled in those who are Chosen by God, through Jesus Christ our Lord, To whom be Glory for Ever and Ever, Amen.

\* *Animadversion, or Visitation.*  
Isa. xxvi. 20.

\* *Are we.*

*Psal. xxxii.*

LI. LET

LI. LET us therefore, as many  
 as have transgressed by any of the  
 \* *Suggestions* of the Adversary, beg \* *See Junius in*  
*God's Forgiveness.* And as for those *loc.*  
 who have been the || Heads of the || *Chief Leaders.*  
 Sedition and Faction among you,  
 † let them look to the Common *End* † *They ought.*  
 of our Hope. For as Many as are  
 \* endued with Fear and Charity, \* *Walk accor-*  
 would rather they Themselves should *ding to: live in.*  
 fall into Tryals than their Neigh-  
 bours: And chuse to be themselves  
 condemn'd, rather than that the  
 Excellent and Just Charity delivered  
 to us, *should Suffer.* For it is Good  
 for a Man to confess wherein he has  
 transgressed; \* and not to harden \* *Rather than.*  
 his Heart, as the Hearts of those  
 were hardened, who raised up Sedi-  
 tion against *Moses* the Servant of  
 God: Whose Punishment was mani-  
 fest *unto all Men*; For they went  
 down Alive into the Grave, Death  
 swallowed them up. *Pharaoh* and his  
 Host, and all the Rulers of *Egypt*, their  
 Chariots also and their Horse-men,  
 were for no other cause drowned  
 in the bottom of the Red Sea, and  
 Perish'd; but because they hardened  
 their

their foolish Hearts, after so many Signs done in the Land of Egypt by Moses the Servant of God.

LII. BELOVED, God is not Indigent of any thing ; nor does he demand any thing of Us, but that we should Confess *our Sins* unto Him. For so says the \* Holy David, *I will Confess unto the LORD, and it shall please him better than a Bullock that hath Horns and Hoofs. Let the Poor see it and be Glad.* And again he saith, *Offer unto God the Sacrifice of Praise, and pay thy Vows unto the most Highest. And call upon Me in the day of Trouble, and I will deliver Thee, and thou shalt Glorifie me. The Sacrifice of God is a Broken Spirit.*

\* Chosen.

Psal. lxxix. 31.

Psal. L. 14.

---Li. 17.

LIII. YE know, Beloved, ye know full-well the Holy Scriptures ; and have thoroughly search'd into the Oracles of God: Call them therefore to *your* Remembrance. For when Moses went up into the Mount, and tarried there Forty Days and Forty Nights in Fasting and Humility ; God said unto Him, *Get thee down quickly from*

Exod. xxxii.

from Hence; For thy People whom thou Deut. ix.  
 broughtest out of the Land of Egypt :  
 has committed Wickedness. They have  
 soon transgressed the way that I com-  
 manded Them, and have made to them-  
 selves Graven Images. And the LORD  
 said unto Him, I have spoken unto Thee  
 \* several times, saying, I have seen \* Once and  
 this People, and behold it is a stiff- Twice  
 necked People: Let me therefore De-  
 stroy them, and put out their Name  
 from under Heaven. And I will make  
 unto thee a Great and a Wonderful  
 Nation, that shall be much \* More, Greater  
 larger than this. But Moses said, Not so  
 LORD: Forgive now this People their  
 Sin: Or if thou wilt not, Blot me also  
 out of the Book of the Living. O  
 admirable Charity! O insuperable  
 Perfection! The Servant speaks free-  
 ly to his Lord; He beseeches him  
 either to forgive the People, or to  
 || destroy Him together with them. || Blot out.

LIV. WHO is there among you  
 that is Generous? Who that is Com-  
 passionate? Who that has any Cha-  
 rity? Let him say, If this Sedition,  
 this Contention, these Schisms are  
 upon

† *The Multitude.*

|| *Every place.*

*Psalms xxiv.*

upon my Account, I am ready to depart; to go away whithersoever ye please; and do whatsoever † ye shall desire of me; only let the Flock of Christ be in Peace, with the Priests that are set over it. He that shall do this, shall get to himself a very great Honour in the LORD; and || there is no place but what will be ready to receive him: *For the Earth is the LORD's, and the Fullness thereof.* These things they who have their Conversation towards God not to be repented of, both have done, and will always be ready to do.

\* *But that we may bring the Examples of Heathens.*

|| *Citizens.*

† *Many.*

L.V. \* NAY and even the Gentiles themselves have given us Examples of this kind. *For we read, How many Kings and Princes, in times of Pestilence, being warned by their Oracles, have given up Themselves unto Death, that by their own Blood, they might deliver their || Country-men from Destruction.* † Others have forsaken their Cities, that so they might put an End to the Seditions of them.

We

We know how many among our selves, have given up themselves unto Bonds, that thereby they might free others *from them*. Others have hired out themselves to the most Servile Employments, that with the Wages of them they might feed † their Brethen. And even *Women* † *Others*, themselves, being strengthened by the Grace of God, have done many *Glorious* and *Manly* things on such *Occasions*. The Blessed *Judith*, when *Judith* viii, ix, her City was besieged, desired the *Elders*, that they would suffer her to go into the Camp of \* their Ene-<sup>x, xiii.</sup> \* *The Strangers*. And she went out exposing her self to Danger, for the Love she bare to her Country and her People that were Besieged; and the Lord delivered *Holofernes* into the Hands of a Woman. Nor did *Esther*, being *Esther* vii, viii. perfect in Faith, expose her self to any less Hazard, for the Delivery of the Twelve Tribes of *Israel*, in danger of being destroyed. For by Fasting and Humbling Her self, she intreated the Great Maker of All things, the God of Ages; \* So \* *Who*. that beholding the Humility of her  
F Soul,

Soul, He delivered the People, for whose sake she was in Peril.

LVI. WHEREFORE let us also pray for all such as fall into any Trouble or Distress; That being endued with Humility and Moderation, they may submit not unto Us, but to the Will of God. For by this means \* they shall obtain a Fruitful and Perfect Remembrance, with Mercy, both *at the Hands of God*, and of his Saints. Let us receive Correction, at which no Man ought to repine. Beloved, the Reproof and the Correction which we exercise towards one another, is good, and exceeding Profitable: For it unites us the more closely to the Will of God. For so says the Holy Scripture, *The LORD corrected me, but he did not deliver me over unto Death. For whom the LORD loveth he Chastneth, and scourgeth every Son whom he receiveth. The Righteous, saith He, shall instruct me in Mercy and reprove me; but the Oyl of Sinners shall not make fat my Head. And again he saith, Happy is the Man whom God correcteth;* there-

\* *There shall be to them.*

*Psal. cxviii. 18.*

*Prov. lii. 11.*

*Psal. cxli. 5.*

*Job v. 17, &c.*

therefore despise not thou the Chastning of the Almighty. For he maketh sore and bindeth up; He woundeth and his hands make whole. He shall deliver thee in six Troubles; Yea in seven there shall no Evil touch Thee. In Famine he shall redeem thee from Death; and in War from the Power of the Sword. Thou shalt be hid from the Scourge of the Tongue; neither shalt thou be afraid of Destruction when it cometh. Thou shalt laugh at the Wicked and Sinners; neither shalt thou be afraid of the Beasts of the Earth. The wild Beasts shall be at peace with thee. Then shalt thou know that thy House shall be in peace; and the Habitation of thy Tabernacle shall not err. Thou shalt know also that thy Seed shall be great, and thy Off-spring as the Grass of the Earth. Thou shalt come to thy Grave as the ripe Corn, that is taken in due time; like as a Shock of Corn cometh in, in his Season. Ye see, Beloved, how there shall be a Defence to those that are corrected of the Lord. For being a good Instructor, he is willing to Admonish us by his Holy Discipline.



See Junius in  
loc.

Prov. i. 23, &c.

LVII. DO YE therefore who laid the first Foundation of this Sedition, submit your selves to your Priests; and be Instructed unto Repentance, bending the Knees of your Hearts. Learn to be subject, laying aside all proud and arrogant Boasting of your Tongues. For it is better for you to be found little and of good Reputation in the Sheepfold of Christ, than to seem to your selves better than others, and be cast out of his Fold. For thus speaks the excellent and all-vertuous Wisdom,

*Behold I will pour out the word of my Spirit upon you, I will make known my Speech unto you. Because I called and ye would not hear, I stretched out my words and ye regarded not. But ye have set at nought all my Counsel, and would none of my reproof. I will also laugh at your Calamity, and mock when your fear cometh. When your Fear cometh as Desolation, and your Destruction as a Whirlwind, when Distress and Anguish cometh upon you. Then shall ye call upon me, but I will not hear you: The Wicked shall seek me, but they shall not find*

find me. For that they hated Knowledge,  
and did not seek the Fear of the Lord.  
They would not hearken unto my Coun-  
sel: They despised all my Reproof. There-  
fore shall they eat of the Fruit of their  
own ways; and be filled with their own  
Wickedness.

\* \* \* \* \*  
\* \* \* \* \*  
\* \* \* \* \*

LVIII. NOW God, the Inspe-  
ctor of all things, the \* Father of \* *Master.*  
Spirits, and the Lord of all Flesh,  
who hath chosen our Lord Jesus  
Christ, and Us by Him, to be *his*  
Peculiar People; grant to every Soul  
of Man that calleth upon his Glorious  
and Holy Name, Faith, Fear, Peace,  
Long-suffering, Patience, Tempe-  
rance, Holiness and Wisdom, unto all  
well-pleasing \* in his sight; through \* *To his Name.*  
our High Priest and Protector Jesus  
Christ, by whom be Glory, and Ma-  
jesty, and Honour unto Him now and  
for Ever more, *Amen.*

LIX. THE Messengers whom we  
have sent unto you, *Claudius* and  
F 3 *Ephebus,*

St. Clement's *Epistle*, &c.

*Ephebus*, and *Valerius*, and *Bito* with *Fortunatus*, send back to us again with all speed in Peace and with Joy, that they may the sooner acquaint us with your Peace and Concord, so much pray'd for and desired by Us: And that we may rejoyce in your good Order.

LX. THE Grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you, and with all others that are any where called by God and through Him: To whom be Honour and Glory, and Might, and Majesty, and Dominion, by \* *Christ Jesus*, from Everlasting to Everlasting, *Amen*.

\* *Him*.

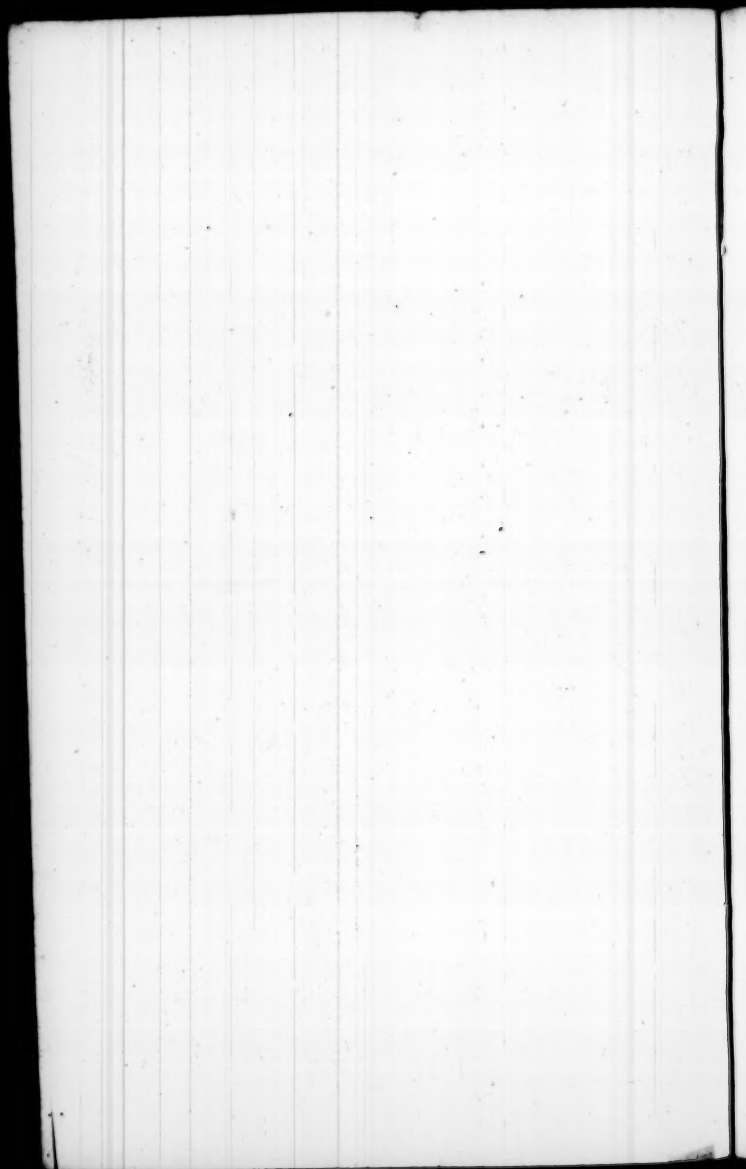
---

T H E

---

THE  
EPISTLE  
OF  
St. *POLYCARP*  
TO THE  
**Philippians.**

---



---



---

# T H E C O N T E N T S.

*After the Salutation :*

1. **H**E Commends the Philippians for their Respect to Those who suffer'd for the Gospel ; and for their own Faith and Piety. Numb. I.
2. He exhorts Them to continue in Both : And that particularly from the Consideration of the Resurrection and Judgment to come. N. II.  
*For their better accomplishing whereof, He,*
3. Advises them to call to mind the Doctrine which St. Paul had taught them whilst He was in Person among them ; and after wrote to them in his Epistle. N. III.

*The Summ of all which he now goes on particularly to set before Them.*

I. As to Practical Duties.

1. Faith, Hope, Charity. N. III.
2. Against

## The Contents.

2. *Against Covetousness.* N. IV.
3. *The Duties of Husbands, Wives, Widows.* *Ib.*
4. *Of Deacons, Young Men, Virgins.* N. V.
5. *Of Presbyters.* N. VI.

*All which He again Inforces with the Consideration of that Account we must one day give to God of all our Actions.*

II. *As to Matters of Faith.*

1. *What we are to Believe concerning our Saviour Christ: His Nature and Sufferings.* N. VII.
2. *Of the Future Resurrection and Judgment.* *Ib.*

*Which being thus set forth, He finally Exhorts them,*

1. *To Prayer.* N. VII.
2. *To Stedfastness in their Faith.* N. VIII.

*Inforced from the Examples of the Patience and Constancy.*

- *Of Our Saviour Christ.* *Ib.*  
 --- *Of his Apostles and Saints.* N. IX.
3. *To Carefulness in all Well-doing.* N. X.

*And*

*And more particularly yet, from the Miscarriage of Valens, who had been a Presbyter among Them: He Exhorts them,*

4. *To beware of Covetousness. N. XI.*

5. *Not to be too severe towards such Persons, either in their Censures of them, or Behaviour towards them. N. XII.*

*He Prays for them; and then Exhorts them,*

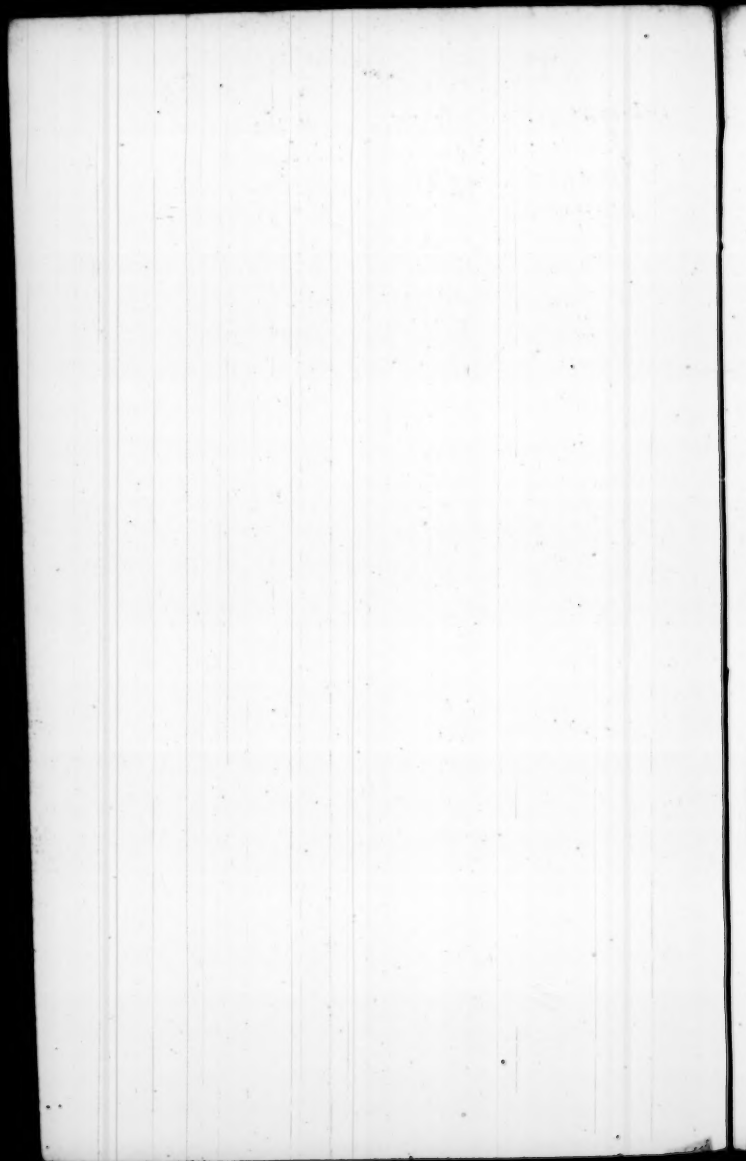
6. *To Pray for All others. Ib.*

*And having thus done with what was Instructive of his Epistle: He advises Them of his sending Ignatius's Epistles to them. N. XIII.*

*And desires an Account of Him from Them. N. XIV.*

*And lastly: He recommends Crescens, by whom he wrote this Epistle, together with his Sister, to their Favour and Assistance. Ib.*





---

T H E  
E P I S T L E  
O F  
St. P O L Y C A R P  
T O T H E  
**Philippians.**

POLYCARP, *and the PRES-*  
BYTERS *that are with Him,*  
*to the Church of God which \* is \* Sojourneth.*  
at PHILIPPI; *Mercy unto*  
*you and Peace from God Al-*  
*mighty, and the Lord Jesus*  
*Christ, our Saviour, be multiplied.*

I. **I** REJOYCED greatly with  
you in our Lord Jesus Christ,  
that ye received the Images  
of a true Love, and accompanied,  
as

as it behoved you, those who were in *Bonds*, becoming Saints; which are the Crowns of such as are truly chosen by God and our Lord: As also that the Root of the Faith which was preach'd from antient times, remains firm in you to this day; and brings forth Fruit to our Lord Jesus Christ, who suffer'd himself to be brought even to the Death for our Sins. Whom God hath raised up, having loosed the Pains of Death. Whom having not seen, ye love; in whom though now ye see him not, yet believing, ye rejoyce with joy unspeakable and full of Glory: Into which many desire to enter, Knowing that by Grace ye are saved; not by Works, but by the Will of God through Jesus Christ.

*Acts* ii. 24.

*1 Pet.* i. 8.

*Eph.* ii. 8.

*1 Pet.* i. 13.

*Psal.* ii. 11.

*1 Pet.* i. 21.

II. *WHEREFORE* girding up the Loyns of your Mind; Serve the Lord with Fear and in Truth: Laying aside all empty and vain Speech, and the Error of many; Believing in him that raised up our Lord Jesus Christ from the Dead, and hath given him Glory and a Throne at his right Hand. To whom all things are made

made Subject, *Both that are in Heaven, and that are in Earth*; whom every \* Creature shall worship; who \* *Breath.* shall come to be the Judge of the Quick and Dead: Whole Blood God shall require of them that believe not in him, but are *disobedient* to him. But he that raised up || Christ || *Him.* from the Dead, shall also raise up us *in like manner*, if we do his Will, and walk \* according to his Command- \* *In.* ments; and love that which he hath loved: Abstaining from all || Un- || *Injustice.* righteousness; \* *inordinate Affection*, \* *Eph. iv. 19.* and love of Money; from Evil-speak- *Colos. iii. 5.* ing; False Witness; not rendring Evil *1 Pet. iii. 9.* for Evil, or Railing for Railing, or Striking for Striking, or Cursing for Cursing: But remembering what the Lord has \* taught us saying, Judge not \* *Said to us,* and ye shall not be judged; Forgive *Teaching.* and ye shall be forgiven; Be ye merciful, and ye shall obtain Mercy; For *Luke vi. 37.* with the same measure that ye meet *Matt. vii. 1.* withall, it shall be measured to you again. And again that Blessed are the *Matt. v. 3. 10.* Poor, and they that are persecuted for *Luke vi. 20.* Righteousness sake, for theirs is the Kingdom of God.

## III. THESE

III. THESE things my Brethren I took not the Liberty of my self to write unto you concerning Righteousness, but you your selves before encouraged me to it. For neither can I, nor any other such as I am, come up to the Wisdom of the Blessed and Renowned *Paul*; who being himself in Person with those who then lived, did with all Exactness and Soundness *teach the Word of Truth*; and being gone from you wrote an \* Epistle to you: Into which if you look, you will be able to *Edifie* your selves in the Faith that has been delivered unto you; which is the Mother of us All; being *followed* with *Hope*, and led on by a general Love, both towards God and towards Christ, and towards our Neighbour. For if any Man \* has these things, he has fulfilled the Law of Righteousness: For he that has *Charity* is far from all Sin.

\* *Epistles.*  
Vid. Annot.  
Coteler. in loc.

\* *Be within.*

IV. BUT

IV. BUT the Love of Money is  
*the* || *Root of all Evil.* Knowing there- || *Beginning.*  
 fore that as we brought nothing into *1 Tim. 6. 7.*  
*this World, so neither may we carry any*  
*thing out* ; Let us † arm our selves † *Be arm'd.*  
 with the Armour of Righteousness :  
 And teach our selves first to walk  
 according to the Commandments of  
 the Lord ; and then your Wives to  
 walk likewise || according to the || *In.*  
 Faith that is given to them ; in  
 \* Charity and in Purity ; loving \* *Love.*  
 their own Husbands with all || Sin- || *Truth.*  
 cerity, and all others alike with all  
 Temperance ; and to bring up their  
 Children in the Instruction † and † *Of the.*  
 Fear of the Lord. The Widows  
 likewise *teach* that they be Sober and  
 Discreet as to what concerns the  
 Faith of the Lord : Praying always  
 for All Men ; being far from all  
 Detraction , Evil speaking , false  
 Witness ; from Covetousness and  
 from all Evil : Knowing that they are  
 the Altars of God || who sees all things, || *And that He.*  
 and from whom nothing is hid ; *Who*  
*searches out* the very Reasonings, and  
 Thoughts, and Secrets of our Hearts.

G V. KNOW-

|| His Right-  
ousness.

† Continent.

V. KNOWING therefore that God is not mocked, we ought to walk worthy both of his Command and of his Glory. Also the Deacons must be Blameless before || Him, as the Ministers of God in Christ, and not of Men. Not false Accusers; not Double-tongued; not Lovers of Money; but † Moderate in all things; Compassionate, Careful; walking according to the Truth of the Lord, who was the Servant of all: Whom if we please in this present World, we shall also be made Partakers of that which is to come, according as he has promised to us, that he will raise us from the Dead; And that if we shall walk worthy of him, we shall also reign together with him, if we believe. In like manner the younger Men must be unblamable in all things: Above all, taking care of their Purity, and to restrain themselves from all Evil. For it is good to be cut off from the Lusts that are in the World; because every such

1 Pet. 2. 11. *Lust warreth against the Spirit: And*  
1 Cor. vi. 9, 10. *neither Fornicators, nor Effeminate,*

nor

*nor Abusers of themselves with Mankind, shall inherit the Kingdom of God; nor they who do such things as are Foolish and Unreasonable. Wherefore ye must abstain from all these things; being subject to the Priests and Deacons, as unto God and Christ. The Virgins admonish to walk in a spotless and pure Conscience.*

VI. AND let the || Elders be || *Presbyters.*  
Compassionate and Merciful towards  
all; turning them from their Errors;  
seeking out those that are Weak;  
not forgetting the Widows, the Fa-  
therless and the Poor; but always  
*providing what is Good both in the* Rom. xii. 17.  
*sight of God and Man.* Abstaining  
from all Wrath, respect of Persons,  
and unrighteous Judgment: And  
especially being free from all Covet-  
ousness. Not \* easie to believe any  
thing against any; not severe in  
Judgment; Knowing that we are  
all Debtors in point of Sin. If there-  
fore we pray to the Lord that he  
would forgive us, we ought also to  
forgive others: For we are all in the

\* *Swiftly be-  
lieving.*



Matt. xii. 14.

Rom. xiv. 10.

2 Cor. v. 10.

¶ For.

*sight of our Lord and God; and must all stand before the Judgment Seat of Christ; and every one give an account || of Himself. Let us therefore serve him in fear, and with all Reverence as both Himself commanded; and as the Apostles and Prophets have preach'd to us, who have foretold the Coming of our Lord: Being Zealous of what is Good; abstaining from 'all Offence, and from all false Brethren; and from all that bear the Name of Christ in Hypocrisie; who deceive vain Men.*

1 John iv. 3.

¶ *The Martyrdom or Witness of the Cross.*

¶ *Turn our selves*

VII. *FOR whosoever does not confess that Jesus Christ is come in the Flesh, he is Antichrist: And whoever does not confess || his Suffering upon the Cross, is from the Devil. And whosoever perverts the Oracles of the Lord to his own Lusts; and says that there shall neither be any Resurrection nor Judgment, he is the first Born of Satan. Wherefore leaving the Vanity of many, and their false Doctrines; let us || hold fast to the Word that was delivered to us from*

from the Beginning; *Watching unto* 1 Pet. iv. 7.  
*Prayer*; and persevering in *Fasting* :  
*Beseeeching* with all *Supplication* the  
*All-seeing God* *not to lead us into* Matt. vi. 13.  
*Temptation* ; as the Lord hath said,  
*The Spirit truly is willing, but the Flesh* Matt. xxvi. 41.  
*is weak.*

VIII. LET us therefore without  
 ceasing keep stedfastly to Him who  
 is our Hope, and the Earnest of our  
 Righteousness, even Jesus Christ;  
*Who his own self bare our Sins in his* 1 Pet. ii. 22, 24.  
*own Body on the Tree: Who did no sin,*  
*neither was guile found in his mouth.*  
 But suffered *all* for us that we might  
 live † through Him. Let us therefore † In: 1 Pet. iii.  
 imitate his Patience: And if we 14, &c.  
 suffer for his Name, let us Glorifie  
 him; for this Example he has given  
 us by Himself, and so have we be-  
 lieved.

IX. WHEREFORE I exhort  
 all of you that ye obey the Word of  
 Righteousness, and exercise all Pa-  
 tience ; which ye have seen set forth  
 before your Eyes, not only in the  
 Blessed Ignatius, and Zozimus, and  
 G 3 Rufus;

|| *Perswaded.*

*Rufus*, but in others that have been among you; and in *Paul* himself, and the rest of the Apostles. Being || confident of this, that all these have not run in vain; but in Faith and Righteousness, and are gone to the place that was due to them from the Lord; with whom also they suffered. For they loved not this present World; but Him who died, and was raised again by God for us.

|| *Associated in Truth.*

*Tobit* xii. 9.

1 *Pet* ii. 12.

*Rom.* ii. 24.

*Titus* ii. 5.

X. STAND therefore in these things, and follow the Example of the LORD; being firm and immutable in the Faith, Lovers of the Brotherhood, Lovers of one another: || Companions together in the Truth, being kind and gentle towards each other, despising none. When it is in your power to do good defer it not, for *Charity delivereth from death*. Be all of you subject one to another, having your Conversation Honest among the Gentiles; That by your good Works, both ye your selves may receive Praise, and the LORD may not be Blasphemed through you. But Woe be to him by whom the Name of the  
the

the LORD is Blasphemed. Therefore teach all Men Sobriety; in which do ye also exercise your selves.

XI. I AM greatly afflicted for *Valens*, who was once a Presbyter among you; that he should so little understand the place that was given to Him *in the Church*. Wherefore I admonish you that ye abstain from Covetousness; and that ye be Chast, and true of Speech. *Keep your selves* 1 Thess. v. 22.  
*from All Evil*. For He that in these things cannot govern Himself, How Eph. v. 5.  
Coloss. iii. 5.  
shall he be able to prescribe them to another? If a Man does not keep himself from Covetousness, He shall be polluted with Idolatry, and be judged as if he were a Gentile. But who *of you* are Ignorant of the Judgment of God? *Do we not know that the* 1 Cor. vi. 2.  
*Saints shall judge the World?* As *Paul* teaches. But I have neither perceived nor heard any thing of this Kind in you, among whom the Blessed *Paul* laboured; and whom he mentions *with so much Honour* in the beginning of his Epistle. For he

Glories of you in All the Churches who then only knew God ; for we did not then know Him. Wherefore, my Brethren, I am exceedingly sorry both for him and for his Wife ; to whom God grant a true Repentance. And be ye also moderate on this occasion ; and look not upon such as Enemies, but call them back as Suffering and Erring Members, that ye may save your whole Body : For by so doing, ye *shall* edifie your own selves.

XII. FOR I trust that ye are well exercised in the Holy Scriptures, and that nothing is hid from you ; But at present this is not granted unto me : As it is written, *Be angry and Sin not ;* And again, *Let not the Sun go down upon your Wrath.* Blessed is he that believeth and remembereth *these things* ; which also I trust you do. Now the God and Father of our LORD Jesus Christ ; and He himself who is our Everlasting High Priest, the Son of God, *even* Jesus Christ, build you up in Faith and in Truth, and in all Meekness

*Psal. iv. 5.*

*Eph. iv. 26.*

ness and Lenity ; in Patience and Long-suffering, and Chastity : And grant unto you that you may have your Lot and Portion among his Saints ; and that we also may be together with you, and all that are under the Heavens, who shall believe in our LORD Jesus Christ, and in his Father *who raised him from the Dead.* *Gal. i. 1.* Pray for all the Saints : Pray *1 Tim. ii. 1, 2.* also for *Kings,* and || *All that are in* || *Powers and Authority ;* and for those who per- *Princes.* secute you, and hate you, and are the Enemies of the Cross : That your Fruit may be manifest in all things ; and that ye may be perfect in || Christ. *|| Him.*

XIII. YE wrote to me, both ye and also *Ignatius*, that if any one went *from hence* into *Syria*, he should bring your Letters with Him ; which also I will *take care of*, as soon as I shall have a convenient opportunity ; either by my self, or him whom I shall send upon your Account. The Epistles of *Ignatius* which He wrote unto Us, together with what others of his have come to our hands, we have

† Our Lord.

have sent to you, according to your order; which are subjoyned to this *Epistle*: By which ye may be greatly profited; For they treat of Faith and Patience, and of all things that pertain to Edification in† the Lord *Jesus*.

XIV. WHAT you know certainly of *Ignatius*, and those that are with him, signifie unto us.

THESE things have I written unto you by *Crescens*, whom by this present *Epistle* I have recommended to you, and do now again commend. For he has had his Conversation without blame among us; And I suppose also with you. Ye will also have regard unto his Sister when she shall come unto you. Be ye safe in the LORD *Jesus Christ*; And in  
|| Favour with all yours. *Amen.*

|| Grace.

T H E

---

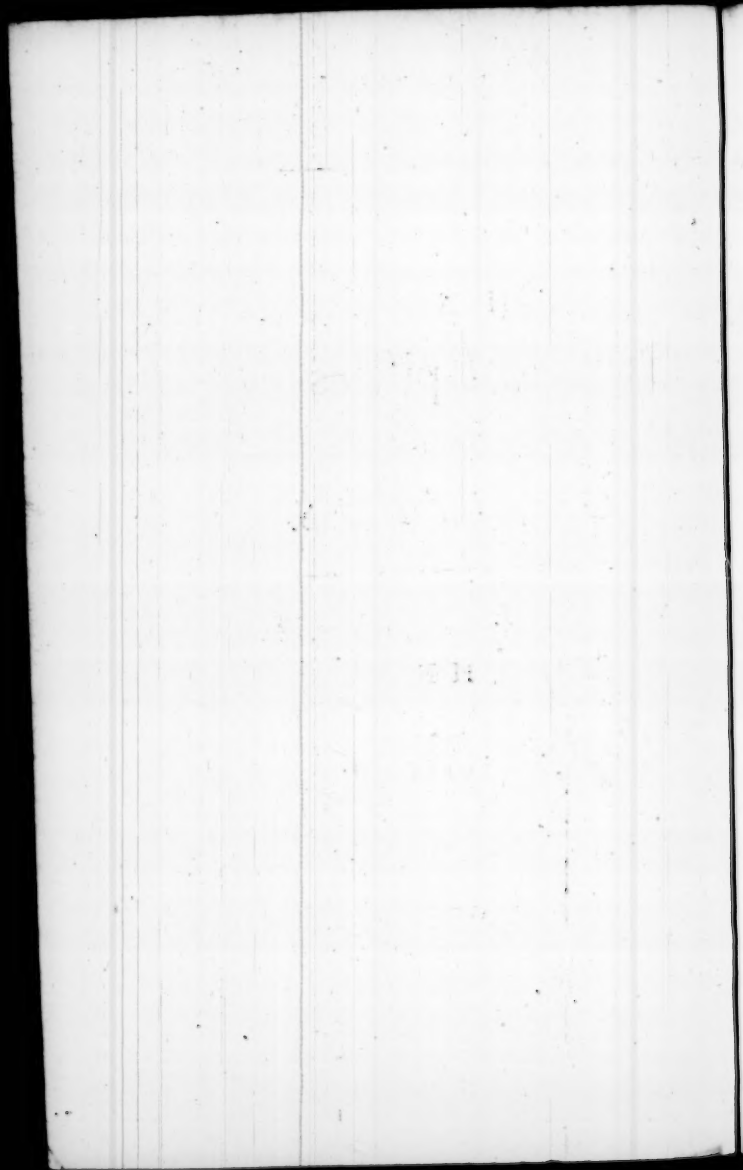
T H E  
Genuine Epistles  
O F  
St. *I G N A T I U S*.

---

I.  
T O T H E  
*Ephesians.*

---





# T H E C O N T E N T S.

*After the Salutation :*

Chap. I. **H**E thanks them for sending Onesimus their Bishop to Him : Whom he greatly Commends; and expresses his Joy to receive from Him so good a Character of them.

II. He mentions the rest of their Members who were sent with Onesimus to Him : And Exhorts them to Unity by a due Subjection to their Bishop and Presbyters.

III. He excuses the Liberty He takes of Admonishing them, and so returns to his Advice to them.

IV. Which is still the same; namely, By a due Subjection to their Bishop, to preserve Unity among themselves.

V. The Benefit of which He particularly sets out to them.

VI. That

## The Contents.

**VI.** *That they ought not to Respect their Bishop the less; because he is not forward in exacting it from them: But should rather Honour him the more; which He also Commends them for doing.*

**VII.** *He warns them against Hereticks; bidding them stick to their Master Jesus Christ: Whose Divine and Humane Nature he declares to Them.*

**VIII. IX.** *He Commends them for their Care to keep themselves from False Teachers; and shews them the Way to God.*

**X.** *He exhorts them to Prayer; and to behave themselves unblameably towards those that are without.*

**XI. XII.** *To be careful of their Salvation; To Pray for Himself; whose own worth he much lessens in Comparison of theirs. Especially,*

**XIII. XIV.** *To be frequent in Publick Devotion: To live in Unity, in Faith, and in Charity. And,*

**XV.** *To shew forth the Truth of their Profession by their Works.*

**XVI. XVII.** *To have a Care that the Gospel of Christ be not Corrupted.*

**XVIII.**

XVIII. *Upon which occasion, He treats particularly of the Three great Mysteries of Christianity, viz. The Virginity of Mary: And the Incarnation and Death of Christ: Which he says were hid from the Devil.*

XIX. *How the Birth of Christ was in a most extraordinary Manner reveal'd to the World.*

XX. XXI. *Of all which he promises to Write more largely in a second Epistle. And then finally Undertakes for their Salvation; if they continued, as he had exhorted them, to pursue it, by Unity among Themselves, and Piety towards God.*

502

T H E  
E P I S T L E  
O F  
St. I G N A T I U S  
T O T H E  
**Ephesians.**

IGNATIUS, *who is also called*  
 THEOPHORUS, *to the*  
*Church which is at Ephesus in*  
*Asia; most deservedly Happy;*  
*being Blessed || through the || In.*  
*Greatness and Fullness \* of* \* See Eph. iii. 19  
*God the Father, and Prede-*  
*stinated before the World began,*  
*that it should be always unto*  
*an Enduring and Unchangeable*  
 H Glory;

|| In.

\* Health, Joy.

Glory; being United and Chosen || through his true Passion, || according to the Will of the Father, and Jesus Christ our God; All \* Happiness, by Jesus Christ, and || his Undeiled Grace.

|| Received. Vid. I.  
Epist. Interp.

\* Vid. Coteler.

in loc. Comp.

Gal. iv. 8.

† Pearson, Vind.

Ign. par. 2.

Cap. 14.

\* Imitators.

|| Martyrdom.

Eph. v. 2.

[See the old

Lat. Ed. of

Bishop Usher.]

\* When.

I HAVE || heard of your Name much Beloved in God; which ye have \* very justly attain'd by a † Habit of Righteousness, according to the Faith and Love which is in Jesus Christ our Saviour: How that being \* Followers of God, and stirring up *your selves* by the Blood of Christ, ye have perfectly accomplished the Work that was Natural to you. For hearing that I ~~came~~ bound from Syria, for the common Name and Hope, trusting through your Prayers to fight with Beasts at Rome; that so by || Suffering I may become indeed the Disciple of Him *who gave himself to God, an Offering and Sacrifice for us*, [ye Hastned to see me.] \* I understood therefore how great a Multitude there

there was among you in the Name of God by *Onesimus*, who \* *if we* \* *La.* consider his Charity is beyond all Expression, but who is according to the Flesh your Bishop: Whom I beseech you, by Jesus Christ, to love, and that you would all *strive* to be like unto Him. And Blessed be God, who has granted unto you, who are so worthy of Him, to || enjoy such an || *Possess.* Excellent Bishop.

IL FOR what concerns my Fellow-Servant *Burrhus*, and your || most || *Blessed in all things.* Blessed Deacon, in things pertaining to God; I intreat you that he may tarry *longer*, both for yours and your Bishops Honour. And *Crecus* also worthy both of God and you, whom I have received as the Pattern of your Love, has in all things refresh'd Me, as the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ shall also refresh Him; together with *Onesimus*, and *Burrhus*, and *Explus*, and *Fronto*, \* in \* *87.* whom I have, as to your Charity, seen all of you. And may I always || have Joy of you, if I shall be worthy of it. It is therefore fitting || *See Philom. 27. Wisd. xxx. 2.*



\* *In all manner of ways.* that \* by all means || you should  
 || *To Glorifie.* Glorifie Jesus Christ who hath Glo-  
 † *In one.* rified you: That by a † Uniform  
 \* 1 Cor. i. 10. Obedience \* *ye may be perfectly joyne'd*  
*together in the same Mind, and in the*  
 || *Concerning the same.* *same things* ||: And that being sub-  
 † *The.* ject to † your Bishop, and his Pres-  
 bytery, ye may be wholly and tho-  
 roughly Sanctified.

\* *Command you.* III. THESE *things* I \* pre-  
 scribe to you, not as if I were some  
 body *Extraordinary*: For tho' I am  
 || *In.* bound || for His Name, I am not yet  
 † *For.* perfect in Christ Jesus. † But now  
 I begin to learn, and I speak to you  
 as Fellow-Disciples *together with Me.*  
 For I ought to have been stirred up  
 by you in Faith, in Admonition, in  
 Patience, in Long-suffering. But for-  
 asmuch as Charity suffers me not to  
 be silent \* towards you, I have first  
 taken upon me to exhort you, that  
 ye would all run together *according*  
 to the Will of God. For Jesus  
 Christ, our inseparable Life, is the  
 || *Will, Counsel,* Mind of the Father; as the Bishops  
*Opinion, &c.* appointed even unto the utmost  
 Bounds

Bounds of the Earth, are the Mind  
of Jesus Christ.

IV. \* WHEREFORE it will \* *Whence.*  
become you to Run together according to the Will of *your* Bishop, as also ye do. For your || Famous || *Worthy to be named.*  
Presbytery, worthy of God, is fitted as exactly to its Bishop, as the Strings are to their Harp. Therefore in your Concord, and agreeing Charity, Jesus Christ is Sung; and every single Person among you makes up the Chorus: That so being all Consonant in \* Love, and taking \* *Concord.*  
up the Song of God, ye may with one Voice, and in a perfect Unity sing to the Father by Jesus Christ; to the end that by *this means* he may both hear you, and perceive by your Works, that ye are *indeed* the Members of his Son. Wherefore it is profitable for you to live in an Unblameable Unity, that so ye may always || have a Fellowship with || *Partake of.*  
God.

V. FOR if I in this little time  
have had such a Familiarity with  
H 3 your

your Bishop, I mean not a Carnal, but Spiritual *Acquaintance with Him*; How much more must I think you Happy who are so joyn'd to Him, as the Church is to Jesus Christ, and Jesus Christ to the Father; that so all things may agree in *the same* Unity? Let no Man deceive Himself; if a Man be not within the ALTAR, He is Deprived of the BREAD of God. For if the Prayer of One or Two be of such force, *as*

*Mat. xviii. 19. we are told*; How much more *Powerful* shall that of the Bishop and the whole Church be? He therefore that does not come together into the same place *with it*, is \* proud, and has already || condemned himself. For it is written, *God resisteth the Proud*. Let us take heed therefore, that we do not set our selves against the Bishop, that we may be \* the Servants of God.

\* Is already proud and has, &c.

|| Judged, or separated.

*James iv. 6.*

*1 Pet. v. 5.*

\* Subject to God.

† And the.

VI. \* THE more any one sees his Bishop silent, the more let him Reverence him. For whomsoever the Master of the House sends unto his own Household, we ought in like

like manner to receive him, as *we would do* Him that sent Him. It is therefore evident that we ought to look upon the Bishop, even as we would do upon the Lord || *Jesus*. And || *Himself*. indeed *Onesimus* himself does greatly commend your good Order in God : That you all live according to the Truth, and that no Heresie dwells among you. For neither do ye hearken to any one \* so much, as to \* *More than to*. Jesus Christ speaking to you in Truth.

VII. FOR some there are who \* carry about the name of *Christ* \* *Accustom themselves to* || in Deceitfulness, but do many *carry*. things unworthy of God ; whom ye || *In wicked deceit*. must † flee, as ye would do *so many* † *Avoid*. wild Beasts. For they are ravening Wolves, who \* devour secretly : \* *Bite*. Against whom ye must guard yourselves, as Men hardly to be cured. There is one Physician, both Fleshly and Spiritual ; Made and not Made ; God incarnate ; True Life in Death ; Both of *Mary* and of God : First Passible, then Impassible [\* even Jesus \* *See Bishop Usher. Vossius in Annor. in loc. p. 273.* Christ our Lord.]

VIII. WHEREFORE let no Man deceive you ; as indeed neither are ye deceived, being wholly *the Servants* of God. For inasmuch as there is no Contention nor Strife among you, \* to trouble you, † ye must needs live according to *Gods Will*.  
 || My Soul be for yours ; and I my self the Expiatory Offering for your Church of *Ephesus*, so Famous † throughout the World. They that are of the Flesh cannot do the Works of the Spirit ; neither they that are of the Spirit the Works of the Flesh.  
 || As he that has Faith, cannot be an Infidel ; nor he that is an Infidel have Faith. But even those things which ye do according to the Flesh are Spiritual ; forasmuch as ye do all things in Jesus Christ.

\* Which can.

† Without doubt ye live.

|| Vid. Voss.

Annot. in loc.

Pearson. Vind.

Ign. par. 2.

p. 207, 208.

† To Ages.

|| As neither is Faith the things of Infidelity, nor Infidelity the things of Faith.

\* Known.

|| Passed thither.

† Upon.

IX. NEVERTHELESS I have \* heard of some who have || gone to you, having perverse Doctrine : Whom ye did not suffer to sow † among you ; but stopp'd your Ears, that ye might not receive those things that were sown by Them.  
 As

As \* being the Stones of the Temple \* Comp. Eph. ii. 20, 21, 22.  
 of the Father, prepared for † his † 1 Pet. ii. 5.  
 Building; and drawn up on High † The Building of God the Father.  
 by the Cross of Christ, \* as by an \* By the Engine of the Cross, &c.  
 Engine; using the Holy Ghost as  
 the Rope *by which to ascend*: Your  
 Faith being your Support, and your  
 Charity the way that leads unto God.  
 Ye are therefore, with all your Com-  
 panions in the same Journey, full of Pearson. ib. Part 2. cap. 12.  
 God, His *Spiritual* Temples, full of  
 Christ, full of Holiness: Adorn'd in  
 all things with the Commands of  
 Christ; Through whom also I Tri-  
 umph, in that I have been thought  
 worthy by \* this present Epistle to \* These things I write.  
 converse, and rejoyce together with  
 you, that having regard to the other  
 Life, ye love nothing but God  
 only.

X. YE do also Pray without  
 ceasing for all Men: For there is  
 Hope of Repentance in them, that  
 they may attain unto God. Let them  
 therefore at least be instructed by  
 your Works, *if they will be no other*  
*way.* Be ye Mild at their Anger;  
 Humble at their Boasting: To their  
 Blas-

\* *Be ye firm.*

¶ *Was has been  
mur., &c.*

† *In Jesus Christ  
both bodily and  
spiritually.*

1 *Cor. vii. 34.*

\* *Remain: or,  
For it remains.*

¶ *Is present.*

† *One of the  
two, Only that  
we may be  
found, &c.*

\* *Without him.*

† *Become you.*

¶ *ix.*

Blasphemies, *return* your Payers ;  
To their Error, your \* firmness in  
the Faith : When they are Cruel,  
be ye Gentle ; not endeavouring to  
imitate *their* ways. Let us be their  
Brethren in all Kindness and Mode-  
ration, but let us be Followers of  
the LORD : ¶ If any one be more  
than other either injured, or de-  
frauded, or despised ; That so no  
Herb of the Devil may be found in  
you, but ye may remain in all Holi-  
ness and Sobriety † both of Body  
and Spirit, in Christ Jesus.

XI. THE Last times \* are come  
upon us : Let us *therefore* be very  
Reverent, and fear the Long-suffer-  
ing of God, that it be not to us unto  
Condemnation. For let Us either  
fear the Wrath that is to come, or  
let us love the Grace ¶ that we at  
present enjoy : That † by the one or  
other of these we may be found  
in Christ Jesus, unto true Life.  
\* Besides him, let nothing † be wor-  
thy of you ; ¶ for whom also I bear  
about *these* Bonds, those Spiritual  
Jewels, in which I would to God,  
that

that through your Prayers, I might arise: Of which I intreat you to make me always partaker, that I may be found in the Lot of the Christians of *Ephesus*, who have always \* agreed with the Apostles, \* *Assented to.* † through the Power of Jesus † *in.* Christ.

XII. I KNOW both who I am, and to whom I write: I, a Person condemn'd; Ye, such as have obtain'd Mercy: I, expos'd to danger; Ye, confirm'd *against Danger*. Ye are the Passage of those that are kill'd for God; The Companions of *Paul* in the Mysteries of the Gospel; the Holy, the Martyr, the deservedly most Happy *Paul*; at whose Feet may I be found, when I shall have attain'd unto God; who \* through- \* *Vid. Coteler.* out all his Epistle makes mention of *in loc. Pearl.* you in Christ Jesus. *Vind. Ign. Par. 2*  
*cap. 10.*

XIII. LET it be your care therefore to come oftner together, to the Praise and Glory of God. For when ye meet often together in the same place, the Powers of the Devil are destroy'd,



\* *Destruction.* destroy'd, and his \* Mischief is dissolved by the || Unity of your Faith.  
 || *Concord.* And indeed, nothing is better than  
 † *Of things in Heaven, and of things on Earth.* Peace; by which all War both † Spiritual and Earthly, is abolish'd.

XIV. OF All which nothing is hid from you, if ye have perfect Faith and Charity in Christ Jesus, which are the Beginning and End of Life. For the Beginning is Faith; the End Charity. And these two  
 \* *Being in Unity.* \* joyned together, are of God: But all other things are the Followers of Piety. No Man professing a true Faith, sinneth; Neither does he who has Charity, hate any. *The Tree is made manifest by its Fruit;* So they who profess themselves to be Christians, \* are known by what they do. For *Christianity* is not the Work of an outward Profession; but *shews it self* in the Power of Faith, if a Man be found Faithful unto the End.

XV. IT is better for a Man to  
 || *Speaking, not to be.* hold his Peace, and be; than || to say, *He is a Christian*, and not to be.  
 It

It is good to teach; \* if what he says, <sup>\* If he who says, does.</sup> He does *likewise*. There is therefore one Master who spake, and it was done; And even those things which he did without speaking, are worthy of the Father. He that possesses the Word of Jesus, is truly able to hear his very Silence, that he may be Perfect; || and both do according to <sup>|| That he may.</sup> what he speaks, and be known by those things of which he is silent. There is nothing hid from God, but even our Secrets are nigh unto Him. Let us therefore do all things, as becomes those who have † God † <sup>Him.</sup> dwelling in them; that we may be his Temples and He may be our God: As also He is, and will manifest himself before our Faces by those things † *for which* we justly love † <sup>Our of.</sup> Him.

XVI. BE not deceived, Brethren: Those that \* corrupt and defile them- <sup>\* The Corrupters of Houses.</sup> selves with others, shall not inherit the Kingdom of God. If therefore they who do this according to the Flesh, || have suffered Death; How || <sup>1 Cor. vi 9, 10.</sup> 1 Cor. x. 2 much more shall He *dye*, who by his wicked

wicked Doctrine corrupts the Faith of God, for which Christ was Crucified? \* He that is thus defiled, shall depart into unquenchable Fire, and so also shall He that || hearkens to him.

\* Such a one being become defiled.

|| Hears him.

XVII. FOR this cause did the LORD \* suffer the Oyntment to be poured on his Head; that he might breath *the Breath of Immortality* unto his Church. Be not ye therefore anointed with the evil Savour of the Doctrine of the Prince of this World: Let him not take you Captive from the Life that is set before you. And why are we not all Wise; seeing we have received the Knowledge of God, which is Jesus Christ? Why || do we suffer our selves foolishly to Perish; † not considering the Gift which the LORD has truly sent to Us?

\* Receive Oyntment.

Psal. xlv. 8.

CXXXii. 2.

|| Are we foolishly destroy'd?

† Not knowing.

XVIII. MY Soul be the Surety of all such as trust in the Cross; which is *indeed* a Scandal to the Unbelievers, but to us is Salvation and Life Eternal. *Where is the Wise Man? Where is the*

1 Cor. i. 18, 23, 24.

1 Cor. i. 20.

*the Disputer* ? Where is the Boasting of those who are called Wise ? For our God Jesus Christ, was according to the Dispensation of God, \* conceived in the Womb of *Mary*, \* *Carried* of the Seed of *David*, by the Holy Ghost : || Was born, and baptized, || *Who was* that through his Passion, he might purifie Water, *to the washing away of Sin.*

XIX. NOW the Virginitie of *Mary*, and her Delivery, was kept in secret from the Prince of this World ; as was also the Death of our Lord : Three of the \* most notable Myste- \* *Mysteries of* ries of *the Gospel*, yet done in || secret *Life.* by God. How then was *our Saviour* || *Silence, or Quietness. See Rom. xvi. 25.* manifested to the World ? A Star shone in Heaven beyond all the other Stars, and its Light was Inexpressible, and its Novelty struck Terror into *Mens Minds*. All the rest of the Stars, together with the Sun and Moon, were the Chorus to this Star : But that sent out its Light exceedingly above them All. And Men \* began \* *There was a Disorder.* to be troubled to think whence this || new Star *came* so unlike to † all the || *Novelty.* others. † *Them.*

Others. Hence all *the Power of Magic* became dissolved; and every  
 \* *Disappeared.* Bond of Wickedness was \* destroy'd;  
*Mens Ignorance* was taken away;  
 and the old Kingdom abolished; God  
 || *Being made manifest.* *himself* || appearing in the Form of a  
 Man, for the Renewal of Eternal  
 † *He received Authority, that which was perfect from God.* Life. But the † Authority which he  
 received was what God had allotted  
 to Him. From thenceforth things  
 were disturbed; forasmuch as he de-  
 sign'd to abolish Death.

XX. B U T if Jesus Christ shall  
 give me Grace through your Prayers,  
 and it be his Will, I purpose in a  
 second Epistle which I will suddenly  
 write unto you to manifest to you  
*more fully* the Dispensation of which  
 I have now begun to speak; unto  
 the new Man, which is Jesus Christ;  
 Both in his Faith, and Charity, in  
 his Suffering and in his Resurrection:  
 \* *Reveal.* Especially if the Lord shall \* make  
*known* unto Me; that ye all by Name  
 come together in common in one  
 Faith, and in one Jesus Christ, who  
 was of the Race of *David* according  
 to the Flesh; the Son of Man, and Son  
 of

of God ; \* Obeying your Bishop and the Presbytery with an intire || Affe-  
ction ; breaking one and the same Bread, which is the Medicine of Immortality ; our Antidote that we should not die, but live for ever in Christ Jesus.

\* that ye may  
Obey.  
|| Mind.

XXI. MY Soul be for Yours, and Theirs whom ye have sent, to the Glory of God ; even unto *Smyrna*, from whence also I write to you ; Giving Thanks unto the Lord, and loving *Polycarp* even as I do you. Remember me, as Jesus Christ does remember you. Pray for the Church which is in *Syria*, from whence I am carried Bound to *Rome*, being the least of all the Faithful which are there, as I have been thought worthy to be found to the Glory of God. Fare ye well in God the Father, and in Jesus Christ, our common Hope:  
*Amen.*

To the EPHESIANS.

I

THE

1871  
The first of the year  
was a very dry one  
and the crops were  
very poor. The  
winter was also  
very dry and the  
crops were very  
poor.

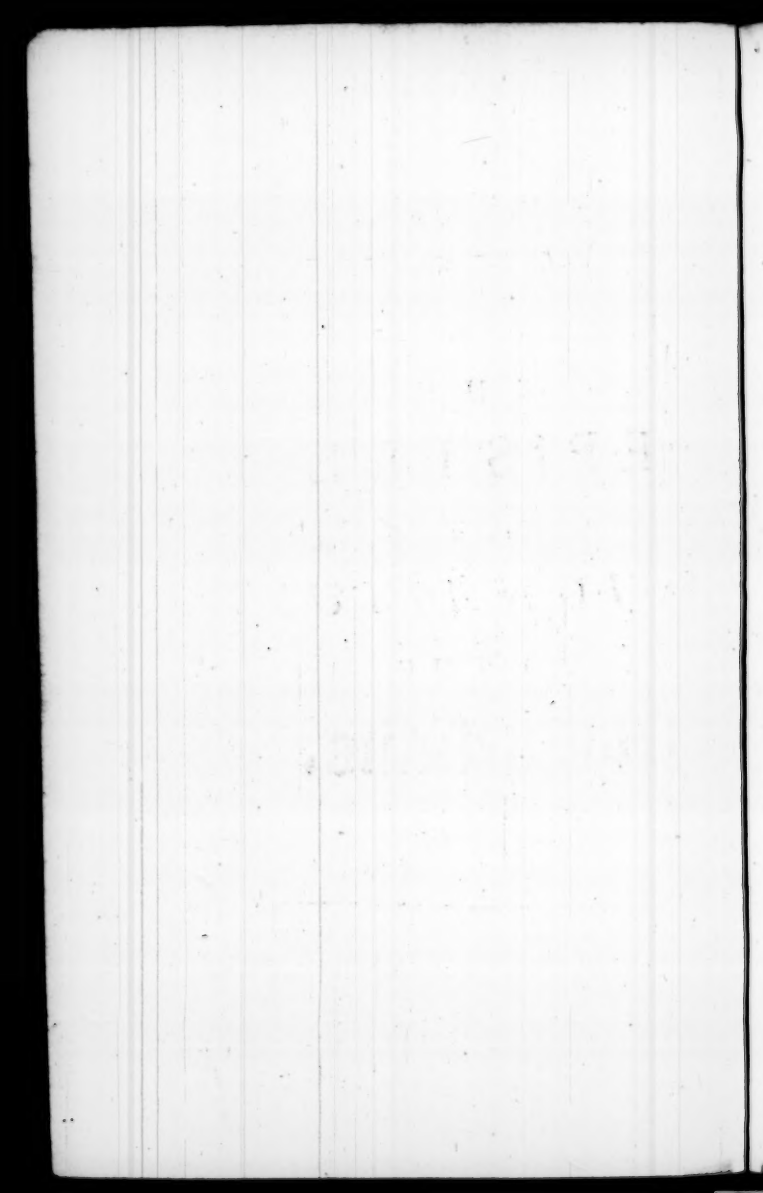
The second of the year  
was a very wet one  
and the crops were  
very good. The  
winter was also  
very wet and the  
crops were very  
good. The third of  
the year was a very  
dry one and the  
crops were very  
poor. The fourth of  
the year was a very  
wet one and the  
crops were very  
good. The fifth of  
the year was a very  
dry one and the  
crops were very  
poor. The sixth of  
the year was a very  
wet one and the  
crops were very  
good. The seventh of  
the year was a very  
dry one and the  
crops were very  
poor. The eighth of  
the year was a very  
wet one and the  
crops were very  
good. The ninth of  
the year was a very  
dry one and the  
crops were very  
poor. The tenth of  
the year was a very  
wet one and the  
crops were very  
good.

---

THE  
EPISTLE  
OF  
St. *IGNATIUS*  
TO THE  
*Magnesians.*

---





---



---

# T H E C O N T E N T S.

*After the Salutation : He declares,*

Chap. I. **T**HE Occasion of his  
Writing to Them and  
to the other Churches that were  
about them: And then mentions,

II. The Arrival of Damas their Bi-  
shop, and of the rest whom They had  
sent unto Him.

III. He exhorts them to all due Reve-  
rence and Subjection to their Bi-  
shop; notwithstanding \* He was but  
a Young Man, and had not long  
been in that Great Office among  
them. \* Vid. Annot.  
Cotelier. in loc.

IV. Which also they must do, if they  
will be Christians indeed.

V. That we must all 'ere long Die ;  
and then be for ever either Happy or  
Miserable.

- VI. *He exhorts them therefore to live Orderly ; and to maintain a Unity among each other.*
- VII. *And that especially by a due Subjection to their Bishop and Presbyters.*
- VIII. IX. X. *He cautions them against false Opinions : Especially those of \* Ebion and the Judaizing Christians.*
- XI. *He Apologizes for this Advice ; which he gave not to Reprove, but to Fore-warn Them.*
- XII. *Whose Faith and Piety he here greatly commends : And*
- XIII. *Exhorts them to go on, and increase in Both.*
- XIV. *He desires their Prayers both for Himself and his Church at Antioch.*
- XV. *And then concludes all with the Salutations of those who were present with Him at the Writing of this Epistle.*

\* Pearson, Vind.  
Ign. par. 2. cap. 4

T H E

T H E  
E P I S T L E  
O F  
St. I G N A T I U S  
T O T H E  
**Magnesians.**

IGNATIUS *who is also called*  
THEOPHORUS; *to the*  
*Blessed [\*Church] || by the Grace* \* Vid. Interpr.  
*of God the Father in Jesus Christ* Lat. Epist. In-  
*our Saviour: In whom I salute* terpol. In.  
*the Church which is at MAG-*  
*NESIA near the MÆAN-*  
*DER; and wish it all Joy, in*  
*God the Father, and in Jesus*  
*Christ.*

I. **W**HEN I heard of your well-order'd Love and Charity \* in God, being full of Joy, I determin'd *forthwith* to speak unto you in the Faith of Jesus Christ. For having || been thought worthy to obtain a most Excellent Name; \* in the Bonds which I carry about, I † salute the Churches; wishing in them a Union both of the Body and Spirit of Jesus Christ, our Eternal Life: *As also* of Faith and Charity, to which nothing is preferred; But especially of Jesus and the Father, in whom \* if we undergo and escape all the Injuries of the Prince of this present World, we shall enjoy God.

\* According to.

|| Been vouchsafed a Name carrying a great deal of Divinity in it.

\* See Bishop Pearson. Vind. Ign. par. 2. cap. 12. p. 146.

† Sing, Commend.

\* Undergoing, and escaping.

II. SEEING then I have been judged worthy to see you, by DAMAS your || most Excellent Bishop; and by your very worthy Presbyters BAS-SUS and APOLLONIUS, and by my Fellow Servant SOTIO your Deacon; in whom \* I rejoyce, forasmuch as He is subject unto *his* Bishop as to the Grace of God, and to the Presbytery

|| Worthy of God.

\* Whom may I enjoy.

Presbytery as to the Law of Jesus

Christ; † *I determined to Write unto you.* † Apud Ver. Lat. Interpr. *Glorificatio Deum Patrem D. nostri Jesu Christi.*

III. WHEREFORE it will become you also not \* to take advantage of the Youth of your Bishop, but to yield all Reverence to Him according to the Power of God the Father: As also I perceive that your Holy Presbyters do; not considering his || Age, which indeed to appearance is Young; but as becomes those who are Prudent in God, submitting to Him, or rather not to Him, but to the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ the Bishop of us All.

It will therefore † behove you, † *It is becoming.* \* with all Sincerity to obey your Bishop, in Honour of Him, † whose pleasure it is *that ye should do so.* † *Without any Hypocrisie.* Because he that *does not do so,* † *Who willet it.* deceives not the Bishop whom he sees, but \* affronts him that is Invisible. \* *Deludes.*

For whatsoever of this kind *is done,* it reflects not upon || Man, but upon God who knows the Secrets of our Hearts.

† *It is becoming.* \* *Without any Hypocrisie.* † *Who willet it.*

† *Who willet it.* \* *Deludes.*

For whatsoever of this kind *is done,* it reflects not upon || Man, but upon God who knows the Secrets of our Hearts.

† *It is becoming.* \* *Without any Hypocrisie.* † *Who willet it.*

#### IV. IT

IV. IT is therefore fitting, that we should not only be called Christians, but be so. As some call *indeed their Government*, Bishop; but yet do all things without Him. But I can never think that such as these have a good Conscience, seeing they are not gather'd together \* thoroughly according to Gods Commandment.

\* *Firmly.*

V. SEEING then *all* things have an End, there are these two || indifferently set before Us, Death and Life: And every one shall depart unto his proper place: For as there are two sorts of Coins, the one of God, the other of the World, and each of these has its proper

|| *Together.*

† *Character set.*

† Inscription engraven upon it; So also is it Here: The Unbelievers are of this World, but the Faithful through Charity have the Character of God the Father by Jesus Christ: By whom if we are not readily disposed to Die unto his Passion, His Life is not in Us.

VI. FOR-

VI. FORASMUCH therefore as I have in the Persons before mentioned, seen \* all of you in Faith and <sup>\* Your whole Multitude.</sup> Charity; I exhort you that ye study to do all things in a || Divine Con- <sup>|| The Concord of God.</sup> cord: Your Bishop presiding in the place of God; your Presbyters in the place of the Council of the Apostles; And your Deacons most \* dear to Me, being intrusted with <sup>\* Sweet.</sup> the Ministry of Jesus Christ, who was with the Father before all Ages, and appeared in the || End <sup>to us.</sup> || <sup>|| Was made manifest.</sup> Wherefore taking up the same † Holy <sup>Hebr. ix. 26.</sup> Course, see that ye all Reverence one <sup>† Habit of God.</sup> another: And let no one look upon his Neighbour after the Flesh; but do ye all mutually love each other in Jesus Christ. Let there be nothing that may be able to make a Division among you; But be ye united to your Bishop and those who Preside over you, to be your Pattern and Direction *in the way* to Immortality.

VII. AS therefore the LORD did <sup>John x. 30. xiv. 11, 12. xvii. 21,</sup> nothing without the Father, being <sup>22.</sup> united



united to Him, neither by Himself nor *yet* by his Apostles; So neither do ye do any thing without your Bishop and Presbyters: Neither endeavour to let any thing appear rational to your selves apart; but being come together into the same place, have one *Common* Prayer; One Supplication; One Mind; One Hope; in Charity and in Joy undefiled. There is One Lord Jesus Christ, than whom nothing is Better. Wherefore \* come ye all together as unto one Temple of God; as to one Altar, as to one Jesus Christ, who proceeded from one Father; and exists in One, and is return'd to One.

*Eph. iv. 3, 4, 5, 6.*

\* *Run.*

*John xvi. 28.*

VIII. BE not Deceived with \* Strange Doctrines; nor with Old Fables which are unprofitable: For if we still continue to live according to the Jewish Law, we do confess *our selves* not to have received Grace. For even the Most || Holy Prophets lived according to Christ Jesus. *And* for this cause were they persecuted, being inspired by his Grace, \* to convince the Unbelievers and Disobedient

\* *Heterodox.*

|| *Most Divine.*

\* *Fully to satisfy*

obedient that there is one God who has manifested Himself by Jesus Christ his Son; who is his Eternal Word, not coming forth from Silence, who in all things pleased Him that sent Him. *John 1. 1.*

IX. WHEREFORE if they who were conversant in *those* antient Things, are *nevertheless* come to the Newness of Hope; No longer observing Sabbaths, but living according to the \* Commands of the LORD, \* *Life.* in which also our Life is sprung up by Him, and through his Death, whom *yet* some deny: By which Mystery we have \* been brought to \* *Received.* Believe, and therefore wait that we may be found the Disciples of Jesus Christ, our only Master: How shall we be able to live \* Different from \* *Without.* Him; whose Disciples the very Prophets themselves being, did by the Spirit expect Him as their Master. And therefore He whom they justly waited for, being come, raised them up from the Dead.

X. LET

X. LET us not then be Inferrible of his Goodness; for should he  
 \* have dealt with us according to  
 our Works, we had not now had a  
 Being. Wherefore being become his  
 Disciples, let us learn to live ac-  
 cording to the *Rules* of Christianity:  
 For whosoever is called by any other  
 name || besides this, He is not of  
 God. Lay aside therefore the Old,  
 and Sower, and Evil Leaven, and be  
 ye changed into the New Leaven,  
 which is Jesus Christ. Be ye salted  
 in Him, lest any one among you  
 should be Corrupted; for by your  
 smell ye shall be \* Judged. It is  
 Absurd to call *your selves by the Name*  
 of Jesus Christ, and to Judaize. For  
 the Christian Religion did not \* em-  
 brace the Jewish, but the Jewish the  
 Christian; that so every Tongue  
 that Believed might be gathered to-  
 gether unto God.

\* Vid. Annot.  
Voss. in loc.

|| More than.

\* *Convinced,*  
*Overthrown.*

\* Believe.

XI. THESE things, my Be-  
 loved, *I write unto you*; not that I  
 know of any among you that \* lye  
 under this Error: But as || one of  
 the

\* Have your  
selves so.  
|| Lesser than you.

the least among you, I am desirous to forewarn you that ye fall not into the \* Snares of Vain Doctrine: But \* *Hooks.* that ye be fully instructed in the Birth, and Suffering, and Resurrection of Jesus Christ, our Hope; which was done in the Time of the Government of *Pontius Pilate*, and that most truly and † certainly; and † *Firmly.* from which God forbid that any among you should be turn'd aside.

XII. MAY I *therefore* have Joy of you in all things, if I shall be worthy of it. For though I am Bound, yet am I not worthy to be compared to one of you that are at Liberty. I know that ye are not puffed up; for ye have Jesus Christ \* in your Hearts. And especially \* *In your selves.* when I commend you, I know that ye are Ashamed, as it is written, *The Just Man condemneth himself.*

*Prov. xviii. 17.  
Sept.*

XIII. STUDY therefore to be confirm'd in the Doctrine of our LORD and of *his* Apostles; that so whatsoever ye do, ye may prosper both in Body and Spirit; in Faith  
and

and Charity ; in the Son, and in the Father, and in the *Holy Spirit* ; in the Beginning, and in the End : Together with your most worthy Bishop, and the \* well-wrought Spiritual Crown of your Presbytery ; and your Deacons *which are* according to God. Be subject to your Bishop, and to one another, as Jesus Christ to the Father according to the Flesh ; and the Apostles both to Christ, and to the Father, and to the *Holy Ghost* ; that so ye may \* be united both in Body and Spirit.

\* *Worthily complicated.*

\* *There may be a Union both Fleshly and Spiritual.*  
Eph. iii. 4.

† *Find, Enjoy.*

\* *Whence.*

\* *Bedew'd.*  
Vid. Epist. Interp. in loc.

XIV. KNOWING you to be full of God, I have the more briefly exhorted you : Be mindful of me in your Prayers, that I may † attain unto God. And *forget not* the Church that is in *Syria*, from \* which I am not worthy to be called. For I stand in need of your Joynt-Prayers in God, and of your Charity, that the Church which is in *Syria* may be thought worthy to be \* nourish'd by your Church.

XV. THE

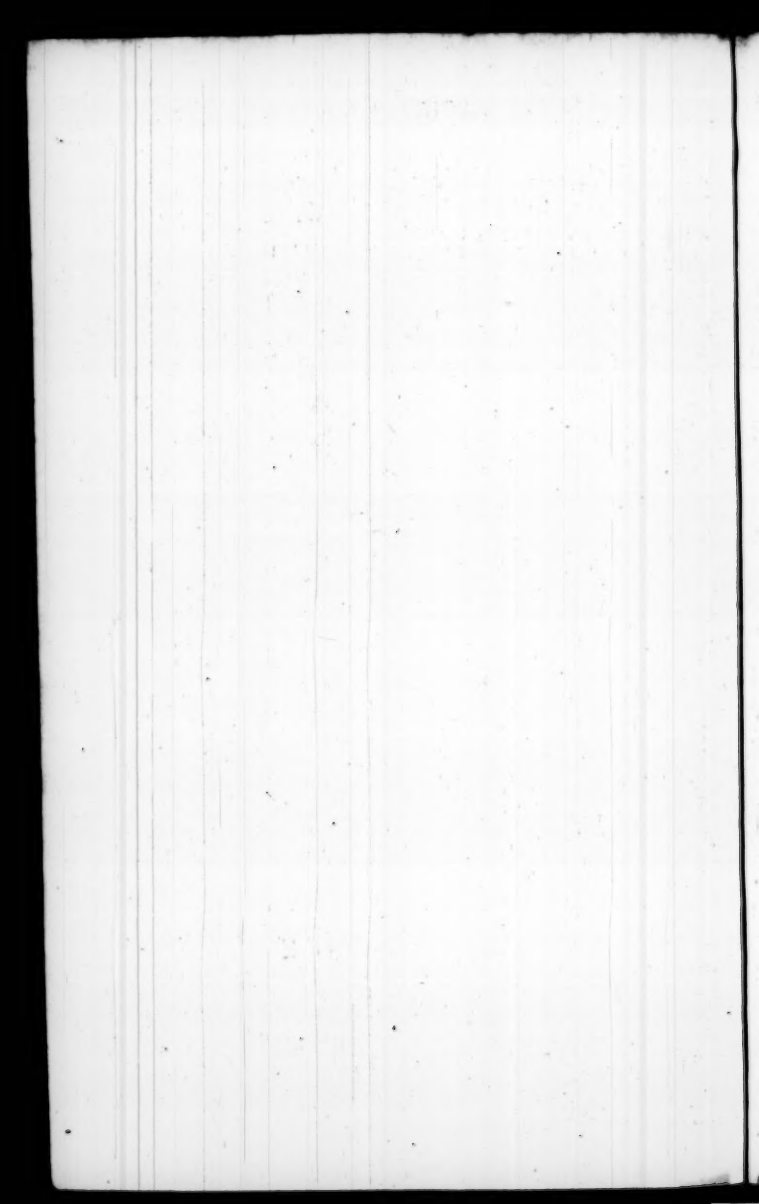
XV. THE *Ephesians* from *Smyrna* salute you, from which place I write unto you ; (Being present *here* to the Glory of God, in like manner as you are,) who have in all things refresh'd me ; together with *Polycarp* the Bishop of the *Smyrneans*. The rest of the Churches , in the Honour of Jesus Christ, salute you. \* Farewel, \* *Εἰπάμεν.* and be ye strengthened in the Concord of God ; † enjoying his Inseparable † *Ποιέμεν.* Spirit, which is Jesus Christ.

To the MAGNESIANS.

---

K

THE

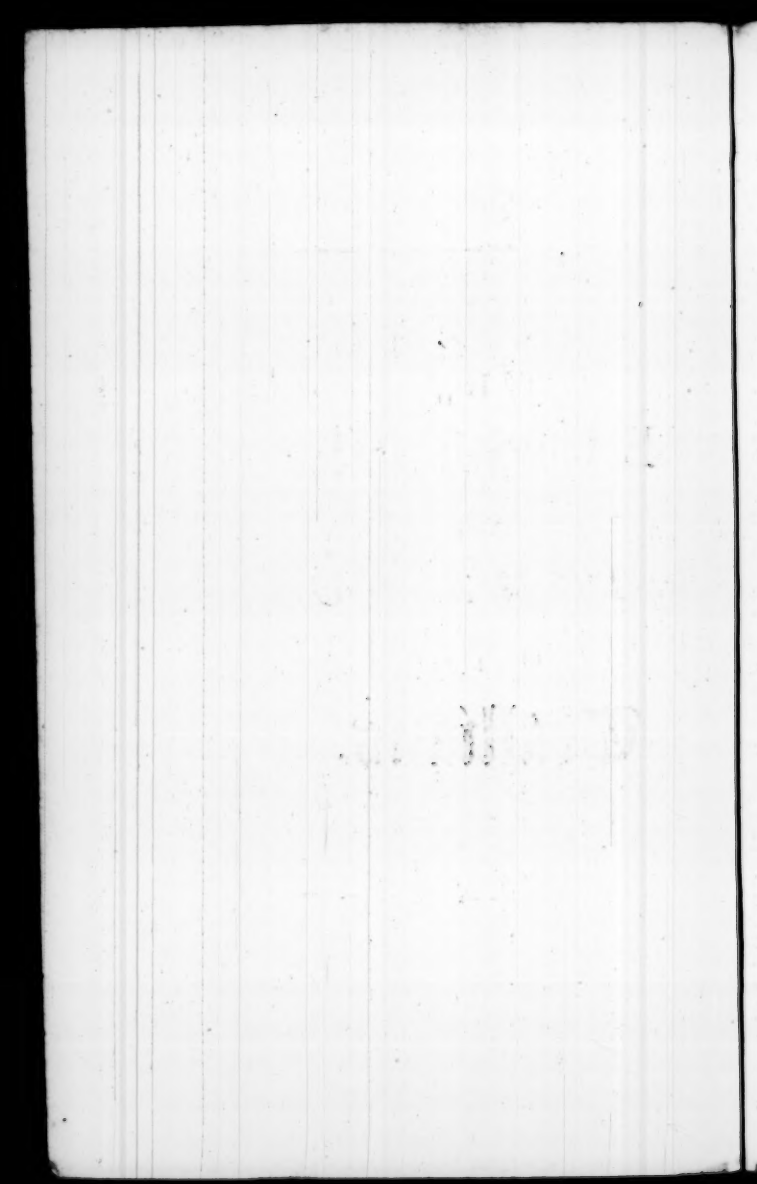


---

THE  
EPISTLE  
OF  
St. *IGNATIUS*  
TO THE  
**Trallians.**

---





---



---

# T H E C O N T E N T S.

## *The Salutation.*

Chap. I. **H**E acknowledges the Com-  
ing of their Bishop, and  
his receipt of their Charity by Him.

II. He commends them for their Orderly  
Subjection to their Bishop, Priests,  
and Deacons; and exhorts them to  
continue in it.

III. He inforces the same Exhortation,  
Commends their Bishop, and excuses  
his not writing more fully to them of  
this Matter.

IV. Which he does not, least he should  
seem to take too much upon Him;  
And be too much exalted in his own  
Conceit, which would be very Dan-  
gerous to Him: Who is afraid even  
of his Over-great Desire to Suffer,  
least it should be prejudicial to  
Him.

## The Contents.

- V. *Another Reason why he did not write more largely to them is, that at present they are not able to bear it.*
- VI. *He warns them against Hereticks, who poison the sound Word of Christ: And*
- VII. *Exhorts them by Humility of Mind, and Unity with the Church, to guard Themselves against Them.*
- VIII. *And this he does, not that he knows of any present need they had of this Advice; but to prevent any Mischief from falling upon them.*
- IX. *To which End, he briefly sets before them the true Doctrine concerning Christ.*
- X. *And particularly exposes the Error of some, who taught that he seemed only to Die, but did not really Suffer.*
- XI. *From these he would have Them flee.*
- XII. *He returns again to his Exhortation of them to Unity: And desires their Prayers, of which he was much in need.*

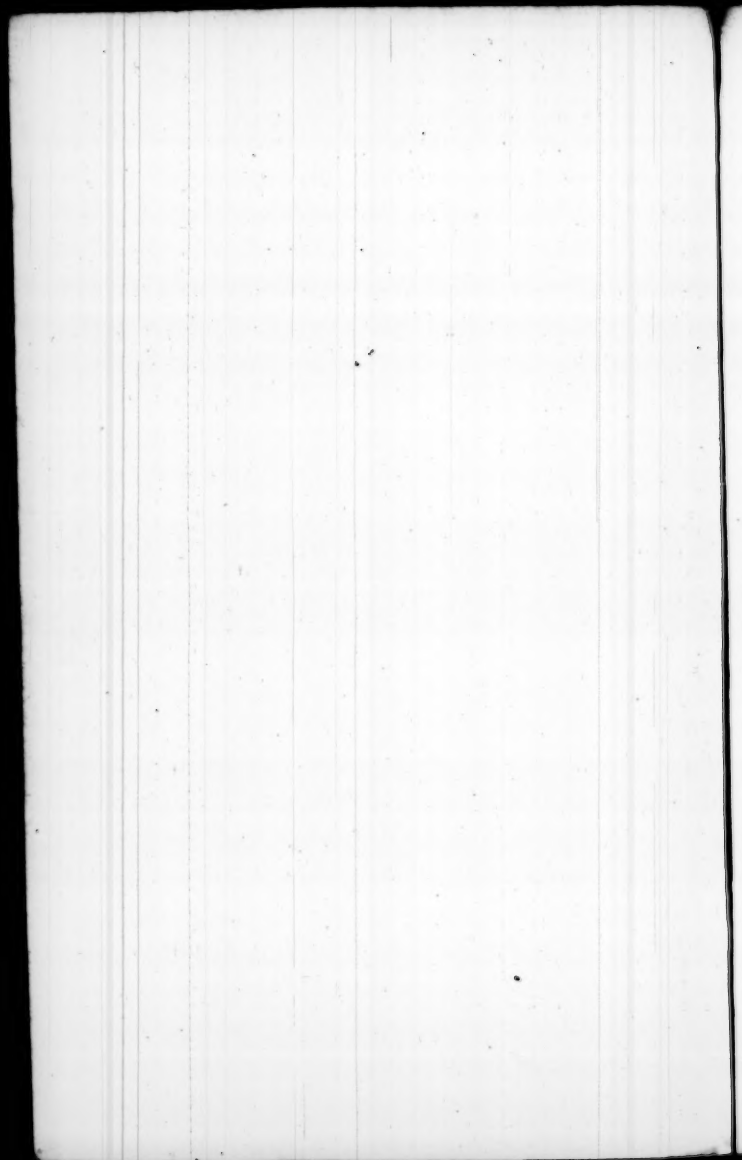
XIII. *Which*

XIII. *Which also he begs for his Church at Antioch: And having given them the Salutations of Those who were with Him, and once more exhorted them to due Submission to their Bishop, &c. He Concludes.*

---

K 4

T H E



T H E  
E P I S T L E  
O F  
St. I G N A T I U S  
T O T H E  
**Trallians.**

IGNATIUS, *who is also called*  
 THEOPHORUS, *to the*  
*Beloved* || of God the Father of || To: 12.  
 JESUS CHRIST, *the Holy*  
*Church which is at* TRALLES  
*in Asia; Elect, and Worthy*  
*of God; Having Peace\* through\* in*  
*the Flesh, and Bloud, and Pas-*  
*sion of Jesus Christ our Hope;*  
*in the Resurrection which is*  
*by*

¶ Unto.

\* Vid. Interpr.  
Lat. Epist. In-  
terpolat.

¶ by him : Which also I salute  
in the Fullness of the \* Aposto-  
lical Character ; Wishing all Joy  
and Happiness unto it.

† Known.

\* Inseparable  
Mind.

† Which you  
have not accor-  
ding to use, but  
according to  
Possession.

¶ Who am Bound.

\* Multitude.

† Your Benevo-  
lence.\* According to  
God.¶ Vid. Vossium  
in loc. I seem'd.

† Imitators.

\* When.

I. I HAVE † heard of your  
Blameless and \* Constant  
Disposition through Patience,  
which † not only appears in your  
Outward Conversation, but is habi-  
tually rooted and grounded in you :  
In like manner as *Polybius* your Bi-  
shop has declared unto me ; Who  
came to me to *Smyrna*, by the Will  
of God and Jesus Christ, and so re-  
joyced together with me ¶ in my  
Bonds for Jesus Christ, that in effect  
I saw your whole \* Church in Him.  
Having therefore received the † Te-  
stimony of your Good Will towards  
me \* for Gods sake, by Him ; ¶ I re-  
joyced to find you, as also I knew  
that ye were, the † Followers of  
God.

II. FOR \* whereas ye are sub-  
ject to your Bishop as to Jesus Christ,  
ye appear to me to live not after the  
manner

manner of Men, but according to Jesus Christ, who died for us, that so believing in his Death, we might \* escape Death. It is therefore ne- \* *Flee from.*  
cessary, that as ye do, so without your Bishop, you should do nothing: Also be ye subject to your Presbyters, as to the Apostles of Jesus Christ our Hope, in whom if we walk, we shall be found *in Him*. The Deacons also, being the *Mini-* Vid. Vossium  
in loc.  
*sters* of the Mysteries of Jesus Christ, must by all means *study* to please all. For they are not the \* Ministers of \* *Deacons.*  
Meat and Drink, but of the Church of God. Wherefore They must avoid all Offences, as *they would do Fire*.

III. I N like manner let all Re-  
verence the Deacons as Jesus Christ;  
and the Bishop as the Father; and Vossius in loc.  
vid. alter Co-  
telerium.  
the Presbyters as the Sanhedrim of  
God, and Colledge of the Apostles.  
Without these there is no \* Church. \* *A Church is  
not called.*  
Concerning all which I am per-  
swaded that ye think after the very  
same manner: For I have received,  
and even now have with me the  
Pattern of your Love, in your Bishop.  
Whose



\* *Habit of Body*  
is great *Instru-*  
*ction.*

† *Power.*

Vid. Vossium &  
Usserium in  
loc.

\* *I understand*  
*many things.*

† *Measure.*

\* *Love.*

|| Vid. Annot.  
Vossii in loc.

\* *Mildness.*

|| *Is.*

Whose very \* look is Instructive ;  
and whose Mildness † Powerful :  
Whom I am perswaded, the very  
Atheists themselves cannot but Reve-  
rence. But because I have a Love  
towards you, I will not write any  
more sharply unto you about this  
Matter, though I very well might,  
and did once design to have done ;  
least being a Condemn'd Man, I  
should seem to prescribe to you as  
an Apostle.

IV. I HAVE \* great Know-  
ledge in God ; but I † refrain my  
self, least I should perish in my  
Boasting. For now I ought the  
more to fear ; and not hearken to  
those that *would* puff me up. For  
they that speak to me, Chasten me.  
For I indeed \* desire to suffer, but I  
cannot tell whether I am worthy *so*  
*to do.* || And this Desire, though to  
others it does not appear, yet  
to my self it is *for that very rea-*  
*son* the more Violent. I have there-  
fore need of \* Moderation ; by which  
the Prince of this World *may* || *be*  
*destroy'd.*

V. AM

V. AM I not able to write to you of Heavenly things? But I fear least I should Harm you, who are yet but Babes in Christ: (Excuse me *this Care*;) And least perchance being not able to receive them, ye should be choaked *with them*. For even I my self, although I am in Bonds, yet am not therefore able to understand Heavenly Things: As the Description of the Places of the Angels, and the several Companies of them, under their respective Princes; Things Visible and Invisible; but in these I am yet a Learner. For many things are wanting to us, that we come not short of God.

VI. I EXHORT you therefore, *or rather* not I, but the Love of Jesus Christ; that ye use none but Christian Nourishment; abstaining from Pasture which is of another Kind, I mean Heresie. \* *For they that are Hereticks*, confound together *the Doctrine of Jesus Christ*; with *their own* Poison; whilst they seem worthy of Belief: As Men give a deadly Potion mix'd with Sweet Wine;

which

\* Vid. de hoc loco conjecturas Vossii, Cotelerii, & Junii apud Usserium. Comp. Epist. Interpol in loc. Et Voss. Annot. in Epist. ad Phil. p. 281.

which He who is ignorant of, does with the treacherous Pleasure sweetly Drink in his own Death.

VII. WHEREFORE guard your selves against such Persons. And that you will do if you are not puffed up; but continue inseparable from Jesus Christ ~~our~~ God, and from your Bishop; and from the Commands of the Apostles. He that is within the Altar is Pure: But he that is without, that is, does any thing without the Bishop, and Presbyters, and Deacons, is not Pure in his Conscience.

Vid. Usseri  
Obs Marg.  
Comp. Corcler.  
ib.

VIII. NOT that I know there is any thing of this Nature among you; But I fore-arm you, as being greatly Beloved by me, fore-seeing the Snares of the Devil. Wherefore putting on Meekness, renew your selves in Faith, which is the Flesh of the LORD; and in Charity, which is the Blood of Jesus Christ. Let no Man have \* any Grudge against his Neighbour. Give no Occasion to the Gentiles; least by means of a few

\* Any thing.

few Foolish Men, the whole Company that is in God be Evil spoken of. For Woe to that Man, through *Isaiah Lii. 5.* whose Vanity my Name is Blaphemed by any.

IX. STOP your Ears therefore, as often as any one shall speak \* *Without.* contrary to Jesus Christ; of the Race of *David* by the Virgin *Mary*. Who was truly Born, and did Eat and Drink; Was truly Persecuted under *Pontius Pilate*; Was truly Crucified and Dead; Both the Things in Heaven, and the Things on Earth, and the Things under the Earth \* *being* \* *Seeing, or looking on.* Conscious of it. Who was also truly raised from the Dead || by his Father, || *His Father raising him.* after the same manner as \* *The Father.* he will also raise up us who believe in Him, by Christ Jesus; without whom we have no true Life.

X. BUT if as some who are Atheists, that is to say Infidels, pretend, that he only seem'd to Suffer: (They themselves only seeming to exist) why then am I Bound? Why do I desire to fight with Beasts? There.

Therefore do I die in vain. Nay,  
but I speak nothing that is False of  
the Lord.

\* *Plants.*

XI. FLEE therefore these Evil  
\* Branches which bring forth deadly  
Fruit ; of which if any one taste,  
he shall presently Dye. For these  
are not the Plants of the Father :  
Seeing if they were, they would  
appear to be the Branches of the  
Cross, and their Fruit would be In-  
corruptible : By which he invites  
you through his Passion, who are  
Members of him. For the Head  
cannot be without its Members,  
God having promised a Union, that  
is Himself.

XII. I SALUTE you from  
*Smyrna*, together with the Churches  
of God that are present with Me ;  
who have refresh'd me in all things,  
both in the Flesh and in the Spirit.  
My Bonds, which I carry about me  
for the sake of Christ, (beseeching  
him that I may attain unto God)  
exhort you, that you continue in  
\* Concord among your selves, and  
in

\* *The Concord  
of you.*

in Prayer with one another. For it becomes every one of you, especially the Presbyters, to refresh your Bishop, to the Honour of the Father, of Jesus Christ, and of the Apostles. I beseech you that you hearken to me in Love; that I may not \* by those things which I write, rise up in Witness against you. Pray also for Me; who through the Mercy of God stand in need of your Prayers, that I may be worthy of the Portion which I am about to obtain, that I be not found a Reprobate.

\* Be a Testimony among you, Writing.

XIII. THE Love of those who are at *Smyrna* and *Ephesus* salute you. Remember in your Prayers the Church of *Syria*, from which I am not worthy to be called, being one of the least of \* it. Fare ye well in \* *Them.* Jesus Christ; being subject to your Bishop as to the Command of God; and so likewise to the Presbytery. Love every one his Brother with an \* unfeigned Heart. || My Soul \* *Undivided.* be your Expiation, not only now, but when I shall have attain'd unto God: For I am yet under  
I. Danger.

|| Vid. Annot. Vossii in loc.

Danger. But the Father is Faithful in Jesus Christ, to fulfil both mine and your Petition: In whom may ye be found Unblameable.

*To the* TRALLIANS.

---

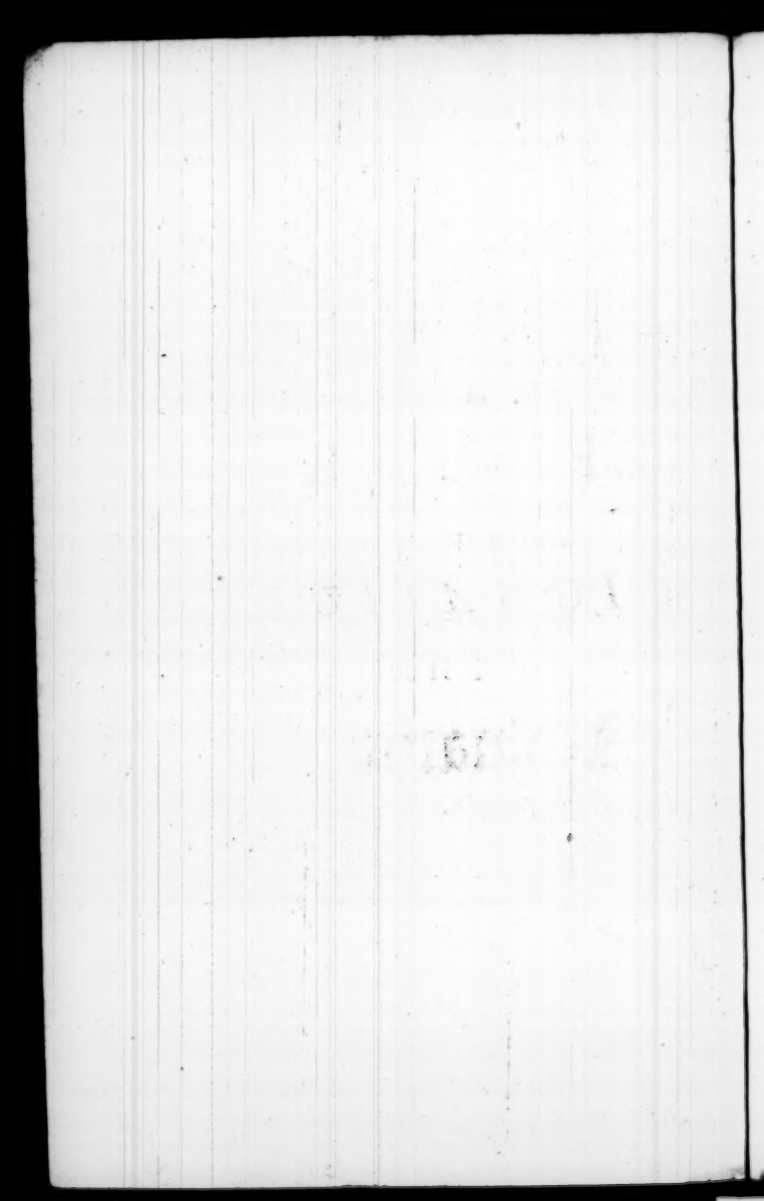
T H E

---

THE  
EPISTLE  
OF  
St. *IGNATIUS*  
TO THE  
*Romans.*

---





---



---

# T H E C O N T E N T S.

## *The Salutation.*

Chap. I. **H**E testifies his Desire to  
Come unto Them; and  
His Hopes of Suffering for Christ,  
unless they Prevent it.

II. Which he Earnestly Intreats them  
not to do:

III. But rather to Pray for Him, that  
God would Strengthen Him to the  
Combat unto which He had called  
Him.

IV. He expresses the Great Desire he  
had to Suffer Martyrdom.

V. VI. And the Mighty Advantage it  
would be to Him so to do.

VII. VIII. And therefore again intreats  
them that they would not do any  
thing to prevent it.

IX. He desires their Prayers for his  
Church at Antioch; and expresses

## The Contents.

*the Kindness of the Christians to Him on his Way to Them.*

X. *And then Concludes, with his Recommendations of Those who came from Syria with Him, and were gone before to Rome, to their Favourable Acceptance.*

---

T H E

---

T H E  
E P I S T L E  
O F  
St. I G N A T I U S  
T O T H E  
**Romans.**

IGNATIUS, *who is also called* Vid. Pearson.  
Vind. Ignat.  
Par. 2. ch. 16.  
p. 214.  
THEOPHORUS; *to the*  
*Church which has obtained Mercy*  
*\* from the Majesty of the Most*  
*High Father, and his only Be-*  
*gotten Son Jesus Christ; Be-*  
*loved, and Illuminated \* through \* In.*  
*the Will of Him who Willeth*  
*all things which are according*  
*to the Love of Jesus Christ our*  
L 4                      God;

\* Type of the  
Chorus, i.e. The  
Church of the  
Romans. See  
Voss. Annot. in  
loc.

God; Which also Presides in  
the \* Place of the Region of the  
Romans; and which I salute  
in the Name of Jesus Christ,  
as being United both in Flesh  
and Spirit to all His Commands,  
and filled with the Grace of  
God; All Joy in Jesus Christ  
our God.

\* Vid. Voss.  
Annot. in loc.

|| *Worthy of God.*

\* *Have Grace.*

|| *My Lot.*

\* *Is.*

I. I HAVE at last \* obtained  
of God, through my Earnest  
Prayers, to see your || Faces,  
which I *have* much desired to do.  
For being Bound in Christ Jesus, I  
hope *e're long* to salute you, if it  
shall be the Pleasure of God to grant  
me to attain unto the End I *hope for*.  
For the Beginning is well-disposed,  
if I shall but \* be so Happy, as with-  
out Hindrance, to receive || what  
is Appointed for me. But I fear your  
Love, lest it do me an Injury.  
For it is easie for you to do what  
you please; But it \* will be hard  
for me to attain unto God, unless  
you spare me.

II. BUT

II. BUT I would not that ye should please Men, but God; \* whom \* *As.* also ye do please. For neither shall I ever hereafter have such an Opportunity || of going unto God; Nor || *Enjoying.* will you, if ye shall now be silent, ever be intituled to a better Work. For if you shall be silent † in my be- † *From me.* half, I shall become *partaker* of God. But if you shall love my \* Body, I \* *Flesh.* shall have my Course again to run. Wherefore a greater Kindness ye cannot do Me, than to suffer me to be Sacrificed unto God, now that the Altar is already Prepared: That || when ye shall be gather'd together || *Being become* in Love, ye may \* give Thanks to *a Chorus.* the Father in Christ Jesus; that He \* *Sing.* has vouchsafed † to bring a Bishop † *That a Bishop* of Syria unto you, being sent from *of Syria should* the East *even* unto the West. For *be found.* it is good *for me* to Set from the World, unto God; that I may Rise again unto Him.

III. YE HAVE never envied me in any thing; ye have taught others. I would therefore that ye  
\* *should*

\* That those  
things also  
should be firm.  
|| Commanded.

Vid. Annot.  
Usserii in loc.  
N. 26, 27.

\* God.

|| Persuasion.

† Vid. Usser.  
Ann. N. 31.

\* Forbid me.

|| Be not.

† By whom I  
may.

\* *should now do those things your selves,* which in your Instructions you have || prescribed to *Others*. Only Pray for me, that God would give me Strength, that I may not only be called a Christian, but may also be found one. For if I shall be found a *Christian*, I may then *deservedly* be called one: And be *thought* Faithful, when I shall no longer appear to the World. Nothing is Good, that is seen. For even our \* Lord Jesus Christ, now that he is in the Father, does so much the more Appear. To be a *True* Christian is not a Work of || Opinion; but of Greatness of *Mind*; especially when he is hated by the World.

IV. I WRITE to the Churches, and † signifie to them All, that I am willing to die for God, unless you \* hinder me. I beseech you that you || shew not an unseasonable good Will towards me. Suffer me to be Food to the Wild Beasts; † by which means I shall go unto God. For I am the Wheat of God; and I shall be Ground by the Teeth of the Wild Beasts, that I may be found  
the

the pure Bread \* of Christ. Rather  
 || encourage the Beasts, that they  
 may become my Sepulchre; and  
 may leave nothing of my Body;  
 that being Dead, I may not be  
 troublesome to any. Then shall I  
 be the True Disciple of Jesus Christ,  
 when the World shall not see so  
 much as my Body. Pray *therefore*  
 unto Christ for me, that by these  
 Instruments I may be made the Sa-  
 crifice of God. I do not as *Peter*  
 and *Paul*, Command you. They  
 were Apostles, I a Condemned  
 Man; They were Free, I am even  
 to this day a Servant: But if I shall  
 Suffer, I shall then become the Free-  
 man of Jesus Christ and shall rise  
 Free. And now, being in Bonds, I  
 learn, not to desire any thing.

\* Vid. Lat. Ver.  
 Interpr. Et  
 Annot. Usser.  
 N. 33.  
 || Flatter.

V. FROM *Syria* even unto *Rome*,  
 I fight with Beasts both by Sea and  
 Land; both Night and Day: Being  
 bound to Ten Leopards, that is to  
 say, to such a Band of Souldiers;  
 Who though treated with all man-  
 ner of Kindness, are but the Worse  
 for it. But I am the more instructed  
 by



1 Cor. iv. 4.

\* Ready.

¶ Vid. Voss. in  
loc. Usser.

Annot. N. 48.

† Usser. Annot.  
N. 48.

Luke xlv. 27.

\* Vid. Coteler.

in loc.

Rom. viii. 38, 39

¶ Vid. Usser.

Annot. N. 56.

† lb. N. 57.

\* That I may  
enjoy.

\* Ends.

¶ Of this Age.

by their Injuries; *Yet am I not there-  
fore Justified.* May I enjoy the Wild  
Beasts that are \* prepared for me;  
Which also I wilh may || exercise  
all their Fierceness upon me: And  
whom for that End I will † encou-  
rage, that they may be sure  
to devour Me, and not serve me  
as they have done some, whom  
out of fear they have not touched.  
But and if they will not do it willing-  
ly, I will provoke them to it. Par-  
don me *in this Matter*; I know  
what is profitable for me. Now I  
begin to be a Disciple: Nor \* shall  
any thing move me, whether Visible  
or Invisible, that I may attain to  
Christ Jesus. Let Fire, and the  
Cross; let the Companies of Wild  
Beasts; let Breakings of Bones, and  
Tearing of Members; let the || shat-  
tering in pieces of the whole Body,  
and all † the Torments of the Devil  
come upon me; only let \* me enjoy  
Jesus Christ.

VI. ALL the \* Compass of the  
World, and the Kingdoms || of it,  
will profit me nothing: It is better  
for

for me to die for Jesus Christ, than  
 to rule to the utmost Ends of the  
 Earth. Him I seek who died for us:  
 Him I desire, that rose again *from*  
*the Dead* for us. He is the Gain that  
 is laid up for me. Pardon me, my  
 Brethren, ye shall not hinder me  
 from living: † Nor seeing I desire to  
 go to God, may you separate me  
 from Him, for the sake of this World,  
 nor seduce me by *any* of the \* Desires \* *By matter.*  
 of it. Suffer me to || enter into || *Take: Lay*  
 Pure Light: Where being come, I *hold on.*  
 shall be *indeed* the Servant of \* God. \* *Vid. Annot.*  
 Permit me to imitate the Passion of *Voss. in loc.*  
 my God. If any one has Him with-  
 in Himself, let him consider what I  
 desire; and let him have Compassion  
 on me, as knowing † how I am † *What things*  
 streightned. *constrain me.*

VII. THE Prince of this World  
 would fain carry me away, and cor-  
 rupt my \* Resolution towards my \* *Mind: Will.*  
 God. Let none of you || therefore || *Who are pre-*  
 Help † him: Rather do ye joyn *sent.*  
 with me, that is, with God. Do † *Vid. Voss.*  
 not speak with Jesus Christ, and yet *Annot. in loc.*  
 Cover the World. Let not any  
 Envy

Envy dwell with you: No not though even I my self when I shall be come unto you, should exhort you to it, yet do not ye hearken to me; but rather believe what I *now* write to you. For though I am alive at the Writing this, yet my Desire is to Die. My Love is Crucified; And the \* Fire that is within me does not desire any Water: But being Alive and || speaking within me, says, Come to the Father. I take no Pleasure in the Food of Corruption, nor in the Pleasures of this Life. I desire the Bread of God, which is the Flesh of Jesus Christ, of the Seed of *David*; and the Drink that I long for is his Blood, which is Uncorruptible Love.

\* Corelerius  
aliter explicat.  
Annot. in loc.  
Ulfert. N. 79.  
|| Voss. in loc.  
Contr. Core-  
ler. q. v.

VIII. I HAVE no desire to live any longer after the manner of Men; \* neither shall I, if you consent. Be ye therefore willing, that ye your selves also may be † pleasing to God. I || exhort you † in a few Words, I pray you believe me. Jesus Christ will shew you that I speak truly: My Mouth is without Deceit, and  
the

\* And that shall  
be.

† Willed.

|| Vid. Annot.  
Voss. in loc.

† By a short  
Letter.

the Father hath truly spoken \* by it. \* *In.*

Pray *therefore* for me, that I may accomplish *what I desire*. I have not written to you after the Flesh, but according to the Will of God. If I shall Suffer, ye have loved me: But if I shall be rejected, ye have hated me.

IX. REMEMBER in your Prayers the Church of *Syria*, which now enjoys God for its Shepherd instead of me: || Let Jesus Christ || *Vid. Vet. Interpret. Lat.* only Oversee it, and your Charity. But I am *even* ashamed to be reckon'd as one of Them: For neither am I Worthy, being the least among them, and as one Born out of due Season. But through Mercy I have *1 Cor. xv. 3.* obtain'd to be Somebody, if I shall get unto God. My Spirit salutes you; and the Charity of the Churches that have received me in the Name of Jesus Christ, not as a Stranger. For even they that have not accompanied me in my Journey \*, have *\* According to the Flesh* yet been ready in every City to receive me

X. THESE

\* Vid. Vet. In-  
terpr. Lat.

X. THESE things I write to you from *Smyrna*, by the most Worthy of the Church of *Ephesus*. There is now with me, together with many others, *Crocus*, most Beloved of me. As for those which \* came with Me from *Syria*, and are gone before me to *Rome*, to the Glory of God, I suppose you are not Ignorant of them. Ye shall therefore signifie to them that I draw near, for they are all Worthy both of God and of you: Whom it is fit that you Refresh in all things. This have I written to you, the day before the Ninth of the Calends of *September*. Be Strong unto the End, in the Patience of Jesus Christ.

To the ROMANS.

---

T H E

---

THE  
EPISTLE  
OF  
St. *IGNATIUS*  
TO THE  
**Philadelphians.**

---

M

1875

# T H E C O N T E N T S.

## *The Salutation.*

Chap. I. **H**E begins with a very Great Commendation of their Bishop, whom they had sent unto Him.

II. He warns them against Divisions; and to stick close to their Bishop, as the best means to avoid falling into Errors and False Doctrines.

III. IV. Which Exhortation he again enforces; and shews them the Danger of following Any Persons, to the making of a Schism in the Church.

V. He excuses the length of this Advice; which proceeded from his Love towards Them: Desires their Prayers; And shews how the Holy Men under the Law, as well as since under the Gospel, were all United in Christ.



## The Contents.

- VI. *Yet this must not prompt them to receive their Doctrine, who would tempt them to Judaize.*
- VII. *He declares what his own Conduct had been whilst he was amongst Them.*
- VIII. IX. *And exhorts them, after his Example, to maintain a Pure Doctrine, in Unity with one Another.*
- X. *He accounts to them how he had heard that the Persecution was stopp'd in his Church at Antioch: And directs them to send some Messenger thither, to Congratulate with Them thereupon.*
- XI. *He tells them what Persons were still with Him; and thanks them for the kind Entertainment they gave to some of Them: And so concludes with the common Salutation of those who were present at his Writing of this Epistle to Them.*

THE

T H E  
E P I S T L E  
O F  
St. I G N A T I U S  
T O T H E  
**Philadelphians.**

IGNATIUS, *who is also called*  
THEOPHORUS, *to the*  
*Church of God the Father and*  
*our Lord Jesus Christ which*  
*is at PHILADELPHIA in*  
*Asia; which has obtained Mercy,*  
*being fix'd in the Concord of*  
*God, and rejoicing || evermore in ||* *Inseparably.*  
*the Passion of our Lord, and being*  
*fulfilled in all Mercy through*

## St. Ignatius's Epistle

his Resurrection: Which also I salute in the Bloud of Jesus Christ, \* who is our Eternal and undefiled Joy; Especially if they are at Unity with the Bishop and Presbyters who are with Him, and the Deacons appointed || according to the Mind of Jesus Christ; whom he has settled according to his own Will in all Firmness by His Holy Spirit.

\* Vid. Vet. Interp. Lat.

|| In.

\* Ministry belonging to the Publick.

|| Has struck me with Wonder.

† Those that speak Vain things.

I. **W**HICH Bishop I know obtain'd \* that Great Ministry among you, not of Himself, neither by Men, nor out of Vain Glory; but in the Love of God the Father and our Lord Jesus Christ: Whose Mildness † I admire, who by his silence is able to do more, than † others with all their Vain Talk. For he is fitted to the Commands, as the Harp to its Strings. Wherefore my Soule esteems his Mind towards God most Happy, knowing it to be Fruitful in all Vertue,

Vertue, and perfect ; full of Constancy ; free from Passion, || and according to all the Moderation of the Living God.

II. WHEREFORE as becomes the Children *both* of the Light and of Truth ; flee Divisions and False Doctrines : But where your Shepherd is, there do ye, as Sheep, follow after. For there are many Wolves \* who seem worthy of Belief, \* Vid. Voss. An-  
that with a || false Pleasure lead not. in loc.  
Captive those that run in the Course || Evil.  
of God : But in your Concord, They shall find no place.

III. ABSTAIN *therefore* from *those* Evil Herbs which Jesus Christ does not dress ; because such are not the Plantation of the Father. Not that I have found any Division among you, but rather *all manner of* Purity. For as many as are of Jesus Christ, are also with their Bishop. And as many as shall with Repentance return into the Unity of the Church, even these shall also be *the Servants* of God, that they may

live according to Jesus Christ. Be not deceived, Brethren : If any one follows him that makes a Schism *in the Church*, he shall not inherit the Kingdom of God. If any one walks after any other's Opinion, he agrees not with the *Passion of Christ*.

IV. WHEREFORE let it be your Endeavour to partake All of the same *Holy Eucharist*. For there is but one Flesh of our Lord Jesus Christ; And One Cup, unto the Unity of his Bloud; One Altar; As also there is One Bishop, together with his Presbytery, and the Deacons my Fellow-Servants: That so whatsoever ye do, ye may do it according to *the Will of God*.

\* *Very much  
Poured out.*

|| Vid. Voss. in  
loc.

V. MY Brethren, the Love I have towards you makes me the  
\* more large; and having a great Joy *in you*, I endeavour to secure you *against Danger*: Or rather not I, but Jesus Christ, in whom being Bound I the more fear, as being yet only || on the way to Suffering. But your Prayer to God shall make me  
Perfect,

Perfect, that I may attain to that Portion, which by God's Mercy is allotted to me: Fleeing to the Gospel as to the Flesh of Christ; and to the Apostles as to the *Great* Presbytery of the Church. Let us also love the Prophets, for as much as they also have by their Doctrine led us to the Gospel, and to Hope in \* *Christ*, and \* *vid. Voss. in loc.* to expect Him. In whom also Believing they were saved; in the Unity of Jesus Christ, being Holy *Men*, Worthy to be loved, and had in Wonder; who have received Testimony from Jesus Christ, and are reckon'd in the Gospel of our Common Hope.

VI. BUT if any one shall preach the Jewish Law unto you, hearken not unto Him: For it is better to receive the Doctrine of Christ from one that has been Circumcised, than Judaism from One that has not. But if either the One or Other do not speak concerning Christ Jesus; they seem to me to be but as Monuments and Sepulchres of the Dead, upon which are written only the Names of Men.

Flee

\* *Opinion:*  
*Council.*

Flee therefore the wicked Arts and Snares of the Prince of this World; lest at any time being Oppressed by his \* Cunning, ye grow cold in your Charity. But come All-together into the same Place, with an undivided Heart. And, I Bless my God that I have a good Conscience towards you, and that no One among you has whereof to boast either Openly or Privately, that I have been Burthenome to Him in much or little. And I beseech All among whom I have conversed, that they make not use of that for a Testimony of it.

VII. FOR although some would have deceived me according to the Flesh; yet the Spirit, being from God, is not deceived: For it knows both whence it comes, and whither it goes, and reproveth the Secrets of the Heart. I cried whilst I was among you; I spake with a loud Voice; Attend to the Bishop, and to the Presbytery, and to the Deacons. Now some supposed that I spake this as foreseeing the Division \* that should come among you. But He is my

\* *Of some.*

my Witness for whose sake I am in Bonds that I knew nothing from any \* Man. But the Spirit spake, saying \* *Flesh.* on this wise; Do nothing without the Bishop: Keep your \* Bodies as the Temples of God: Love Unity: Flee Divisions: Be the Followers of Christ, as he *was* of his Father.

VIII. I THEREFORE did as became me, as a Man composed to Unity. For where there is Division, and Wrath, God dwelleth not. But the Lord forgives all that Repent, if they \* Return to the Unity \* *Repent.* of God, and to the Council of the Bishop. For I trust in the Grace of Jesus Christ || that he will free you || *Who will loose from you.* from every Bond. Nevertheless I exhort you that you do nothing out of Strife, but according to the Instruction of Christ. Because I have heard of some who say; Unless I find it *written in* some other † antient Monuments, I will not believe the Gospel. And when I answer'd them, It is Written: They replied, That it does not appear. But to me Jesus Christ is instead of all the Antient Monu-

† Vid. Voss. Annot. in loc.



\* *Untouch'd.*

Monuments in the World : *Together with those* \* undefiled Monuments, His Cross, and Death, and Resurrection, and the Faith which is by Him : By which I desire, through your Prayers, to be Justified.

IX. THE Priests indeed are Good : But much better is the High Priest to whom the Holy of Holies has been committed ; and who alone has been intrusted with the Secrets of God. He is the Door of the Father ; by which *Abraham*, and *Isaac*, and *Jacob*, and all the Prophets enter in ; *as well* as the Apostles and the Church. And all these things *tend* to the Unity *which is* of God. Howbeit the Gospel has somewhat in it far *above all other Dispensations* ; Namely, the Appearance of our Saviour, the Lord Jesus Christ, his Passion and Resurrection. For the Beloved Prophets refer'd to Him : But the Gospel *is* the Perfection of Incorruption. All *therefore* together are Good , if ye believe with Charity.

X. NOW

X. NOW as concerning the Church of *Antioch* which is in *Syria*, seeing I am told that through your Prayers, and the Bowels which ye have towards it in Jesus Christ, it is in Peace; it will become you, as the Church of God, to ordain some || Deacon to go to them thither as the Embassador of God; that He may rejoyce with Them when they meet together, and Glorifie Gods Name. Blessed be that Man in Jesus Christ, who shall be found worthy of such a Ministry; and ye your selves also shall be Glorified. Now if ye be willing, it is not Impossible for you to do this for the sake of God; as also the other Neighbouring Churches have sent them some Bishops, some Priests and Deacons.

|| Messenger or Minister.

XI. AS concerning *Philo* the Deacon of *Cilicia*, a most worthy \* Man, He still Ministers unto me in the Word of God; together with *Rheus* || of *Agathopolis* a singular good Person, who has follow'd me even from *Syria*, not regarding his Life:

\*Vossius. a Martyr, or Confessor. Vid. Annot. in loc.

|| Vid. Vossius Annot. in Ep. ad Smyrn. p. 261.

These

These also bear witness unto you. And I my self give Thanks to God for you, that ye received them, as the Lord shall receive you. But for those that dishonour'd them, may they be forgiven through the Grace of Jesus Christ. The Charity of the Brethren that are at *Trox* salutes you: From whence also I now write by *Burrhus* who was sent together with me by those of *Ephesus* and *Smyrna*, for respect sake. May Our Lord Jesus Christ Honour them; in whom they Hope, both in *Flesh*, and *Soul*, and *Spirit*; in *Faith*, in *Love*, in *Unity*. Farewel in Christ Jesus our Common Hope.

---

THE  
EPISTLE  
OF  
St. *IGNATIUS*  
TO THE  
*Smyrneans.*

---

THE

20 MAY 1911

1911

---



---

# T H E C O N T E N T S.

## *The Salutation.*

Chap. I. **H**E declares the Joy he had to hear of their Firmness in the Gospel : The Substance of which, as to what concerns the Person of Christ, he briefly repeats to Them.

II. And this against such as pretended, that Christ suffer'd only in Shew, and not Really. Against these,

III. He assures them, that he knew Christ was a True Man, even after his Resurrection; And did give manifest Proofs to his Disciples of his Being such.

IV. He Exhorts them therefore, to have nothing to do with those Hereticks whom he here Opposes : Nor believe that He would Suffer so

N much

## The Contents.

*so much for the Faith of Christ, unless he were very sure of the Truth of it.*

V. *He shews them, farther, the Danger of the Doctrine before mentioned: And how they who held it did, in Effect, Deny Christ.*

VI. *How Dangerous this is? And how different those who maintain this Doctrine are, in All other respects from the Church of Christ?*

VII. *That it will therefore become them, to Guard themselves against such Persons.*

VIII. *To this end; He Exhorts them to follow their Bishop and Pastors: But especially their Bishop.*

IX. *He thanks them for their Kindness to Himself:*

X. *And to those that were with Him; which God will reward.*

XI. *He acquaints them with the Ceasing of the Persecution at Antioch: And exhorts them to send a Messenger unto them, to congratulate with them on this Occasion.*

XII. *He*

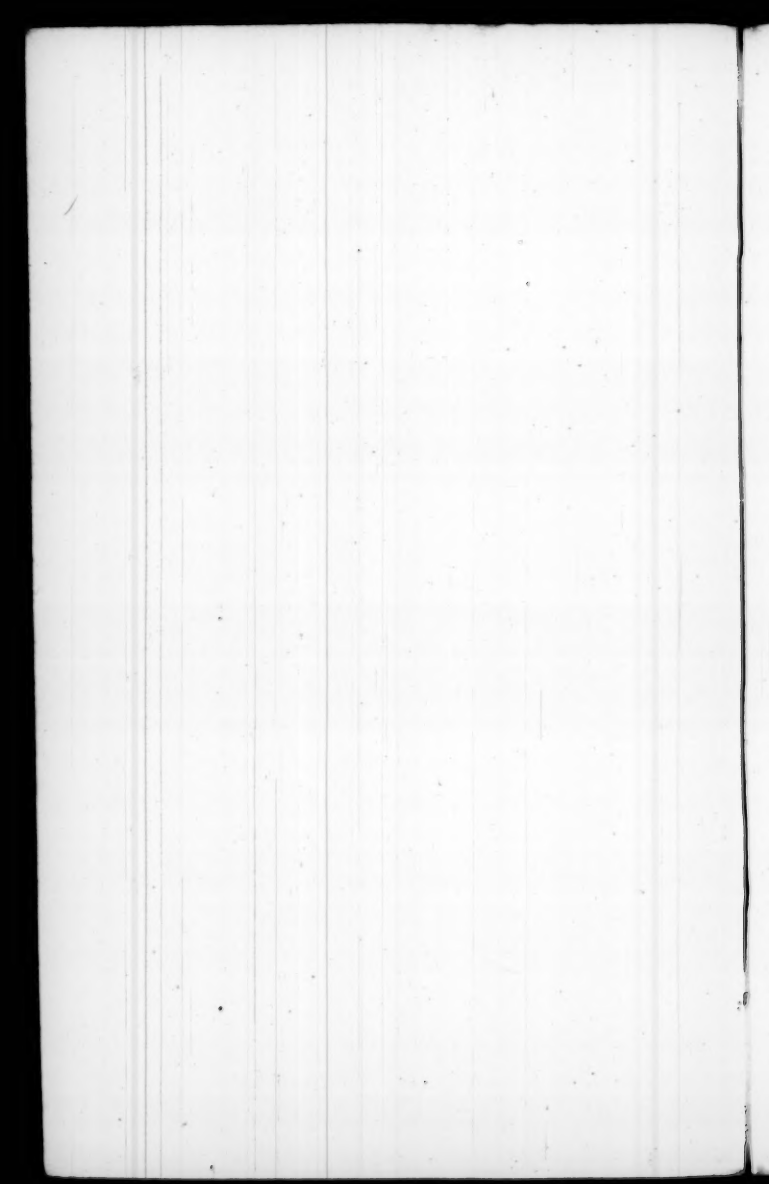
XII. *He concludes with his own Salutation, and the Remembrances of those that were with Him, to them all in General, and to several in Particular.*

---

N 2

T H E





---

T H E  
E P I S T L E  
O F  
St. I G N A T I U S  
T O T H E  
**Smyrneans,**

IGNATIUS, *who is also called*  
 THEOPHORUS, *to the*  
*Church of God the Father, and*  
*of the Beloved Jesus Christ;*  
*which God hath \* Blessed with* <sup>\*Comp. 1 Cor.</sup>  
*every Good Gift; being filled* <sup>vii. 25.</sup>  
*with Faith and Charity, so that*  
*it is wanting in no Gift: To*  
*the most Worthy of God and*  
*Fruitful in Saints, the Church*  
 N 3                      *which*

St. Ignatius's *Epistle*

*which is at SMYRNA in Asia ; All Joy, through his Immaculate Spirit, and through the Word of God.*

I. **I** GLORIFIE God, even Jesus Christ, who has thus filled you with all Wisdom. For I have understood how that you are settled in an Immoveable Faith, as if you were Nailed to the Cross of our Lord Jesus Christ both in the Flesh and in the Spirit; and are confirm'd in Love through the Bloud of Christ; being fully perswaded of those things which relate \* unto our LORD: Who truly was of the Race of *David* according to the Flesh, but the Son of God according to the Will and Power of God: Truly Born of the Virgin, and Baptized of *John*; that so *all Righteousness might be fulfilled by him*. He was also truly Crucified by *Pontius Pilate*, and *Herod the Tetrarch*, for us in the Flesh; by the Fruits of which we are saved, even by his most Blessed Passion, that he might set † up a sure

\* *Unto the Lord.*

*Mat. iii. 15.*

† *Vid. Voss. Annot. in loc.*

sure Token and Earnest of Hope, for all following Ages through his Resurrection, to all his Holy and Faithful Servants, whether they be Jews or Gentiles, in one Body of his Church.

II. NOW all these things he suffer'd for us, that we might be saved. And he suffer'd truly, as He also truly Raised up himself: And not as some Unbelievers say, that he only seemed to suffer, they themselves only seeming to be. And as they Believe so shall it happen unto them; when they shall become \* Spiritual and In-  
 \* *Incorporeal and Demonic*

III. BUT I know that *even* after his Resurrection he was in the Flesh; and I believe that he was so. And when he came to those who were with Peter, he said unto them, Take, *Luke xxiv. 39*  
*Handle me and see that I am not an In-* *John xx. 27.*  
*corporeal Demon.* And straightway they felt Him and Believed; being convinced both by his Flesh and Spirit. For this cause they despised Death, and were found to be above

\* *Death.*

\* it. But after his Resurrection he did Eat and Drink with them, as he was Flesh; although as to his Spirit *he was* united to the Father.

|| *Admonish.*† *Have so.*

IV. NOW these things, Beloved, I || put you in mind of, not questioning but that you your selves also † believe that they are so. But I arm you before-hand against certain Beasts in the shape of Men; whom you must not only not receive, but if it be possible must not meet with. Only you must pray for them, that if it be the Will of God they may repent; which yet will be very hard. But of this our Lord Jesus Christ has the Power, who is our true Life. For if all these things were done only in shew by our LORD, then do I also only seem to be Bound: And why have I given up my self to Death, to the Fire, to the Sword, to Wild Beasts? But *now* the nearer I am to the Sword, the nearer am I to God: What is between me and the Beasts, is between me and God. Only in the Name of Jesus Christ, who was a Perfect Man, and by his Assistance,

Assistance, am I ready to suffer All things together with Him.

V. WHOM some, not knowing, do deny; or rather have been denied by him, being the Advocates of Death, rather than of the Truth. Whom neither the Prophecies, nor the Law of *Moses* have perswaded; nor the Gospel it self even to this day, nor all our Sufferings. For they think also the same things of us. For what does a Man profit me, if he shall Praise me, and Blaspheme my LORD; not confessing that he \* was truly made Man? Now he that says this, does in effect deny him, and is in Death. But for the Names of such as do this, they being Unbelievers, I thought it not fitting to write them unto you. Nay, God forbid that I should make any mention of them, till they shall repent to a true Belief of Christ's Passion, which is our Resurrection.

\* Had true  
Flesh.

VI. LET no Man deceive himself; Both the things which are in Heaven, and the Glory of Angels,  
and

† *It is.**Matt. xix. 12.*\* *Vid. Epist.*  
*Interp.*

and Principalities, whether Visible or Invisible, if they believe not in the Bloud of Christ, † it shall be to them to Condemnation. *He that is able to receive this, Let him receive it.* Let no Man's \* Place or State in the World puff him up: That which is worth All is Faith and Charity, to which nothing is *to be* preferred. But *then* consider those who defend a different Opinion *from us*, as to what concerns the Grace of God which is come unto us, how contrary they are to the Mind of God? They have no regard to Charity; *No Care* of the Widow, the Fatherless, and the Oppressed; Of the Bound or Free, of the Hungry or Thirsty.

\* *Vid. Annot.*  
*Coteler. in loc.*‡ *The Eucharist.*

VII. THEY abstain from \* the Publick Offices and from the *Holy* Eucharist; because they confess || it not to be the Flesh of our Saviour Jesus Christ, which suffered for our Sins, and which the Father, of his Goodness, raised *again from the Dead*. And for this cause contradicting the Gift of God, they die in their Disputes: \* But much better would it be

\* *Vid. Coteler.*  
*Annot.*

be for them to love *it*, that they might *one day rise through it*. It will therefore become you to abstain from such Persons; and not to speak with them neither in Private, nor in Publick. But to hearken to the Prophets, and especially to the Gospel, in which *both Christ's* Passion is manifested unto us, and his Resurrection perfectly declared. But flee all Divisions, as the beginning of Evils.

VIII. FOLLOW your Bishop, as Jesus Christ, the Father: And the Presbytery, as the Apostles. As for the Deacons, reverence them as the Command of God. Let no Man do any thing of what belongs to the Church without the Bishop. Let that Eucharist be look'd upon as Firm and Just, which is either *offer'd* by the Bishop, or by Him to whom the Bishop has given his Consent. Wheresoever the Bishop shall appear, there let the \* People also be: As *\*The Multitude* where Jesus Christ is, there is the Catholick Church. It is not lawful without the Bishop, neither to Baptise,  
nor



\* *Make a Love-Feast.*

nor \* to celebrate the Holy Communion: But whatsoever he shall approve of, that is also pleasing unto God; that so whatever is done, may be secure and well done.

|| *Return to a sound Mind.*

IX. FOR what remains, it is very reasonable that we should || repent, whilst there is yet time to return unto God. It is a good thing to have a due regard both to God and to the Bishop: He that Honours the Bishop, shall be Honoured of God. But he that does any thing † *Does worship.* without his Knowledge, † Ministers unto the Devil. Let all things therefore abound to you in Charity; seeing ye are Worthy. Ye have refresh'd me in all things; so shall Jesus Christ you. Ye have loved me both when I was present with you, and now being absent, *ye cease not to do so.* May God be your Reward, for whom whilst ye undergo all things ye shall attain unto Him.

\* *Vid. Voss. Annot. in loc.*

X. YE HAVE done well in that ye have received *Philo*, and *Rheus*, and \* *Agathopus*, as the Deacons

Deacons of Christ *our* Lord: Who also give Thanks unto the Lord for you, inasmuch as ye have refreshed them in all \* things. || Nor shall any thing <sup>\* Ways.</sup> *that you have done*, be lost to you. || <sup>|| Vid. Epist. Interpol.</sup> My † Soul be for yours, and <sup>† Spirit.</sup> my Bonds which ye have not despised, nor been ashamed of. *Wherefore* neither shall Jesus Christ, *our* perfect Faith, be ashamed of you.

XI. YOUR Prayer is come to the Church of *Antioch* which is in *Syria*. From whence being sent bound with Chains becoming God, I salute the \* Churches; being not \* worthy to be *called* from thence, as being the least among them. Nevertheless by the Will of God I have been thought worthy *of this Honour*; not for that I think *I have deserved it*, but by the Grace of God: Which I wish may be perfect *to the End*, that through your Prayers I may attain unto God. And therefore that your Work may be fully accomplish'd both upon Earth and in Heaven; it will be fitting \* that your Church <sup>\* Vid. Voss. An. not. in loc.</sup> appoint some One to the Honour of God,

God, who being come as far as *Syria*, may rejoyce together with them that they are in Peace; and that they are again restored to their former Greatness, and have again received their proper Body. Wherefore I should think it a worthy Action to send some one from you with an *Epistle*, to congratulate with them their Peace in God; and that through your Prayers, they have now gotten to their Harbor. For in as much as ye are perfect your selves, you ought to think those things that are perfect. For when you are desirous to do well, God is ready to do well to you.

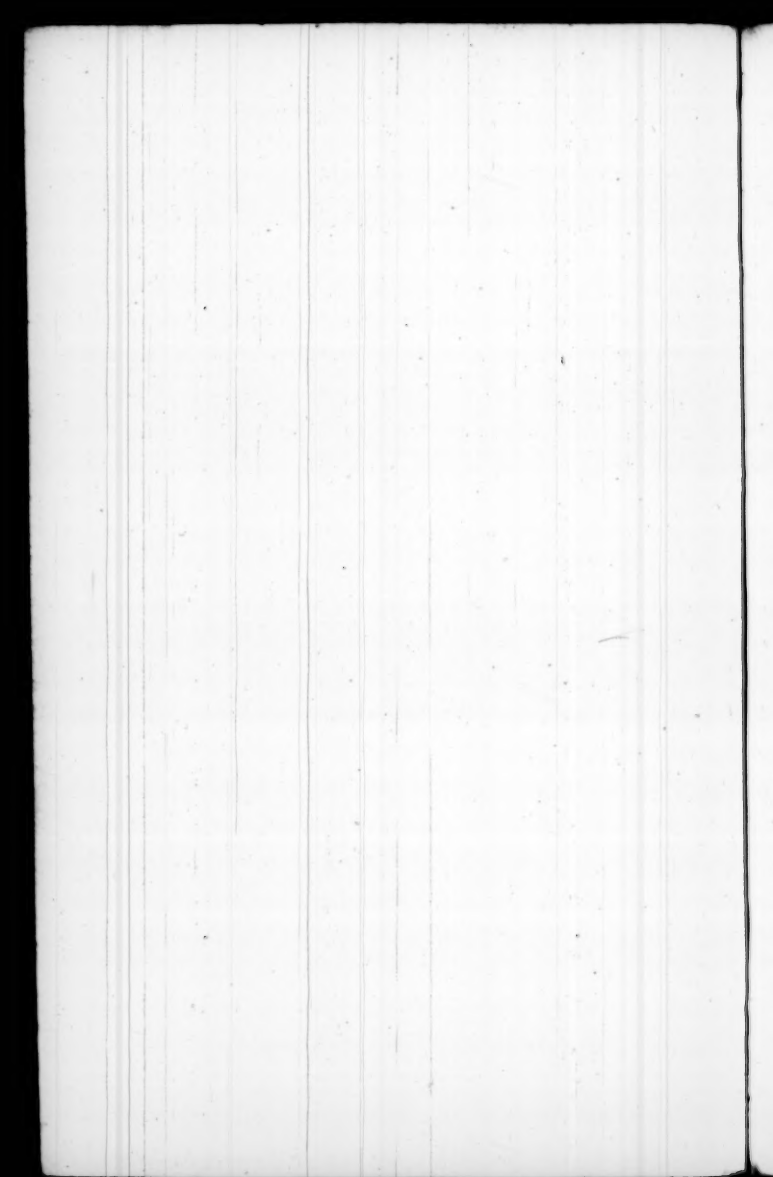
XII. THE Love of the Brethren that are at *Troas* salutes you; from whence I write to you by *Burrhus* whom ye sent with me, together with the *Ephesians* your Brethren; and who has in all things refresh'd me. And I would to God that all would imitate Him, as being an Exemplar of the Ministry of God. May *his* Grace fully reward Him. I salute your very worthy Bishop, and your Venerable Presbytery; and your  
Deacons,

Deacons, my Fellow-Servants ; and all of you in General, and every one in particular , in the Name of Jesus Christ, and in his Flesh and Blood ; in his Passion and Resurrection both Fleshly and Spiritually ; and in \* the \* Vid. Voss. An. not. in loc. Unity of God *with* you. Grace be with you, and Mercy, and Peace, and Patience, for Ever-more.

XIII. I SALUTE the Families of my Brethren , with their Wives and Children ; and the \* Virgins \* See for the reason of this Name. Voss. An. not. in loc. Add. Cotelier. ib. that are called Widows. Be strong in the Power of the Holy Ghost. *Philo*, who is present with me salutes you. I salute the House of *Tavias*, and pray that it may be strengthened in Faith and Charity, both of Flesh and Spirit. I salute *Alcé* my Well-beloved, \* together with the very Excellent \* See Voss. An. not. ex Epist. Interpol. *Daphnus*, and *Eutychus*, and all by Name. Farewel in the Grace of God.

To the SMYRNÆANS from TROAS.

T H E



---

THE  
EPISTLE  
OF  
St. *IGNATIUS*  
TO  
St. Polycarp.

---



# T H E C O N T E N T S.

## *The Salvation.*

Chap. I. **H**E Blesses God for the Firm Establishment of Polycarp in all Piety: And gives him many particular Directions for his Improvement in it.

II. But especially with Relation to the Church, over which he was Bishop.

III. IV. He continues his Advice to Him: And

V. Then teaches Him, what Advice he should give to Others.

VI. In which He continues; and especially inforces Unity among Themselves, and Subjection to their Bishop.

VII He accounts to Polycarp the Peace of His Church in Syria; And directs Him to appoint some Messenger to



## The Contents.

*go to Antioch ; to rejoyce with them  
on that Occasion.*

**VIII.** *He desires Polycarp to write to  
the same Effect to the Neighbouring  
Churches ; which He had not Him-  
self time to do.*

*And then concludes all with his Sa-  
lutation both to Polycarp, and to  
several of the Church of Smyr-  
na, by Name.*

---

T H E

THE  
EPISTLE  
OF  
St. IGNATIUS  
TO  
St. Polycarp,

IGNATIUS *who is also called*  
THEOPHORUS, *to Poly-*  
*carp Bishop of the Church which*  
*is at Smyrna; Their Over-*  
*seer, but rather himself Over-*  
*look'd by God the Father, and the*  
LORD *Jesus Christ; All*  
*Happiness.*

I. **H**AVING known that thy  
Will towards God, is fix'd  
as it were upon an im-  
moveable Rock; I exceedingly give  
O 3 Thanks,

\* Innocent.

|| Vid. 1 Cor.  
vii. 34.† Be at leisure  
to, &c.\* Vid. Voll. in  
loc. aliter Vet.  
Lat. Interpr.  
|| The Diseases.

Thanks, that I have been thought  
~~worthy to behold thy~~ \* Blessed Face,  
 in which may I always rejoyce in  
 God. *Wherefore* I beseech thee by  
 the Grace of God with which thou  
 art clothed, to press forward in thy  
 Course, and to exhort all *others* that  
 they may be saved. Maintain thy  
 Place, with all care || both of Flesh  
 and Spirit : Make it thy Endeavour  
 to *preserve* Unity in thy Church, than  
 which nothing is better. Bear *with*  
 all Men, even as the Lord *with* thee.  
 Support all in Love, as also thou dost.  
 † Pray *without* Ceasing: Ask more  
 Understanding than what thou al-  
 ready hast. Be Watchful, having  
 thy Spirit always awake. Speak to  
 every one \* according as God shall  
 enable Thee. Bear the || Infirmities  
 of all, as a perfect Combatant ;  
 Where the Labour is Great, the Gain  
 is so too.

II. IF thou shalt love the Good  
 Disciples, what Thank is it? But  
 rather do thou subject to thee those  
 that are infected, in Weakness. Every  
 Wound is not healed with the same  
 Plaister :

Plaister : If the accessions of the Disease be vehement, molifie them with  
\* soft Remedies ; Be in all things, \* *Superfusions.*

*Wise as a Serpent, but Harmlesse as a Dove.* Mar. x. 16.

For this cause thou art composed of Flesh and Spirit ; that thou mayst molifie those things that appear before thy Face : But as for those that are not seen, pray to God that he would reveal them unto thee, that so thou mayst be wanting in nothing, but mayst abound in every Gift.

The Times demand thee, as the Mariner the Winds, and he that is toss'd in a Tempest, the Haven *where he would be* ; that thou mayst attain unto God. Be Sober, as the Combatant of God : The † Crown *pro-*  
*posed to thee* is Immortality, and Life Eternal ; concerning which thou art fully perswaded. I will be thy Surety in all things, and my Bonds, which thou hast loved.

\* Vid. Voss.  
Annor. in loc.  
Collat. cum  
Coteler. ib.

III. LET not those that appear to be faithful, but teach other Doctrines, || disturb thee. Stand firm || *Amaze Thee.*  
and immovable, as an Anvil when it is beaten upon. It is the Part of

\* Beaten.

† More Studious,  
Diligent.

a brave Combatant *indeed*, to be  
 \* Wounded, and yet Overcome. And  
 especially we ought to endure all  
 things for Gods sake, that he may  
 bear with us. Be *every day* † Better  
 than other: Consider the Times;  
 and expect him, Who is above all  
 Time, Eternal, Invisible, though  
 for our sakes made Visible: Impal-  
 pible, and impassible, yet for  
 us subjected to Sufferings; endu-  
 ring all manner of ways for our  
*Salvation.*

|| Being well-  
settled.\* Vid. Afnor.  
Cotelier. in loc.

IV. LET not the Widows be  
 neglected: Be thou after God, their  
 Guardian. Let nothing be done but  
 with thy Knowledge and Consent:  
 Neither do thou any thing but ac-  
 cording to the Will of God, as also  
 thou dost, || with all Constancy. Let  
 your Assemblies be more frequent:  
 Inquire into all by Name. Overlook  
 not the Men and Maid Servants;  
 Neither let them be Puffed up; but  
 rather let them be more Subject, to  
 the Glory of God; that they may  
 obtain from him a better Liberty.  
 Let them not desire to \* be set free  
 from

from their present Service, that they be not Slaves to their own Lusts.

V. FLEE Evil \* Arts : Or ra- \* Or, *Trades*.  
 ther, make not any mention of them.  
 Say to my Sisters, that they love  
 the Lord; and be satisfied with their  
 own Husbands, both in the Flesh  
 and Spirit. † In like manner, Exhort † Note, that in  
 my Brethren in the Name of Jesus what follows,  
 Christ, that they Love their Wives, Ignatius speaks  
 even as the LORD the Church. If any not to Polycarp,  
 Man can remain in a Virgin State, but as in his  
 Name to the  
 People.  
 || to the Honour of Christ, let him || Vid. Annot.  
 remain without Boasting : But if he Vossii Coreler.  
 Boast, he is undone. And if he in loc.  
 thinks that he knows more than the  
 Bishop; he is ruined. But it be-  
 comes all such as are Married, whe-  
 ther Men or Women, to come to-  
 gether with the Consent of the Bi-  
 shop; that so their Marriage may be  
 according to Godliness, and not in  
 Lust. Let all things be done to the  
 Honour of God.

VI. HEARKEN unto the  
 Bishop, that God also may hearken  
 unto you. My Soul be Security for  
 them

them that Submit to their Bishop, with their Presbyters and Deacons. And may my Portion be together with theirs in God. Labour with one another ; Contend together, run together, suffer together ; sleep together, and rise together ; as the Stewards, and Assessors, and Ministers of God. Please him under whom ye War ; and from whom ye receive your Wages. Let none of you be found a Deserter ; But let your Baptism remain, as your Arms ; your Faith, as your Helmet ; your Charity, as your Spear ; your Patience, as your whole Armour. Let your Works be your || Charge, that so you may receive a suitable Reward. Be long-suffering therefore towards each other in Meekness ; as God is towards you. Let me have Joy of you in all things.

¶ That which is committed to your Custody, to keep secure.

VII. NOW forasmuch as the Church of *Antioch* in *Syria* is, as I am told, in Peace through your Prayers ; I also have been the more comforted in † their Security ; if so be that by suffering, I shall attain unto

¶ The Security of God.

unto God; that through your Prayer I may be found a faithful Disciple. It will be very fit, O most worthy *Polycarp*, to call a \* Select \* *Most becoming God.* Council, and chuse some One whom ye particularly Love, and who is patient of Labour; that he may be the Messenger of God: And that going unto *Syria*, he may Glorifie your incessant Love, to the Praise of God. A Christian has not the Power of Himself; but must be always at leisure for God's Service. Now this work, is both Gods and yours; when ye shall have perfected it. For I trust in your favour, that ye are ready to do all the good Work that is fitting for you in the LORD. Knowing therefore your earnest Affection to the Truth, I have exhorted you by this short Epistle.

VIII. BUT forasmuch as I have not been able to Write to all the Churches, because I must suddainly Sail from *Troas* to *Neapolis*; for so is the Command of those to whose pleasure I am subject; Do you write to the Churches that are near you, as  
being



\* *Footmen.*† Vid. Voss. in  
loc. *In the E-*  
*ternal Work.*‖ Ex Vet. In-  
terpr. Vid.  
Voss. in Annot.

being instructed in the Will of God, that they also may do in like manner. Let those that are able send \* Messengers; and let the rest send *their* Letters by those who shall be sent by you: That you may be Glorified† to all Eternity, of which you are worthy. I salute all by Name; particularly the Wife of *Epitropus*, with all her House, and Children. I salute *Attalus* my Well-beloved. I salute him, who shall be sent by you into *Syria*. Let my Grace be ever with him, ‖ and with *Polycarp* who sends him. I wish you all Happiness in our God, Jesus Christ; in whom continue in the Unity, and Protection of God. I salute *Alcé* my well-beloved. Farewell in the LORD.

To POLYCARP.

T H E

---

T H E  
MARTYRDOM'S

O F

St. IGNATIUS & St. POLYCARP:

Written by

Those who were *present* at  
their SUFFERING.

---

WILLIAM YR DOUGLAS

WILLIAM YR DOUGLAS

WILLIAM YR DOUGLAS

WILLIAM YR DOUGLAS

A  
RELATION  
OF THE  
**Martyrdom**  
OF  
St. I G N A T I U S.

**I**T was but a little while after  
TRAJANS advancement to the  
*Roman* Empire; that IGNATI-  
us, the Disciple of St. JOHN the Apo-  
stle and Evangelist, a Man in all  
things \* like unto the Apostles, go- \* *Apostolical.*  
vern'd the Church of *Antioch*. Who  
being scarcely able to mitigate the  
Storms of many Persecutions, before  
under *Domitian*; as a good Gover-  
nour, by the Helm of Prayer and  
Fasting, by the constancy of his  
Do—

\* Compare the  
Cotton MS.

Doctrine, and Spiritual \* Labour,  
opposed himself to the Flouds of the  
Adversary; fearing lest he should  
happen to overthrow any of those  
who either wanted Courage, or  
† were not so strong in the Faith,

† Magis Sim-  
plices. In MS.  
Cotton: Infir-  
mum.

*as was necessary at such a time.*

## II. WHEREFORE the Perse-

cution being at present somewhat  
abated, he rejoiced greatly at the  
firmness of his Church: Yet doubt-

¶ *As to himself.*

ed ¶ within himself, that he had not  
attain'd to a true love of Christ, nor

\* Order.

was come up to the \* Pitch of a Per-  
fect Disciple. For he thought, that  
the Confession which is made by

† More to a Fa-  
miliarity of the  
Lord.

Martyrdom, would bring him † to  
a yet more close and intimate Union  
with the LORD. Wherefore conti-

\* candle.

† Every mans  
Heart.

nuing a few years longer with the  
Church, and after the manner of a  
Divine \* Lamp, illuminating the  
† Hearts *of the faithful*, by the Ex-  
position of the Holy Scriptures; He  
attain'd to what he had *so long and*  
*earnestly* desired.

## III. For

III. FOR *Trajan* after the || Ninth year of his Empire, being lifted up with his Victory over the *Scythians* and *Dacians*, and many \* other Nations; and thinking that the Church of the Christians worshipping the true God, were yet wanting in an entire Obedience to him, unless he compelled them † after the manner of † all other People, to embrace the Service of Devils: He obliged all such as were the || Servants of the true God, with the Threats of Persecution, either to Sacrifice to the *Heathen Deities*, or to Die. Wherefore our \* Brave Souldier of Christ, being in \* fear for the Church of *Antioch*; was voluntarily brought before *TRAJAN*, who was at that time there, on his Way to *Armenia*, and the *Parthians*, against whom he was hastning.

|| See the Cotton MS. Corp Annot. Usser. N.1

\* Many and diverse.

† To enter into the Worship of Devils, with all Nations.

|| Worshippers.

\* Manly.

IV. BEING come into the presence of the Emperor *TRAJAN*; the Emperor ask'd him, saying: *What a wicked Wretch art Thou, thus to hasten to transgress our Commands, and to persuade others also to do likewise, to their*

|| Devil: Vid. Pearl. Vind. Ign. part 2. cap. 12.

P

De-

\* Devil.

† of those.

*Destruction ? Ignatius answered ; No one ought to call Theophorus \* after such a manner : forasmuch as all wicked Spirits are departed far from the Servants of God. But if because I am a trouble to those Evil-Spirits, you call me wicked, with reference to them, I confess the Charge : For having within me Christ the Heavenly King, I dissolve all the Snares † of the Devil.*

|| In our Breast:  
So MS. Cotton.  
To have an un-  
derstanding of  
the Gods : Or.  
The Gods ac-  
cording to Un-  
derstanding.  
So the other of  
A. B. Usher.  
Metaphraſtes  
joyns both toge-  
ther. Vid. An-  
not. Uſſer. n. 5.

V. TRAJAN reply'd: ] *And who is Theophorus ? Ignat. ] He who has Christ in his Breast. Trajan. ] And do not we then seem to thee to have the Gods || within us, who fight for us against our Enemies ? Ignat. ] You Err, in that you call the Evil-spirits of the Heathens GODS ; For there is but ONE GOD, who made Heaven and Earth, and the Sea, and all that are in Them : and ONE JESUS CHRIST his only Begotten Son ; whose favour may I enjoy.*

\* Vid Græc.  
Metaphr. n. 6.

VI. TRAJAN ] *His favour you say who was Crucified under Pontius Pilate. Ignat. ] His who Crucified Sin, with the Inventor of it ; and has put all the Power and Malice of the Devil under their*

*their Feet, who from their Hearts believe in Him. Trajan.] Dost thou then carry Christ within Thee? Ignat.] I do: for it is written, \* I will dwell in* <sup>\* 2 Cor. vi. 16</sup> *them, and walk in them. Then Trajan pronounced this Sentence against him; Forasmuch as Ignatius has confess'd, that he carries about within himself Him that was Crucified, we Command that he be carried Bound by Souldiers to the Great Rome, there to be thrown to the Beasts, for the || Enter- || Spectacle* *tainment of the People.*

VII. WHEN the Holy Martyr heard this Sentence, he cry'd out with Joy, *I thank thee O LORD, that thou hast vouchsafed to Honour me with a perfect love towards Thee; and hast made me to be put in Iron Bonds with thy Apostle Paul* Having said this, he with Joy put his Bonds about him: And having pray'd for the Church, and commended it with Tears unto the LORD; He was hurried away, like a Stout Ram, the Leader of a good Flock, by the Bruitish Soldiers, in order to his being carried to Rome, there to be devoured by the \* Savage <sup>\* Beasts eating raw flesh.</sup> Beasts.



VIII. WHEREFORE with much readines and Joy, out of his desire to Suffer, he left *Antioch*, and came to *Seleucia*; from whence he was to Sail towards *Rome*. And after a great deal of Toil, being come to *Smyrna*, he hastned with all possible Gladness to see the Holy *Polycarp* his \* Fellow-Scholar, who was Bishop there; For they had both of them been formerly the Disciples of Sr. *John*.

Co. Auditor.

IX. Being brought to him, and communicating with him in Spiritual Gifts, || *but especially* rejoycing in his Bonds: He intreated first of all the whole Church (for the Churches and Cities of *Asia* Honour'd this Holy Man by their Bishops and Priests, and Deacons, all hastning to him, if by any means they might † receive some part of his Spiritual Gift: ) but more particularly *Polycarp*, \* to contend *with God* in his behalf; that || being the more suddainly taken by the Beasts from the World, he might appear † before the Face of Christ.

† Partake of his Spiritual Blessing. MS. Cotton. Hear his Discourses: Metaphrast. \* To contend to his purpose. || That the more suddainly dis-appearing to the world. † To.

X. FROM

X. FROM *Smyrna*, he came to *Troas* : And being carried from thence to *Neapolis*, he passed by *Philippi*, through *Macedonia* on Foot, and came to *Epidamnus* ; where having got a Ship, he Sail'd cross the *Adriatick* Sea, and from thence going higher into the *Tyrrhone*, and passing by several Islands and Cities, at length he came to *Puteoli*. Which being shew'd to the Holy Man, he pressed by all means to Land there, being desirous to Walk from thence, after the Example of the Apostle *Paul*. Acts xxviii. 13, 14. But a Violent Wind arising, and † driving on the Ship, They would not suffer him so to do : Wherefore wishing all Happinefs to the Charity of the Brethren in that place, he sail'd forward. † The Ship being repell'd from the Forepart ; would not permit.

XI. AND the Wind continuing favourable to us, in one Day and a Night, we indeed were unwillingly hurried on, as sorrowing to think of the Separation from *this Holy Martyr* : But with reference to him it happened justly, according to his Wish, that he

P 3                      might

might go the sooner out of the World, and attain unto the LORD whom he loved. Wherefore sailing into the *Roman* Port, that the Vain Glory of the World might have an End, the Soldiers began to be offended at our slowness; but the Bishop with great Joy complied with their Hastiness.

XII. BEING therefore soon forced away from the Port, we forthwith met the Brethren; (for the report of what concern'd the Holy Martyr was spread abroad) who were full of Fear and Joy: For they rejoiced in that God had vouchsafed them the Company of *Theophorus*; but were afraid, when they consider'd, that such an One was brought *thither* to die. Now some of these he commanded to hold their peace, who were || *the most zealous for his safety*, and said; \* *THAT the People ought to be appeased, that they should not desire the destruction of the Just.* Whom presently knowing by the Spirit, and saluting all of them, he desired them that they would shew a true

¶ *Hist.*

\* *Quierare Plebem ad non expetere perdere Justum.*

true Love to him; disputing yet more with them than he had done in his Epistle, and perswading them not to Envy him who was hastning unto the LORD. And so, all the Brethren kneeling down, he pray'd to the Son of God in behalf of the Churches; that he would put a stop to the Persecution, and *increase* the Love of the Brethren towards each other: Which being done, he was with all haste led into the Amphi-Theatre, and there according to the Command of *Cæsar* before given, thrown to the Wild Beasts, that so their Boastings might come to an End. For it was then a very solemn day, call'd in the *Roman* Tongue the *xiii<sup>th</sup>* of the *Calends of January* upon which the People were more than ordinarily wont to be gather'd together.

|| See another Conjecture of Bishop Usher: Annot. n. 32.

XIII. IN this manner was he deliver'd to the Beasts by wicked Men: that so the desire of the Holy Martyr *Ignatius* might be accomplish'd, which \* he mention'd before-hand in his \* *Comp. Græc. Metaphrast. apud Coteler. Prov. x. 24.* Epistle; as it is written, *The Desire of the Righteous is Acceptable*; name-

\* According to what, praecurping in his Epistle, he desires to be made his proper fruition.

|| And buried. Vid. Annor. Ulfier. in A& Ignat. n. 37.

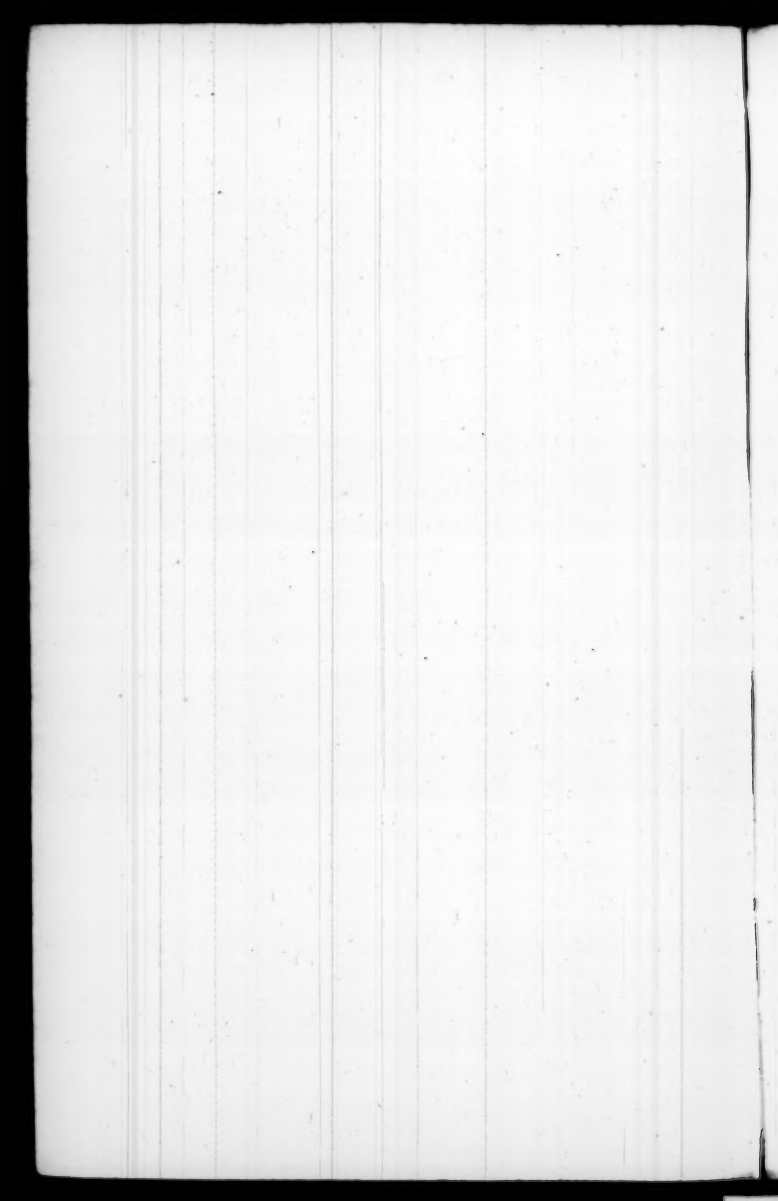
ly, That he might not be Burthen-  
some to any of the Brethren, for the  
gathering together of his Remains;  
but \* might be wholly devoured by  
them. For only the greater and  
harder of his Holy Bones remain'd;  
which were carried to *Antioch*; and  
there put up in a Case, as an in-  
estimable || Treasure.

XIV. NOW these things were  
done the Day before the *xiii<sup>th</sup>* of  
the Calends of *January*; *Syria* and  
*Synecius* being the second time Con-  
suls. Of which we our selves were  
Eye-witnesses with Tears: And be-  
ing the whole Night following in  
Watching, Praying to God with our  
bended Knees, that he would give  
us Weak Men some Assurance of  
what had been before done; it  
happened, that falling into a slum-  
ber, some of us on the suddain saw  
the Blessed *Ignatius* standing by us  
and embracing us; Others beheld  
him as it were sweating, as if he  
were just come from his great La-  
bour; and standing by the LORD  
with much Assurance, and in un-  
speakable Glory.

XV.

XV. Which when we saw, being filled with Joy, and glorifying God, the Giver of all good things; and assured of the Blessedness of the Saint; we \*thought fit to manifest unto you both the Day and the Time: That being assembled together according to the time of his Martyrdom, we may communicate with the Combatant, and most valiant Martyr of Christ; Who trod under foot the Devil, and bare down his Snares even unto the end; Glorifying our LORD Jesus Christ in his Venerable and Holy Memory: To whom, and with whom, All Glory and Power be to the Father, with the Blessed Spirit in the Holy Church for ever and ever, *Amen.*

|| Bratificantes  
Sanctum, Pro-  
nouncing him  
Blessed.  
\* Having ma-  
nifested or  
made known.



The Circular  
**EPISTLE**  
 OF THE  
 Church of SMYRNA  
 Concerning the

**Martyrdom**

OF  
 St. POLYCARP.

*The Church of God which is at  
 SMYRNA, to the Church  
 of God which is at \* PHILA-  
 DELPHIA; and to all the  
 Other || Assemblies of the Holy  
 Catholick Church, in every Place;  
 Peace, and Love from God the*

*Fa-*

\* Philomelia.  
 Vid. Annot.  
 Ulf. n. r. Comp.  
 Ver. lat. Interpr.  
 & Euseb. Hist.  
 Eccles. liv. c.  
 || Παρισιας.



*A Relation of the  
Father, and our Lord Jesus  
Christ, be multiplied.*

I. **W**E have written to you, Brethren, both of what concerns the other Martyrs, but especially the Blessed *Poly-carp*, who by his † Sufferings put an end to the Persecution; setting as it were, his Seal to it. For almost all things that went before, were done, that the LORD might shew us from Above, a Martyrdom truly such as became the Gospel. For he expected to be deliver'd to the *Persecution*; Even as the LORD also do's, that we should become the Followers of || his Example: Considering not only what is profitable for our selves, but also for our Neighbours *Advantage*. For it is the part of a true and perfect Charity, to desire, not only that a Mans self should be saved, but also all the Brethren, together with him.

† *Martyrdom.*

|| *Him.*

† *Martyrdoms.*

II. **T**HE † Sufferings then of all the other Martyrs, were Blessed and Gene-

Generous ; which they underwent according to the Will of God. For so it \* becomes us, who are more Religious than others, to refer the Power and Ordering of all things unto Him. And indeed who can chuse but admire the greatness of their Mind, and that admirable Patience, and Love of their Master ; *which then appeared in them?* Who when they were so flea'd with Whipping, that the frame and structure of their Bodies were laid open to their very inward Veins and Arteries ; nevertheless endured it. And when all that beheld them pitied and lamented them ; yet shew'd so great a Generosity of Mind, that not one of them let so much as a Sigh or a Groan escape them : † Plainly shewing, that those Holy Martyrs of Christ, at the very same time that they were thus tormented, were absent from the Body ; Or rather, that the LORD stood by them, and conversed with them. Wherefore being supported by the Grace of Christ, they despised all the torments of the World ; By the Sufferings of an hour,

re-

\* Vid. Correl.  
Cotelier. & V.  
let. in Anno  
Euseb. l. iv. c.  
15. p. 61.

† shewing as  
all of us.

redeeming themselves from Everlasting Punishment. *For this cause*, even the Fire of their Cruel and Barbarous Executioners seemed Cold to them;

|| *For they had before their Eyes to escape.*

|| whilst they hoped hereby to escape that Fire which is Eternal, and shall never be extinguish'd; And beheld with the Eyes of Faith, those good things which are reserved for them that endure *to the End*; which neither Ear has heard, nor Eye seen, nor have they entred into the Heart of Man.

1 Cor. ii. 9.

\* *Shewn.*

But to them they were now \* revealed by the LORD; as who were no longer Men, but already become Angels. In like manner, Those who were condemned to the Beasts, being kept a long time in Prison, underwent many cruel Torments: Being forced to lie upon † sharp Spikes laid under their Bodies; and tormented with divers other sorts of punishments; that so if it were possible, the Tyrant by the length of their Sufferings, might have brought them to Deny Christ.

† See Bishop Usher's Annot. n. 7. Euseb. l. iv. c. 15. & in eum Annot. Valesii p. 62. D.

III. FOR *indeed*, the Devil did invent many things against them:  
But

But thanks be to God, he was not able to prevail over All. For the Brave GERMANICUS strengthen'd \* those that fear'd, by his Patience ; \* *Their fearful-  
ness.* And fought Gloriously with the Beasts. And when the Proconsul would have perswaded him, telling him, that he should consider his Age, and spare himself ; He pull'd the Wild Beast to him, and provoked him, being desirous the more quickly to be deliver'd from a Wicked and Unjust || World. Upon this, the || *Life of them.* whole multitude wondring at the Courage of the Holy and Pious Race of Christians ; cryed out, *Take away those wicked Wretches, let POLYCARP be look'd out.*

IV. THEN one named QUINTUS a *Phrygian*, being newly come from thence, seeing the Beasts, was afraid. This was he who forced himself and some others, to present themselves of their own Accord, to *the Trial*. Him therefore the Proconsul perswaded with many Promises, to Swear and Sacrifice. For which Cause, Brethren, we do not com-

commend those who offer themselves to *Persecution* ; and especially seeing the Gospel teaches no such thing.

V. BUT the most Admirable POLYCARP, when he first heard that *he was called for*, was not at all concern'd at it ; but resolv'd to tarry in the City. Nevertheless, he was at the last perswaded, at the desire of many, to go out of it. He departed therefore into a little Village, not far distant from the City, and there ~~carried~~ carried with a few about him ; doing nothing Night nor Day, but praying for all Men, and for the Churches which were in all the World, according to his usual Custom. And as he was praying, he saw a Vision three days before he was taken ; and behold, the Pillow under his Head seem'd to him on Fire. Whereupon, turning to those that were with him, he said Prophetically ; \* *That he should be Burnt alive.*

\* *I must be.*

VI. NOW when those who were to take him drew near, he departed into another Village ; and immediately

ately they who sought him, came thither. And when they found him not, they seized upon two young Men *that were there*; One of which, being tormented, confess'd. For it was impossible the Holy Man should be concealed; forasmuch as they who betray'd him, were his own Domestic's: So the Officer, who is also called || *Cleronomus*, HEROD by name; hastned to bring him into the Lifts: That so POLYCARP might receive his proper Portion, being made partaker of Christ; and they that betray'd him, undergo the punishment of *Judas*.

|| *Justice of the Peace.* Vid. Usser. in loc. num. 14, 15. Valef. in Euseb. p. 53. D.

VII. THE Serjants therefore and Horsemen taking the young Lad along with them, departed about Supper-time, being *Friday*; with their Usual Arms, as it were against a Thief or a Robber. And being come to the place where he was, about the Close of the Evening, they found him lying down, in a little upper Room; from whence he could easily have escaped into another place, but he would not, saying, *The Will*

Q of

of the LORD be done. Wherefore when he heard that they were come to the House, he went down, and † deliver'd himself unto them. And as they all wonder'd at his Age and Constancy; some of them began to say; *Was there need of all this Care to take such an Old Man?* Then presently he order'd, that the same hour there should be somewhat got ready for them, that they might Eat and Drink their fill: Desiring them with-all, that they would give him one Hours Liberty *the while*, to pray || without disturbance. And when they had permitted him, he stood praying, being full of the Grace of God; so that he ceased not for two whole Hours, to the Admiration of all that heard him: Insomuch, that many of the *Souldiers* began to Repent, that they were come out against so Holy an Old Man.

† Discoursed.

\* Why was all this Diligence.  
Vid Annot. 20  
Usser. in loc.

|| Freely.

VIII, AS soon as he had done his Prayer, in which he remember'd All Men, whether little or great, Honourable or Obscure, that had at any time \* been acquainted with him; and

\* Comp. Ensch.  
liv. c. 15. p. 106.  
B. Edit. Valef.  
& Annot. Valef.  
p. 62. C.

and with them the whole Catholick Church, over All the World; the time being come that he was to depart, the *Guards* set him up upon an Ass, and so brought him into the City, being the Day of the Great Sabbath. But *Herod* the Chief Officer, with his Father *Nicetes*, met him in a Chariot. And having taken him up to them, and set him by them, they began to persuade him saying, *What harm is there in it, to say, Lord Cæsar and sacrifice* (with the rest that is usually said on such occasions) *and so be safe?* But POLYCARP, at first, answered them not: Whereupon they continuing to urge him, he answered, *I shall not do what you would persuade me to.* So being out of all Hope of prevailing with him; they began first || to rail at him; and then || *They spake bitter words.* with Violence threw him out of the Chariot; insomuch that he hurt his Thigh with † the fall. But he without † *Getting out of the Chariot.* being the least moved at it, went on readily with all diligence, as if he had received no harm at all; and so was brought to the Lists, where there was so great a Tumult, that no Body could be heard.



IX. AS he was going into the Lifts, there came a Voice from Heaven to him ; *Be strong, POLYCARP, and quit thy self like a Man.* Now no Man saw who it was that spake to him ; but for the Voice, several of our Brethren that were present, heard it. And as he was brought in, there was a great disturbance when they heard how that POLYCARP was taken. For the rest, being come near, the Proconsul asked him, *Whether he was POLYCARP ?* Who confessing that *He was ;* He persuaded him to deny *the Faith,* saying, *Reverence thy Old Age,* with many other things of the like Nature, as their Custom is ; concluding thus, *Swear by Cæsar's Fortune. Repent, and say ; Take away the Wicked.* Then POLYCARP, looking with a stern Countenance upon the whole Multitude , that was gathered together , of wicked Gentiles ; and shaking his Hand at them, looked up to Heaven, and groaning, said, *Take away the Wicked.* But the Proconsul, insisting and saying, *Swear,*  
and

*and I will set thee at Liberty; Reproach Christ.* POLYCARP replied, *Eighty and six years have I now served Christ, and he has never done me the least wrong: How then can I Blaspheme my King and my Saviour?*

X. A N D when the Proconsul nevertheless still insisted, saying, *Swear by the Genius of Cæsar.* He answered, *Seeing thou art so vainly urgent with me that I should swear, as thou call'st it, by the Genius of Cæsar, seeming as if thou didst not know what I am; Hear me freely professing it to thee, that I am a Christian.* But if thou farther desirest an account what Christianity is; appoint a day, and thou shalt hear it. The Proconsul replied, *Persuade the People.* POLYCARP answered, *To thee have I offered to give a Reason of my Faith: For so are we taught to pay all Due Honour, such only excepted as would be hurtful to our selves, to the Powers and Authorities which are ordained of God. But for the People, I esteem them not worthy, that I should give any account of my Faith to them.*

† change my  
mind. Vid. Va-  
lef. Annor. in  
Euseb. p. 63.  
C. D.

XI. THE Proconsul continued, and said unto him, *I have wild Beasts ready, to those I will cast thee except thou repent.* He answered, *Call for them, then: For I am not at all disposed to † repent from Good to Evil.* But it is honourable to turn from those things that are Dishonest, to what is Just and Good. The Proconsul added; *Seeing thou despisest the Wild Beasts, I will cause thee to be devoured by Fire, unless thou shalt repent.* POLYCARP answered, *Thou threatnest me with Fire which burns for an hour, and so is extinguished; but knowest not the Fire of the Future Judgment; and of that Eternal Punishment, which is reserved for the Ungodly. But why tarriest thou? Bring forth what thou wilt.*

† Was filled.

¶ As troubled  
or disturbed.

XII. HAVING said this, and many other things of the like Nature, he was filled with Confidence and Joy, insomuch that his very Countenance † shone with Grace: So that he did not only not let it fall || with any confusion at what was spoken to him; but on the contrary, the  
Pro-

Proconsul was struck with Astonishment; and sent his Cryer into the Middle of the Lists, to proclaim three several times; POLYCARP *has confessed himself to be a CHRISTIAN.* Which being done by the Cryer, the whole Multitude both of the Gentiles and of the Jews which dwelt at *Smyrna*, being full of Fury, cry'd out with a loud Voice; *This is the Doctor of \* Asia; The Father of the Christians, and the Overthrower of Our Gods. He that has taught so many not to sacrifice, nor pay any Worship to the Gods.* And saying this, they cryed out, and desired *Philip* the † Asiarch, that he would let loose a Lion against POLYCARP. But *Philip* replied, that it was not lawful for him to do so, because that kind of Spectacles was already over. Then it pleased them to cry out with one Consent, that POLYCARP *should be burnt alive.* For so it was necessary that the Vision should be fulfilled which was made manifest unto him by his Pillow, when seeing it on fire as he was praying, he turned about and said Prophetically to the Faithful that

\* So Eusebius  
Ruffin. Vet. In-  
terpr. Lat. &c.  
Vid. Ulfers.  
Nox. 44.

† Who was  
President of the  
Spectacles; the  
Chief Priest for  
that year. See  
Ulfers. Annor.  
Num. 45. Volcf.  
in Euseb. p.  
53, 64.

were with him ; *I must be burnt alive.*

XIII. THIS therefore was done with greater speed than it was spoke ; The whole Multitude instantly gathering together Wood and Faggots out of the Shops and Baths : The Jewsespecially, according to their Custom, with all readiness assisting them in it. When the Fewel was ready POLYCARP laying aside all his upper Garments, and undoing his Girdle, tryed also to pull off his Shoes, which aforetime he was not wont to do ; forasmuch as still every one of the Christians that was about him contended who should soonest touch his Flesh. † For he was truly adorn'd by his good Conversation with \* all kind of Pity, even before his Martyrdom. *This being done*, they presently put about him such || Things as were necessary to prepare him for the † Fire. But when they would have nailed him *to the Stake*, he said ; *Let me alone as I am : For he who has given me strength to endure the Fire, will also enable me without your securing*

*me*

† Vid. aliter apud Euseb. l. iv. c. 15. Et in eum Valef. Annor. p. 64.

\* With every thing that was good.

|| Instruments.

† The Pile that was to burn him, See Valef. in Euseb. p. 64. b.

*me by Nails to stand without moving in it.*

XIV. WHEREFORE they did not nail him, but only tied him *to it*. But he having put his Hands behind him, and being bound as a Ram *chosen* out of a Great Flock, for an Offering, and prepared to be a Burnt Sacrifice, acceptable unto God: look'd up to Heaven and said; O LORD God Almighty, the Father of thy Well-beloved, and Blessed Son Jesus Christ, by whom we have received the Knowledge of thee; the God of Angels and Powers, and of every Creature, and especially of the whole Race of Just Men who live in thy presence! I give thee hearty thanks that thou hast vouchsafed to bring me to this Day, and to this Hour; that I should have a part in the Number of thy Martyrs, and in the Cup of thy Son Christ, to the Resurrection of Eternal Life, both of Soul and Body, in the Incorruption of the Holy Ghost. Among which may I be accepted this Day before thee, as a fat and acceptable Sacrifice; as thou the true God, with whom is no falsehood, hast both before ordained, and manifested

|| By Euseb. &  
Vet. Lat. In-  
terpr.

fested unto me, and also hast now fulfilled it. For this, and for all things else, I praise thee, I bless thee, I glorifie thee || with the Eternal, and Heavenly Jesus Christ thy Beloved Son; with whom to Thee and the Holy Ghost, be Glory both now, and to all succeeding Ages, Amen.

XV. HE had no sooner pronounced aloud, AMEN, and finish'd his Prayer, but they who were appointed to be his Executioners, lighted the Fire. And when the Flame began to blaze to a very great heighth, Behold a Wonderful Miracle appear'd, to us who had the Happiness to see it; And who were reserved by Heaven, to report to others what had happen'd. For the Flame making a kind of Arch, like the Sail of a Ship against a full Wind, encompassed as in a Circle the Body of the Holy Martyr. Who stood in the Midst of it, not as if his Flesh were burnt, but as Bread that is baked, or as Gold or Silver glowing in the Furnace. Moreover, so sweet a Smell came from it, as if Frankinsense, or some rich Spices had been smoaking there.

XVI.

XVI. A T length when those wicked Men saw that his Body could not be consumed by the Fire, they commanded the || Executioner to go near to him and stick his Dagger in him : Which being accordingly done there came forth † so great a Quantity of Blood, as even extinguish'd the Fire ; and raised an Admiration in all the People, to consider what a difference there was between the Infidels and the Elect. One of which this great Martyr POLYCARP most certainly was ; being in our Times a truly Apostolical and Prophetical Teacher ; and Bishop of the Catholick Church which is at *Smyrna*. For every Word that went out of his Mouth either has been already fulfill'd, or *in its due time* will be accomplished.

|| Κομψήτορα.  
Vid. Annot.  
Usser. num. 75.  
Vales. under-  
stands by it one  
of the Launce-  
Men that were  
set to kill the  
Beasts, if they  
grew unruly, at  
these kind of  
Spectacles, Vid.  
in Euseb. p.  
64. C.

† So Eusebius.

XVII. B U T when the Emulous, and Envious, and Wicked Adversary of the Race of the Just, saw the Greatness of his Martyrdom ; and consider'd how irreprehensible his Conversation had been from the beginning ;



ginning ; and how he was now crown'd with the Crown of Immortality, having without all Controversy received his Reward : He took all possible Care that not the least Remainder of his Body should be taken away by us ; although many desired to do it, and to be made Partakers of his Holy Flesh. And to that end he suggested it to *Nicetas* the Father of *Herod* and Brother of *Alcè* to go to the Governour, and hinder him from giving us his Body to be buried. *Least*, says he, *for- saking him that was Crucified, they should begin to worship this POLYCARP.* And this he said at the Suggestion and Instance of the Jews ; who also watch'd us, that we should not take *any part* of him out of the Fire : Not || considering, that neither is it possible for us ever to forsake Christ, who suffer'd for the Salvation of all such as shall be saved throughout the whole World, *the Righteous, for the Un- godly* ; nor worship any other besides him. For him indeed, as being the Son of God, we do adore : But for the Martyrs, we worthily love them,

|| *Knowing.*

as the Disciples and \* Followers of <sup>Imitators.</sup> our LORD, and upon the account of their exceeding great Affection towards † their Master, and their King. † *Own proper.* Of whom may we also be made Companions, and Fellow-disciples.

XVIII. THE Centurion therefore seeing the Contention of the Jews, put his Body into the Midst of the Fire, and so consum'd it. After which we taking up his Bones more precious than the richest Jewels, and try'd above Gold, disposed of them where it was fitting. Where being gather'd together as we have Opportunity, with Joy and Gladness, the LORD shall grant unto us to celebrate the Anniversary of his Martyrdom, both in Memory of what he suffer'd, and for the Exercise and Preparation of those that may hereafter *suffer*.

XIX. SUCH was the Passion of the Blessed POLYCARP; who tho' he was the Twelfth of those who together with those of *Philadelphia* suffered Martyrdom, is yet alone chiefly had in Memory of all Men:  
Info-

† *Martyrdom.*¶ Vid. Cotelier.  
in Marg. & Vet.  
Lat. Interpr.

Inſomuch that he is ſpoken of, by the very Gentiles themſelves in every Place; as having been not only an Eminent Teacher, but alſo a Glorious Martyr. Whoſe † Death all deſire to imitate, as having been every way conformable to the Goſpel of Chriſt. For having by Patience overcome the unjuſt Governour, and ſo received the Crown of Immortality; he now together with the Apoſtles and all other Righteous Men, *who have gone before*, with great Triumph, glorifies God even the Father; and bleſſes our LORD the Governor both of our ¶ Souls and Bodies; and Shepherd of the Catholick Church which is over all the Earth.

XX. WHEREAS therefore ye deſired that we would at large declare to you what was done; we have by this preſent *Epistle* given you a ſummary account of it by our Brother *Marcus*: Having therefore your ſelves read this *Epistle*, you may do well, to ſend it forward to the Brethren that are farther off; that they alſo may glorifie

risie God who makes such Choice of his own Servants : And is able to bring all of us by his Grace and Help to his Eternal Kingdom, through his only begotten Son Jesus Christ ; To whom be Glory, and Honour, and Power, and Majesty, for Ever and Ever, *Amen.* Salute all the Saints ; they that are with us salute you : With *Evaristus*, who wrote this *Epistle*, and his whole House.

XXI. NOW the Suffering of *Polycarp* was the second Day of the Month *Xanthicus* ; viz. before the viith of the Calends of † *May* ; being the Great Sabbath about viii a Clock. He was taken by *Herod, Philip* the Trallian, being \* *High-Priest* ; *Statius Quadratus* Proconsul ; But our Saviour Christ reigning for evermore : To him be Honour, Glory, Majesty , and an Eternal Throne, from Generation to Generation, *Amen.*

† Rather of April: See Annot. Usser. n. 103. & Pearf. on Chron. Diff. 11. c. 18. n. 4. —  
\* Agarch.

XXII. WE wish you, Brethren, all Happiness ; by living according to the

the Rule of the Gospel of Jesus Christ:  
 With whom, Glory be to God the  
 Father, and the Holy Spirit, for the  
 Salvation of his Chosen Saints. || Af-  
 ter whose Example the Blessed PO-  
 LYCARP suffer'd ; at whose Feet may  
 we be found in the Kingdom of Jesus  
 Christ.

|| *As the Blessed,*  
*&c.*

A N  
ADVERTISEMENT

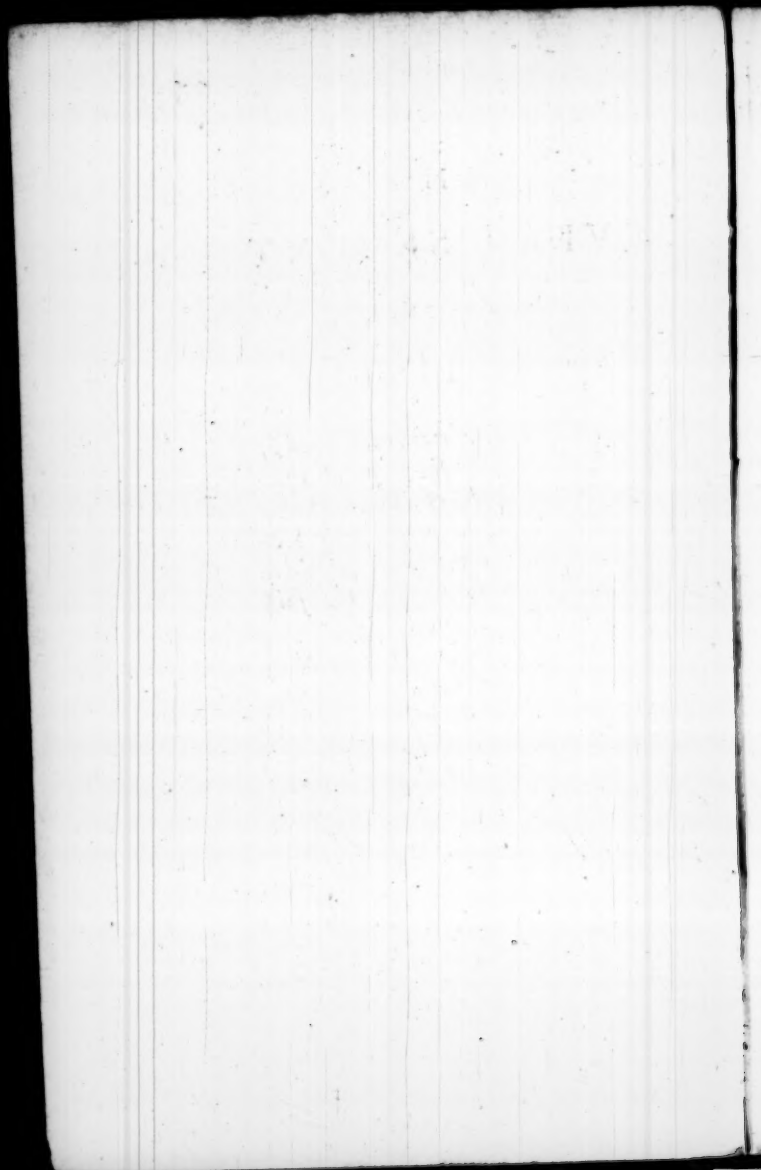
Relating to the  
Foregoing EPISTLE

**T**HIS Epistle was transcribed by Caius out of the Copy of IRENEUS the Disciple of POLYCARP; who also lived and conversed with Irenæus. And I Socrates transcrib'd it at Corinth, out of the Copy of the said Caius. Grace be with All.

Ad finem Exempl. Usher. p. 30,

*After which I Pionius again wrote it from the Copy before mentioned; Having search'd it out by the Revelation of Polycarp, who directed me to it; As also I shall declare in what follows: Having gather'd these Things together, now almost corrupted through process of Time; that Jesus Christ our LORD may also gather me together with his Elect: To whom with the Father, and the Holy Ghost, be Glory for Ever and Ever, Amen.*

R THE



THE  
Genuine Remains  
OF THE  
Apostolical Fathers.

---

PART II.

---

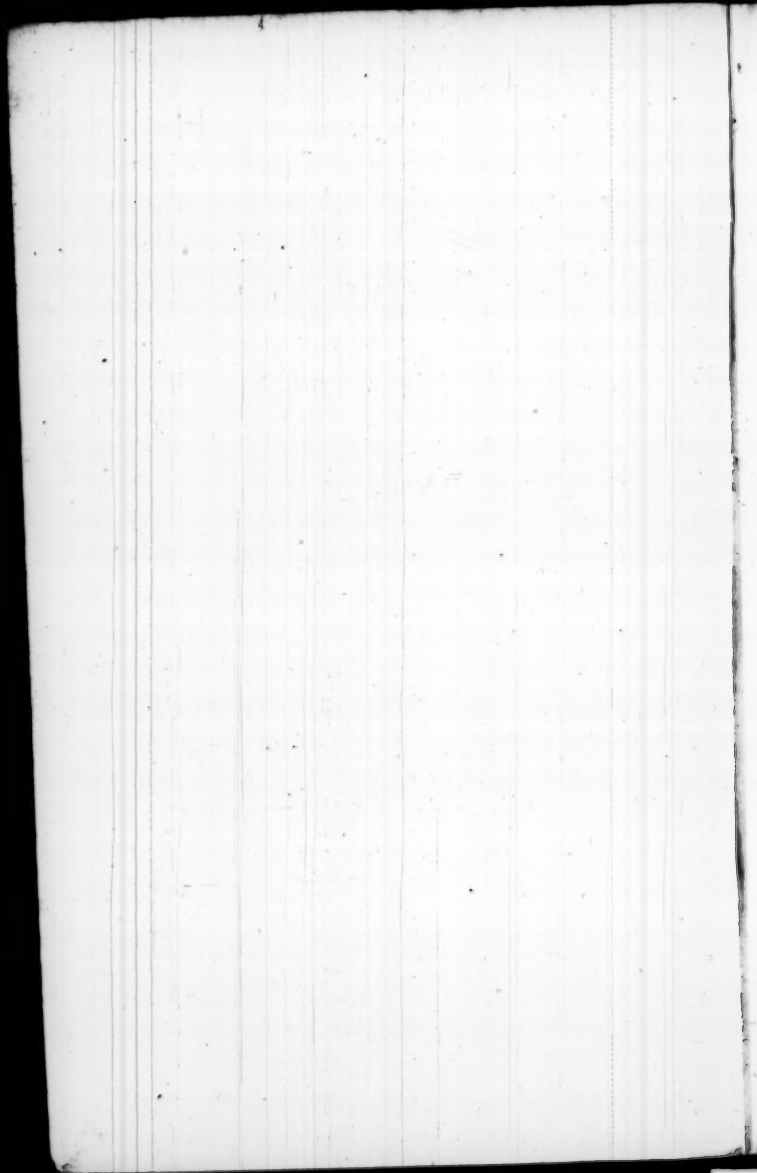
In which are Comprised

1. The *Epistle* of St. BARNABAS.
  2. The *Shepherd* of HERMAS. And,
  3. The *Second Epistle* of St. CLEMENT  
to the CORINTHIANS.
- 

L O N D O N,

Printed for R. Sare at *Grays-Inn* Gate in  
*Holborn*, 1693.





---

**T H E**  
**Catholick Epistle**  
**O F**  
**St. *BARNABAS*.**

---

Office of the

State of New York

1

---

# T H E C O N T E N T S.

---

- Numb. I. **T**HE Salutation, and  
Preface to the follow-  
ing Epistle.
- II. III. *That God has abolish'd the legal  
Sacrifices, to introduce the Spiritual  
Righteousness of the Gospel.*
- IV. *The Prophecies of Daniel con-  
cerning the Ten Kings; and the  
Coming of Christ.*
- V, VI. *That Christ was to suffer;  
Proved from the Prophecies con-  
cerning him.*
- VII. *The Scape-Goat, an Evident  
Type of This.*
- VIII. *The Red-Heifer, another Type  
of Christ.*
- IX. *Of the Circumcision of the Ears:  
And how in the first Institution of  
that Ceremony, ABRAHAM Mysti-  
cally foretold Christ by Name.*
- X. *That the Commands of Moses con-  
cerning Clean and Unclean Beasts,  
&c. were all designed for a Spiritual  
Signification.*

## The Contents.

XI, XII. Baptism and the Cross of Christ, foretold in Figures under the Law.

XIII. The Promise of God not made to the Jews only, but to the Gentiles also.

XIV. And fulfilled to us by Jesus Christ.

XV. That the Sabbath of the Jews, was but a Figure of a more Glorious Sabbath to come.

XVI. Their Temple, of the Spiritual Temples of God.

XVII. The Conclusion of the former Part of this Epistle.

XVIII. He goes on to the other Part, that which relates to Practice: Which he divides into Two Considerations; the former, of the Way of Light; the latter, of the Way of Darkness.

XIX. Of the Way of Light; being a Summary of what a Christian is to do, that he may be happy for ever.

XX. Of the Way of Darkness; that is, what kind of Persons shall be for ever cast out of the Kingdom of God?

XXI. The Close of All: Being an Earnest Exhortation to them to live so that they may be Blessed to all Eternity.

THE

---

T H E  
Catholick Epistle  
O F  
St. *BARNABAS*.

*ALL Happiness to you my Sons  
and Daughters, in the Name of  
our LORD Jesus Christ,  
who loved us in Peace.*

I. **H**AVING perceived a large  
abundance of the Great and  
|| Excellent † Righteous- || *Honestarum.*  
ness of God to be in you, I exceed- † *Aequitatum.*  
ingly rejoyced in your Blessed and  
admirable || Temper, that ye had || *Spiritibus.*  
so *worthily* received the Grace that  
was \* given to you. For which \* *Natural.*  
cause I am full of Joy, hoping to  
be

|| *Honest.*

† *Equity of the Lord.*

\* *Vid. Annot. Voss. in loc.*

|| *Life : See below : Chap. iv. pag. 268.*

|| *Constitutions of the Lord.*

be *shortly* set at Liberty ; in as much as I truly see a Spirit infused into you, from the || Blessed Fountain of God. Wherefore having this Perswasion, and being fully convinced that since I have begun to speak unto you, I have had a more than ordinary Good Success in the way of † Righteousness, which is in Christ ; I also, \* Brethren, suppose my self to love you above my own || Soul : Because the Greatness of Faith and Charity dwelleth in him, as also the Hope of that Life which is to come. Wherefore considering this, that if I shall take care to communicate to you a part of what I have received, it shall turn to my Reward, that I have served such as you are in Spiritual Things : I gave diligence to write in a few Words unto you ; that together with your Faith, your Knowledge also may be Perfect. There are therefore Three || Sorts of things to be considered *in what relates* to the LORD ; the Hope of Life ; the Beginning, and the Completion of it. For the Lord has *both* declared unto

to us, by the Prophets, those things that have been done ; and † open'd <sup>† Given us to know.</sup> to us the Beginnings of those that were to come. Wherefore, it will behove us, as he has spoken, to come \* with all readiness, and as is fitting to his Altar. I therefore not <sup>\* The more boldly and deeply.</sup> as a Teacher, but as one of you, will endeavour to lay a few things before you, by which you may || on <sup>|| in many things.</sup> many accounts become the more Joyful.

II. SEEING then the Days are exceeding Evil, and the Adversary has got the Power of this Present † World ; we ought to give the more <sup>† Age.</sup> diligence to enquire into the \* just <sup>\* Equities.</sup> ways of the LORD. Now the Assistants of our Faith are Fear <sup>Comp. Græc.</sup> and Patience ; Our Fellow-Combatants ; Long-Suffering and Continence. Whilst these remain Pure in what relates unto the LORD, Wisdom, and Knowledge, and Prudence, and Understanding, rejoyce together with them. For God has manifested to us by all the Prophets, that he has no Occasion for our Sacrifices,



Isaiah i. 11.

— 12.

— 13.

— 14.

Jer. vii. 22.

— 23.

Zach. viii. 17.

crifices, or Burnt-Offerings or Oblations; saying: *To what purpose is the Multitude of your Sacrifices unto me saith the LORD. I am full of the Burnt Offerings of Rams, and the Fat of fed Beasts; and I delight not in the Bloud of Bullocks, or of Lambs, or of He-Goats. When ye come to appear before me; Who hath required this at your hand to tread my Courts? Bring no more vain Oblations, Incense is an Abomination unto me: your new Moons and Sabbaths, the Calling of Assemblies I cannot away with, it is iniquity, even the Solemn Meeting: Your new Moons and your appointed Feasts, my Soul hateth. These things therefore hath God abolished, that the New Law of our LORD Jesus Christ, which is without the yoke of any such Necessity, might have an Offering becoming Men. For so the Lord saith again to those heretofore; Did I at all command your Fathers when they came out of the Land of Egypt concerning Burnt Offerings or Sacrifices? But this I commanded them, saying, Let none of you imagine Evil in your Hearts against his Neighbour, and love*

love no False-Oath, Forasmuch then as we are not without Understanding, we ought to apprehend the Design || of our Merciful Father. *|| Of the Mercy of our Father.* For he speaks to us, being willing to seek out us who are in Error, and shew us how we may come to him. And therefore he thus bespeaks us, *The Sacrifice of God [is a Psal. L. 15. broken Spirit,] A broken and Contrite Heart God will not despise.* Wherefore, Brethren, we ought the more diligently to enquire after *those things that belong to our Salvation, that the Adversary may not have any Entrance into us, and turn us aside from the Way of Life.*

III. WHEREFORE he again speaketh to them, concerning these things: *Ye shall not fast as ye do this* *Isaiah Lviij. 4.* *day, to make your Voice to be heard on High. Is it such a Fast that I have chosen? A Day for a Man to afflict his Soul? Is it to bow down his Head like a Bulrush, and to spread Sackcloth and Asbes under him? Wilt thou call this a Fast and an acceptable Day to the LORD? But to us he saith on this*

- 6. this wise. *Is not this the Fast that I have chosen, to loose the Bands of Wickedness, to undo the heavy Burdens, and to let the Oppressed go Free; and that ye break every Yoke? Is it not*
- 7. *to deal thy Bread to the Hungry, and that thou bring the Poor that are cast out to thy House? When thou seest the Naked that thou cover him, and that thou hide not thy self from thine own Flesh? Then shall thy Light break forth as the Morning, and thy Health shall spring forth speedily; and thy Righteousness shall go before thee, the Glory of the LORD shall be thy Rere-ward. Then shalt thou call and the LORD shall answer; thou shalt cry and he shall say, Here I am: If thou put away from the midst of thee the Yoke, the putting forth of the*
- 8. *Finger, and speaking Vanity. And if thou draw out thy Soul to the Hungry; and satisfy the afflicted Soul. In this therefore, Brethren, God has mani-*
- 9. *fested his † Fore-knowledge and Mercy to us; because the People which he has purchased to his Be-*
- 10. *loved Son were to believe in || Sin-*
- cerity; and therefore he has shewn*  
*these*

† Providence.

|| Simplicity.

*these things* to All of us, that we should not run as Profelytes to \* *the* \* *Their*. *Jewish Law.*

IV. WHEREFORE it is necessary that searching diligently into these † Matters we should write to you what may serve to keep you whole. To which end let us flee from every Evil Work, and hate the Errors of the present Time, that we may be || Happy in that which is to come. Let us not give ourselves the Liberty of disputing with the Wicked and Sinners; least we should chance in time to become like unto them. For the Consummation of Sin is come, as the Prophet *Daniel* says; And for this End saith the LORD, are the Times and the Days shortned; And the LORD will suddainly come to his Temple. For so the Prophet speaks; *There shall Ten Kings reign in the Earth, and there shall rise last of all another, and he shall humble three Kings.* And again *Daniel* speaks in like manner concerning the Kingdoms; *And I saw the fourth Beast dreadful and terrible,*

† Voss. in loc. p. 312. Edit. Oxon. p. 12. b. Et Annot. D. Bernard p. 122.

|| *Beloved.*

Dan. ix.

Mat. xxiv. 22. Mal. iii. 1. Comp. Ed. Oxon. p. 14. Dan. vii.

— 7.

— 8.

rible, and strong exceedingly ; and it had ten Horns. I considered the Horns, and behold there came up among them another little Horn, before which were three of the first Horns pluckt up by the Roots. We ought therefore to consider *these things* : And I beseech you, as one of your own Brethren, loving you all beyond my own Life, that you look well to your selves : And be not like to those who || add Sin to Sin, and say ; *That their Covenant is ours also*. Nay, but it is ours *only* ; for they have for ever lost that which *Moses* received. For thus saith the Scripture ; *And Moses continued fasting forty Days and forty Nights in the Mount ; and he received the Covenant from the LORD, even Two Tables of Stone written by the Hand of God*. But having turn'd themselves to Idols they lost it ; as the LORD also said to *Moses* ; *Moses, Go down quickly, for thy People which thou hast brought forth out of Egypt, have corrupted themselves, and turn'd aside from the way which I commanded them*. And *Moses* cast the Two Tables of Stone out of his Hands ; and their

|| Heap up Sins.

Exod. xxxi,  
xxxiv.

Exod. xxxii. 7.

Deutr. ix. 12.

their Covenant was broken; that the Love of Jesus might be sealed in your Hearts, unto the Hope of his Faith. Wherefore let us give heed unto the last Times. For the time past of our Life, and our Faith will profit us nothing; unless *we continue also* to hate what is Evil, and to *withstand* the future Temptations. So the Son of God tells us; *Let us resist all Iniquity and hate it.* Wherefore consider the Works of the Evil Way. Do not deceive your selves || with your own private || *Separately.* Thoughts, as if you were already justified; But coming All together into one place, enquire what is agreeable to, and profitable for the Beloved of God. For the Scripture saith; *Wo unto them that are Wise in their own Eyes, and Prudent in their own Sight.* Let us become Spiritual, a perfect Temple to God. As much as in us lies let us meditate upon the Fear of the † LORD; and strive † *God.* to the utmost of our power to keep his Commandments; that we may rejoyce in his Righteous Judgments. For God will judge the World with-

out respect of Persons; and receive every one according to his Works. If a Man shall be Good, his Righteousness shall go before him: If Wicked, the Reward of his Wickedness shall follow him. Take heed therefore, least sitting still now that we are called, we fall asleep in our Sins; and the Wicked One getting the Dominion over us, raise us up, and shut us out of the Kingdom of the LORD. But especially consider the great Signs and Wonders which ye have seen among the People of the Jews, and how thus the LORD forsook them. Beware therefore, least it happen to us; as it is written,

Mat. xii. 14.

*There be many Called, but few Chosen.*

V. FOR this cause did our LORD vouchsafe to give to up his Body to Destruction, that through the Forgiveness of our Sins we might be sanctified; that is, by the sprinkling of his Bloud. Now for what concerns the things that are written about him, some belong to the People of the Jews, and some to us. For thus

Isaiah Liii. 5, 7. saith the Scripture; *He was wounded for*

for our Transgressions, He was bruised  
 for our Iniquities, and by his Bloud we  
 are healed. He was led as a Lamb to  
 the slaughter, and as a Sheep before his  
 Shearers is dumb, so he opened not his  
 Mouth. Wherefore we ought the  
 more to give thanks unto God, for  
 that he hath both declared unto us  
 what is passed, † and not suffer'd us † Vid. Edit.  
 to be without Understanding even of Oxon. p. 21.  
 those things that are to come. And  
 therefore he saith; *The Nets are not* Prov. I. 17.  
*unjustly spread for the Birds.* This  
 he spake, because a Man will justly  
 perish, if having the Knowledge of  
 the Way of Truth, he shall never-  
 theless not refrain himself from the  
 Way of Darknes. And for this  
 Cause the LORD was content to suf-  
 fer for our Souls, although he be  
 the LORD of the whole Earth; to  
 whom God said before the Begin-  
 ning of the World; *Let us make* Gen. I. 26.  
*Man after our own Image and Like-*  
*ness.* Now how he suffered for us,  
 seeing it was by Men that he un-  
 derwent it; || I will shew you. The ¶ *Learn,*  
 Prophets, having received from him  
 the Gift of Prophecy, spake before



concerning him: But he, that he might abolish Death, and make known the Resurrection from the Dead, was content, as it was necessary, to appear in the Flesh, that he might make good the Promise before given to our Fathers, and preparing himself a New People, might demonstrate to them whilst he was upon Earth, that after the Resurrection he would judge the World. And thus teaching the People of *Israel*, and doing many Wonders and Signs among them, he preached to them, and shewed the exceeding great Love which he bare towards them. And when he chose his Apostles, which were afterwards to publish his Gospel, he took Men who had been very great Sinners; that thereby he might plainly shew, *That he came not to call the Righteous, but Sinners to Repentance.* Then he clearly manifested himself to be the Son of God. For had he not come in the Flesh, how could Men have been able to look upon him, that they might be saved? Seeing if we behold only the Sun, which was the

Work

Mat. ix. 13.

Work of his Hands, and shall here-  
 after cease to be, we are not able to  
 endure stedfastly to look against the  
 Rays of it. Wherefore the Son of  
 God came in the Flesh for this Cause,  
 that he might fill up the measure of  
 their Iniquity, who have persecuted  
 his Prophts unto Death : And for  
 the same reason also he suffered ;  
 \* For faith God, *By the Stripes of* \* Vid. Coreler.  
*his Flesh we are healed.* And again, in loc. Aliter  
 another Prophet, *When I shall smite* Vet. Int. Lat.  
*the Shepherd the Sheep of the Flock shall* Comp. Ed.  
*be scatter'd.* Nevertheless, he would Oxon.  
 suffer *in this Manner* : Because it be- Isa. Liii. 5.  
 hoved him to suffer upon the Cross. Zach. xiii. 7.  
 For thus one faith, prophecying con-  
 cerning him ; *Deliver my Soul from* Psal. xxi. 20.  
*the Sword.* And again, *They pierced*  
*my Hands and my Feet.* And again,  
*The Congregation of wicked Doers rose* — 17.  
*up against me.* And again, he faith,  
*I gave my Back to the Smiters, and my* Isa. L. 6, 7.  
*Cheeks to be buffeted, and my Face I set* || LXX.  
*as an hard Rock.*

VI. AND when he had fulfilled  
 the Commandment of God, What  
 says he ? *Who will contend with me ?* Eccl. I. 2, 3.

Let him stand against me : Or who is he that will implead me ? Let him draw near to the Servant of ~~the~~ LORD.

Septuag. Inter.

Wo be to you ! Because ye shall all wax old as a Garment, the Moth shall eat you up. And again the Prophet adds :

Isa. vii. 14.

He is put for a Stone of stumbling.

—xxviii. 16.

Behold I lay in Zion for a Foundation, a precious Stone, a choice Corner-Stone ; an Honourable Stone. And what follows ? And he that hopeth in him shall live for ever. What then ? Is

Isa. L. 7.

our Hope built upon a Stone ? God forbid. But because the LORD hath put his Flesh in strength, he saith this of it. As it is written ; I have placed my self as a sure Rock. And

Psal. 117. 22.

again the Prophet adds ; The Stone which the Builders refused is become the Head of the Corner. And again he saith ; This is the Great and Wonderful Day which the LORD hath made.

— 23.

Clem. Alex.

Strom. v.

\* This is not in the Old Lat. Vers.

† Vid. Edit.

Oxon. p. 29. a.

Psal. xxi. 17.

—Cxvii. 12.

[\* I write these things the more plainly to you that ye may understand : ] † For indeed I could be content even to die for your sakes. But what saith the Prophet : The Counsel of the Wicked encompassed me about. They came about me, as Bees about the Hive :

*Hive: And; Upon my Vesture they*—xxi. 19.  
*cast Lots.* Forasmuch then as our  
*Saviour* was to appear in the Flesh,  
 and suffer; his Passion was hereby  
 foretold. For thus again saith the  
 Prophet against *Israel: Wo be to their* Isa. iii. 9.  
*Soul, because they have taken Wicked*  
*Counsel against themselves, saying; Let*  
*us lay Snares for the Righteous, be-*  
*cause he is unprofitable to us.* Moses  
 also in like manner speaketh to them:  
*Behold thus saith the LORD God; En-* Exod xxxiii. 1.  
*ter ye into the Good Land of which the*  
*LORD hath sworn to Abraham, and*  
*Isaac, and Jacob, that he would give*  
*it you, and possess it; a Land flowing*  
*with Milk and Hony* Now what the  
 Spiritual meaning of this is, learn;  
 † *It is as if it had been said;* Put your † Vid. Coteler.  
 Trust in Jesus, who shall be mani- Annor. Marg.  
 fested to you in the Flesh. For Man ex Clem. Alex.  
 is the Earth which suffers: Foras-  
 much as out of the Substance of the  
 Earth *Adam* was formed. What  
 therefore do's he mean when he  
 says, *Into a Good Land flowing with*  
*Milk and Honey?* Blessed be our  
 LORD, who has given us Wisdom,  
 and a Heart to understand his Se-  
 crets.

Isaiah xl. 13.

Prov. I. 6.

Eccl. I. 10.

\* Vid. Edit.:

Oxon. p. 30. b.

|| Vid. Ver. Lat.

Interp.

Gen. I. 26.

Comp. Coloss.

iii. 10.

— 28.

Ezek. xxxvi.

Mat. xx. 16.

|| Comp. Hebr.

iii.

crets. For so says the Prophet, *Who shall understand the hard Sayings of the LORD? But he that is Wise, and Intelligent, and that loves his LORD.* Seeing therefore he has renewed us by the Remission of our Sins, he has given us another form, that we should have our Souls \* like the Soul of a Child; Even as he himself has form'd us || by the Spirit. For thus the Scripture saith concerning us, where it introduceth the Father speaking to the Son; *Let us make Man in our Image, after our Likeness: And let him have Dominion over the Beasts of the Earth, and over the Fowls of the Air, and over the Fish of the Sea.* And when the LORD saw the Man which he had form'd, that behold he was very Good; He said, *Encrease, and multiply, and replenish the Earth.* And this he spake to his Son. I will now shew you, how he made us into a second Form, in the latter Days: As also he saith; *Behold I will make the last as the first.* Wherefore the Prophet thus foretold it; || *Enter into the Land flowing with Milk and Honey, and rule in it.* Where-

Wherefore ye see how we are again formed anew ; as also he speaks by another Prophet : *Behold, saith the LORD, I will take from them, that is, from those whom the Spirit of the LORD foresaw, their Hearts of Stone, and I will put into them Hearts of Flesh.* Because he was about to be made manifest in the Flesh, and to dwell in us. For, my Brethren, the Habitation of our Heart is a † Holy Temple unto the LORD. † So St. Paul As he again saith ; *Wherewithal shall I appear before the LORD my God, and be Glorified ?* He answers, *I will confess unto thee in the Congregation in the midst of my Brethren ; and will sing unto thee in the Church of the Saints.* Wherefore we are they whom he has brought into that good Land. † But what signifies the Milk and Hony ? Because as the Child is nourish'd first with Milk, and then with Hony ; So we being kept alive with the Belief of his Promises, and the Word of his Gospel, shall live and have Dominion over the Land. For so he foretold above, saying, *Entrease, and Multiply, and have Dominion*

Ezek. xi. 19.

—xxxvi. 26.

† So St. Paul  
1 Cor. ili. 16, 17

—vi. 19. 9

Psal. xli. 3.

Psal. xxi, 23.

† Comp. Hier.

in Jer. xxxii.

22. Et in Jer.

xl. 5. Add.

1 Pet. ii. 2.

*minion over the Fishes, &c.* But who is there that is now able to have this Dominion over the Wild Beasts, or Fishes, or Fowls of the Air? For you know that to Rule is to have Power, that a Man should be Lord over what he rules. But forasmuch as this we have not now, he tells us when we shall have it: *Namely*; when he shall become perfect, that so we may be made Inheritors of the Covenant of the LORD.

VII. UNDERSTAND then, my Beloved Children, that the Good God hath before manifested all things unto us, that we might know to whom we ought always to give Thanks. If therefore the Son of God, who is the LORD of all, and shall come to judge both the Quick and Dead, hath suffer'd; that *by his Stripes we might live*: Let us believe that the Son of God could not have suffer'd but for us. But, being crucified, they gave him Gall and Vinegar to drink. Hear *therefore* how the Priests of the Temple did fore-shew this also: || The LORD by his  
Com-

¶ See this applied after the same manner, Hebr. ix.

Command which was written, declar'd that whosoever did not fast the *Appointed* Fast † should die the Death: † *Levit. xlii.*  
 Because he also was one day to offer his Body for our Sins; and so the Type of what was done in \* *I- \* Gen. xxv.*  
*saac* be fulfill'd, who was offer'd upon the Altar. What therefore is it that he says by the Prophet? || *And* || *Numb. xxix,*  
*let them eat of the Goat which is offer'd* &c. *Vid. Corel. in Marg.*  
*in the day of the Fast for all their* Et Annot. in  
*Sins.* Harken diligently, my Brethren, *And all the Priests, and they* Loc. Comp.  
*only shall eat the Inwards, not washed,* Oblerv. Edit.  
*with Vinegar.* And why so? Because Oxon.  
 \* *I know* that when I shall hereafter \* *Vid. Annot.*  
 offer my Flesh for the Sins of a New *Corel. in loc.*  
 People, ye will give me Vinegar to drink mixed with Gall; therefore do ye only eat, the People fasting the while, and lamenting in Sack-cloth and Ashes. That by this he might fore-shew, that he was to suffer by them. But, hear then, † *Levit. xvi.*  
 how he appointed it? † *Take,* says *Vid. Malmou.*  
 he, *two Goats, fair and alike, and* *Tract de Die*  
*offer them; And let the High Priest* *Exp. Edit. du*  
*take one of them for a Burnt Offering.* *Vell. pag. 350.*  
 And what must be done with the *Add. Annot.*  
 other? *Corel. & Ed.*  
*Oxon. in loc.*



\* vid. Edit.  
Oxon. p. 40. a.  
41. b.

|| Vid. Maim.  
ibid. pag. 341.  
Comp. Annot.  
Edit. Oxon.  
In loc.  
† Vid. Annor.  
Isaac Voss. in  
loc.

other ? *Let it be accursed.* Consider how exactly this appears to have been a Type of Jesus. \* *And let all the Congregation spit upon it, and prick it ; and put the Scarlet Wool about its Head : And thus let it be carried forth into the Wilderness.* And this being done, he that was appointed to convey the Goat, led it into the Wilderness, || and took away the Scarlet Wool, and put it upon a Thorn-Bush, whose † young Sprouts when we find them in the Field we are wont to eat : So the Fruit of that Thorn only is sweet. And to what end was this Ceremony ? Consider ; *One was offered upon the Altar, the Other was accursed.* And why was that which was accursed, crown'd ? Because they shall see *Christ* in that Day having a Scarlet Garment about his Body ; and shall say : Is not this he whom heretofore we crucified ; having despised him, pierced him, mocked him ? Certainly this is he, who then said, that he was the Son of God. As therefore he shall be then like to what he was on Earth, so were the

the

the Jews heretotore commanded, *to take two Goats, Fair and Equal.* That when they shall see *our Saviour* hereafter coming *in the Clouds of Heaven*, they may be amazed at the Likeness of the Goats. Wherefore || ye ¶ Vid. Lat. Ver. here again see a Type of Jesus who was to suffer *for us.* But what then signifies this, *That the Wool was to be put into the midst of the Thorns?* This also is a Figure of Jesus, set out to the Church. For as he who would take away the Scarlet Wool must undergo many difficulties, because that Thorn was very sharp, and with difficulty get it: So they, says *Christ*, that will see me, and See Acts xiv. 22. come to my Kingdom, must through many Afflictions and Troubles attain unto me.

VIII. BUT what Type do ye Numb. xli. suppose it to have been, where it is commanded † in the Law; that † † Israel. certain Men who had been guilty of many Sins, should offer a Heifer, That this was also a Type of Christ, See Hebr. ix. 13. and kill it and burn it. And the young Men should take up the Ashes and put them in Vessels; and tie

¶ Vid. Vet. Lar.  
Interpr.

a piece of Scarlet Wool and Hyssop upon a Stick, and so the young Men should sprinkle every one of the People, and they should be clear from their Sins? Consider how all these things are delivered in a ¶ Figure to us. This Heifer is Jesus Christ; the Wicked Men that were to offer it, are those Sinners who brought him to Death: Who now are no longer Men; there is no more any Glory of those Sinners remaining. The young Men that sprinkled them, signifie to us those who preach the Forgiveness of Sins, and the Purification of the Heart, to whom our LORD gave Authority to Preach his Gospel: Being *at the Beginning* Twelve, for a witness of the Tribes, because there were Twelve Tribes of *Israel*. But why were there Three young Men, that were appointed to sprinkle the Sinners? In Testimony of *Abraham*, and *Isaac*, and *Jacob*, that they were Great before God. And why was the Wool put upon a \* Stick? Because the Kingdom of Jesus was founded upon the \* Cross; And therefore

\* *Wood.*

therefore they that put their Trust in him shall live for ever. But why was the Wool and Hyssop put together? To signifie that in the Kingdom of Christ there shall be evil and base Days, in which we shall be saved. And † because he that has any Disease in the Flesh is by Hyssop † Vid. Coreler. in Annot. purged from the Pollution of it. Wherefore these things being thus done, to us indeed are evident, but to the Jews they are obscure; because they hearkned not unto the Voice of the LORD.

IX. AND therefore the Scripture again speaks concerning our Ears, that God has circumcised them, together with our Hearts. For thus saith the LORD in the Holy Prophet: *By the hearing of the Ear they obeyed me.* And again, *They who are afar off, shall hear what things I have done, and shall understand.* And again, *Circumcise your Hearts, saith the LORD.* And again he saith, *Hear O Israel! Thus saith the LORD thy God.* And again the Spirit of God prophesieth, saying; *Who is there that*

Septuag. Psal. xvii. 45.  
Isa. xxxlii. 13.  
Jer. iv. 4.  
Jer. vii. 2.  
Psal. xxxiii.

Isaiah I. 2.

— 10.

— xl. 3.

† Angel.

Jer. iv. 3, 4.

\* Vid. Lat. In-  
terp. Vct.  
Jer. vii. 26.

Jer. ix. 25, 26.

that would live for ever, let him hear the Voice of my Son. And again, Hear O Heaven, and give Ear O Earth! Because the LORD has spoken these things for a Witness. And again he saith, Hear the word of the LORD, ye Princes of the People. And again, Hear O Children! The Voice of one crying in the Wilderness. Wherefore he has circumcised our Ears, that we should hear his Word, and believe. But as for that Circumcision, in which the Jews trust, it is abolished. For the Circumcision of which God spake, was not of the Flesh: But they have transgressed his Commands, because the Evil † One hath deceived them. For thus God bespeaks them; Thus saith the LORD your God, Here you may find the New Command; Sow not upon Thorns; Be circumcised to the LORD your God. And what do's he mean by this? \* Harken unto your LORD, and circumcise the Hardness of your Heart, and harden not your Neck. And again, Behold, saith the LORD, all the Nations are uncircumcised, they have not lost their Fore-Skin;

*Skin; but this People is not circum-*  
*cised in Heart.* But you will say;  
 the Jews were circumcised for a  
 Sign. \* And so are all the Syrians,  
 and Arabians, and all the Priests of  
 their Idols: But are they therefore  
 of the Covenant of *Israel*? And  
 even the Egyptians themselves are  
 circumcised. Understand therefore,  
 Children, these things more fully,  
 that *Abraham*, who was the first that  
 gave Circumcision in the Spirit,  
 looking forward to *JESUS*, circum-  
 cised, taking the Mystery of Three  
 Letters. For the Scripture says that  
*Abraham circumcised three hundred*  
*and eighteen Men of his House.* † But  
 what therefore was the Mystery  
 that was made known unto him?  
 I will tell you: It consists first in  
 the EIGHTEEN, and next in the  
*Three Hundred.* For the Numeral  
 Letters of *Ten and Eight*; are I H.  
 And these denote *JESUS*. And be-  
 cause the Cross was that by which  
 we were to find Grace; therefore he  
 adds, *Three hundred*; the note of  
 which is T [ *the Figure of his Cross.* ]  
 Wherefore by two Letters, he sig-

\* Vid. Core.  
 ler. in loc.  
 Confer. Orig.  
 ad Rom. cap.  
 ii. 25.

† That many o-  
 thers of the An-  
 tient Fathers  
 have concurred  
 with him in  
 this: See Co-  
 teler. in loc.  
 Add. eund.  
 pag. 34, 35.  
 ibid. Edit.  
 Oxon. in loc.  
 An Instance of  
 the like kind,  
 See Rev. xiii.  
 17, 18.  
 Add. Annot.  
 D. Bernard.  
 Edit. Oxon.  
 p. 125.

nified Jesus, and by One his Cross. He who has put the Natural Gift of his Doctrin within in us, knows, that I never shew'd to any one a more Genuine Truth : But I trust that ye are worthy of it.

X. BUT why did *Moses* say ;

|| That in this  
he goes on the  
received Opinions  
of the RR.  
Vid. Annot.  
Coteler, & Ed.  
Oxon. in loc.  
Levitic. xi.  
Deutr. xiv.  
Add. Ains.  
worth. on Lev.  
xi. 1. And a  
gain on Deutr.  
xiv. 4.  
† In the Un-  
derstanding.  
Deutr. iv.

|| *Ye shall not eat of the Swine, neither the Eagle, nor the Hawk ; nor the Crow ; nor any Fish that has not a Scale upon him ? I answer, that under this outside Figure, he comprehended three Spiritual Doctrins, that were to be †gathered from thence. Besides which he says to them in the Book of Deuteronomy, and I will give my Statutes unto this People. Wherefore it is not the Command of God that they should not eat ; but Moses, in the Spirit spake unto them. Now the Sow he forbid them to eat ; meaning thus much ; Thou shalt not join thy self to such Persons as are like unto Swine. Who whilst they live in Pleasure, forget their God ; but when any Want pinches them, then they know the LORD : As the Sow, when she is full, knows not her Master ;*

Master; but when she is hungry, she makes a Noise; and being again fed, is silent. *Neither*, says he, *shalt thou eat the Eagle, nor the Hawk, nor the Kite, nor the Crow*; that is, Thou shalt not keep Company with such kind of Men as know not how by their Labour, and Sweat to get themselves Food: But injuriously ravish away the things of others; and watch *how to lay Snares for them*; when at the same time they appear to live in perfect Innocence. [\* *So* • *Vid. Antiq. Lat. Verf.* these Birds alone seek not Food for themselves, but ] sitting idle seek how they may eat of the Flesh which Others *have provided*; being destructive through their Wickedness. *Neither*, says he, *shalt thou eat the Lamprey, nor the Polypus, nor the Cuttle-Fish*; that is, thou shalt not be like such Men, by using to converse with them: Who are † altogether wicked and adjudged to Death. For so those † *Wicked to the end.* Fishes are alone accursed, and wallow in the Mire, nor swim as other Fishes, but tumble in the Dirt at the Bottom of the Deep. But he adds, \* *Neither shalt thou eat of the* \* *See Coreler. Hare Annor. in loc.*



*Hare.* To what end? To signifie this to us; Thou shalt not be an Adulterer; nor liken thy self to such Persons. For the Hare every year multiplies || the places of its Conception; and as many years as it lives, so many † it has. *Neither shalt thou eat of the Hyena.* That is, again, Be not an Adulterer, nor a Corrupter of others, neither be like to such. And wherefore so? \* Because that Creature every year changes its kind, and is sometimes Male and sometimes Female. For which cause also he justly hated the *Weefel*; to the end that they should not be like such persons who with their Mouths commit Wickedness, by reason of their Uncleaness; nor joyn themselves with those impure Women, who with their Mouths commit Wickedness. † Because that Animal conceives with its Mouth. *Moses* therefore speaking as concerning Meats, deliver'd indeed three great Precepts to them in the Spiritual Signification of those Commands. But they according to the desires of the Flesh, understood him as if he had

† *Ἀπόδυσιν.*

† *Τέρας.*

\* So several Naturalists have affirmed, the others denied: See Annot. Coteler. in loc.

† Vid. Arist. apud Euseb. Præp. Evang. L. viii. cap. 9. Add. Coteler. in loc.

had only meant it of Meats. And therefore *David* took aright the Knowledge of his threefold Command; saying in like manner; *Blessed is the Man that hath not walked in the Counsel of the Ungodly; As the Fishes before mentioned in the Bottom of the Deep in Darkness: Nor Hood in the Way of Sinners; As they who seem to fear the LORD, but yet sin, as the Sow. And hath not sat in the Seat of the Scorners; as those Birds who sit and watch that they may devour. Here ye have this Matter perfectly set forth, and according to the true knowledge of it.*

But says Moses, || *Ye shall eat all that divideth the Hoof, and cheweth the Cud.* || See Edit. Oxon. p. 64. a. So Iren. adv. Her. l. v. c. 8.

Signifying thereby such an one as having taken his Food, knows him that nourisheth him; and resting upon him, rejoyceth in him. And in this he spake well, having respect to the Commandment. \* What

therefore is it that he says? That we should hold fast to them that fear the LORD; with those who meditate on the Portion of the Word which they have received, in

T 3 their

\* Comp. Clem. Alex. l. iii. Pædag. c. 11, Et simil. Orig. Theod. &c. Cor. teler. Annot. in loc.

† Ruminare  
upon.

their Heart ; with those that declare the Righteousness of the LORD ; and keep his Commandments ; *In short*, with those who know that to Meditate is a Work of Pleasure, and therefore † exercise themselves in the Word of the LORD. But why *might they eat* those that cleave the Hoof ? Because the Righteous liveth in this present World ; but his Expectation is fixed upon the other. See, *Brethren*, how admirably *Moses* commanded *these things*. But how should we thus know all this, and understand it ? We therefore understanding aright the Commandments, speak as the Lord would have us. Wherefore he has circumcised our Ears and our Hearts, that we might know these things.

XI. LET us now enquire whether the Lord took care to manifest any thing beforehand concerning WATER and the CROSS. Now for the former of these, it is written to the People of *Israel* how they shall not receive that BAPTISM which brings to Forgiveness of Sins ; but shall institute another to themselves, that

that cannot. For thus saith the Prophet: *Be astonish'd O Heaven! and let the Earth tremble at it, because this People have done two Great and Wicked things. They have left me, the Fountain of living Water, and have digged for themselves broken Cisterns, that can hold no Water. Is my holy Mountain \* Zion a desolate WilderNESS? For ye shall be as a young Bird when its Nest is taken away. And again the Prophet saith, I will go before thee, and will make plain the Mountains, and will break the Gates of Brass, and will snap in sundr the Bars of Iron: And will give thee dark and hidden, and invisible Treasures, that they may know I am the LORD God. And again; He shall dwell in the high Den of the strong Rock. And then, what follows || concerning the Son || His Water is faithful: Ye shall see the King with Glory, and your Soul shall learn the Fear of the LORD. And again he saith in another Prophet; He that do's these things; shall be like a Tree planted by the Currents of Water, which shall give its Fruit in its Season. Its Leaf also shall not*

\* Vid. Annot. Cotel. & Edit. Oxon. in loc. Isa. xvi. 1, 2.

— xlv. 2.

— xxxiii. 16, 17.

In. Vid. Edit. Coteler. p. 8. Psal. I.

*wither, and whatsoever he doth it shall prosper. As for the Wicked it is not so with them; but they are as the Dust which the Wind scattereth away from the face of the Earth. Therefore the Ungodly shall not stand in the Judgment, neither the Sinners in the Council of the Righteous. For the LORD knoweth the way of the Righteous, and the Way of the Ungodly shall perish. Consider how he has join'd both the Cross and the Water together. For this he saith; Blessed are they who putting their Trust in the Cross, descend into the Water; for they shall have their Reward in due time: then, saith he, will I give it them. But as concerning the present time, he saith, *Their Leaves shall not fall.* Meaning thereby, that every Word that shall go out of your Mouth, shall through Faith and Charity be to the Conversion and Hope of many. In like manner do's another Prophet speak. *And the Land of Jacob was the Praise of all the Earth;* that is, the Vessel of his Spirit, which he there magnifies. And what follows? *And there was a River running**

ning on the Right hand, and beautiful Trees grew up by it; and he that shall eat of them shall live for ever. The signification of which is this: That we go down into the Water full of Sins and Pollutions; but come up again bringing forth Fruit; having in our Hearts the Fear and Hope which is in Jesus. And whosoever shall eat of them shall live for ever. That is, whosoever shall hearken to those who call them, and shall believe, shall live for ever.

XII. IN like manner he determines concerning the Cross in || another Prophet, saying; *And when shall these things be fulfilled?* The LORD answers; *When the Tree that is fallen shall rise, and when Bloud shall drop down from the Tree.* Here you have again mention made, both of the Cross and of him that was to be crucified upon it. || And yet farther he saith in one of the Books of Moses; where when Israel was beaten by a strange People; to the End that God might remember \* them, how that for their Sins they were deliver'd unto Death;

|| Vid. Conject.  
Edit. Oxon.  
Comp. iv. Edit.  
v. 4. Et Obs.  
Cotel. in loc.

|| See St. Hier.  
in like manner  
Annot. D. Bern.  
nard. p. 124.  
Edit. Oxon.  
Exod. xvii.  
\* That were so  
beaten.

the

the Holy Spirit put it into the Heart of *Moses* to represent both the Sign of the Cross, and of him that was to suffer. *That so they might know* that if they did not believe in him, they should be overcome for ever.

† Again set  
them in Array,  
being armed.  
Lat. velf.

*Moses* therefore † piled up Armour upon Armour in the middle of a rising Ground, and standing up high above all of them stretched forth his Arms, and so *Israel* again Conquer'd. But no sooner did he let down his Hands, but they were again slain. And why so? To the end they might know, that except they trust in him they cannot be saved. And

12. lxx. 2.

in another Prophet he saith, *I have stretched out my Hands all the Day long to a People disobedient, and speaking against my righteous Way.* And

|| So Irenæus,  
Just Mart.  
St. Chrylost.  
&c. Vid. Edit.  
Oxon. p. 77. a.  
† *Israel* falling.

again *Moses* makes a || Type of *Jesus*, to shew that he was to die, and then that he, whom they thought to be dead, was to give Life to others; in the Sign of † those that fell in *Israel*. For God caused all sorts of Serpents to bite them, and they died; forasmuch as by a Serpent Transgression began in *Eve*; that

that so he might convince them that for their Transgressions they shall be delivered into the Pain of Death. Moses then himself, who had commanded them, saying, *Ye shall not make to your selves any graven or molten Image to be your God*; yet now did so himself, that he might represent to them the Figure of the LORD Jesus. For he made a brazen Serpent, and set it up on high, and called the People together to an Assembly; Where being come, they intreated Moses that he would make an Attonement for them, and pray that they might be healed. Then Moses spake unto them, saying; when any one among you shall be bitten, let him come unto the Serpent that is set upon the Pole; and let him assuredly trust in him, that though he be dead, yet he is able to give Life, and presently he shall be saved; and so they did. See therefore how here also you have in this the Glory of Jesus; and that in him and to him are all things. Again; What says Moses to Jesus the Son of Nun, when he gave that Name unto him, as being a Prophet,

Dentr.xxviii.13

Rom.xi.33.



¶ So the other  
 Fathers. Just.  
 Marr. &c. Vid.  
 Edit. Oxon.  
 pag. 79.  
 † Vid. Interp.  
 Vet. Lat.  
 Exod. xlvii. 14.

\* Comp. Vet.  
 Lat. Interp.  
 Psal. cix. 3.

¶ Vid. Annot.  
 Coxeler. in loc.  
 Edit. Oxon.  
 p. 78. c.  
 Isa. xlv. 1.

† Comp. Vet.  
 Lat. Interp.

phet, that all the People might understand that the Father did manifest all things concerning his Son Jesus in ¶ Jesus the Son of Nun? Moses therefore gave him that Name when he sent him to spy out the Land of Canaan; \* and said; Take a Book in thine Hands, and write what the LORD saith: forasmuch as Jesus the Son of God, shall in the last Days cut off by the Roots all the House of Amaleck. See here again Jesus, not the Son of Man, but the Son of God, made manifest in a Type and in the Flesh. But because it might hereafter be said; that Christ was the Son of David; \* therefore David fearing and well-knowing the Errors of the Wicked, saith; The LORD said unto my LORD, sit thou on my Right Hand until I make thine Enemies thy Footstool. And again Isaiah speaketh on this wise, The LORD said unto ¶ Christ my LORD, I have laid hold on his right Hand, that the Nations should obey before him, and I will break the strength of Kings. Behold, how both † David and Isaiah call him LORD, and the Son of God.

XIII. BUT let us go yet farther, and enquire whether this People be the Heir or the former; and whether the Covenant be with us or with them. And first as concerning the People hear what the Scripture saith. *Isaac* prayed for his Wife

*Rebeckah*, because she was barren; and she conceived. Afterwards *Rebeckah* went forth to enquire of the

LORD. And the LORD said unto her,

*There are two Nations in thy Womb, and two People shall come from thee; and the one shall have power over the other, and the Greater shall serve the Lesser.* Understand here

who was *Isaac*; who *Rebeckah*, and of whom it was foretold, that this People should be Greater than that.

And in another Prophecy *Jacob* speaketh more clearly to his Son

*Joseph* saying; Behold the LORD hath not taken me from thy Face, bring me thy Sons that I may bless them.

And he brought unto his Father || *Manasseh* and *Ephraim*, desiring

that he should bless *Manasseh*, because he was the Elder. Therefore

*Joseph*

Gen. xxv. 21.  
Compar. St.  
Paul. Rom. ix.  
Just. Mart.  
Tert. &c. Vid.  
Ed. Oxon. p.  
81. 2.

Gen. xlviii.

|| Vid. Lat.  
Interp. Vet.

Joseph brought him to the Right Hand of his Father Jacob: But Jacob by the Spirit foresaw the Figure of the People that was to come. And what saith the Scripture? And Jacob crossed his Hands, and put his Right Hand upon Ephraim his second, and the Younger Son, and Blessed him. And Joseph said unto Jacob: Put thy Right Hand upon the Head of Manasseh, for he is my First-born Son. And Jacob said unto Joseph; I know it, my Son, I know it; but the Greater shall serve the Lesser; though he also shall be Blessed. Ye see of whom he appointed it, that they should be the first People, and Heirs of the Covenant. If therefore God shall have yet farther taken Notice of this by Abraham too; Our Understanding of it will then be perfectly established. What then saith the Scripture to Abraham, when he believed, and it was imputed unto him for Righteousness? Behold I have made thee a Father of the Nations, which without Circumcision believe in the LORD.

Gen. xv. 17.  
So St. Paul  
himself applies  
this.  
Rom. iv. 3.

XIV. LET us therefore now enquire, whether God has fulfilled the Covenant, which he swore to our Fathers, that he would give this People? *Yes verily, He gave it: But they were not worthy to receive it by reason of their Sins. For thus saith the Prophet: And Moses* Exod. xxiv. 18 *continued fasting in Mount Sinai, to receive the Covenant of the LORD with the People, forty Days and forty Nights. And he received of the LORD* Deutr. ix. 10. *two Tables written with the Finger of the LORD's Hand in the Spirit: And Moses when he had received them brought them down that he might deliver them to the People. And the LORD said unto Moses; Moses, Moses,* Exod. xxxii. 7 *get thee down quickly, for the People* Deutr. ix. 12. *which thou broughtest out of the Land of Egypt have done Wickedly. And Moses understood that they had again set up a Molten Image; and he cast the two Tables out of his Hands; and the Tables of the Covenant of the LORD were broken. Moses therefore received them, but they were not worthy. Now then learn how*  
we

we have received them. *Moses*, being a *Servant* took them ; but the *LORD* himself has given them unto us, that we might be the People of his Inheritance, having suffered all things for us. And it was therefore made manifest ; that they should fill up the Measure of their Sins, and that we || being made Heirs by him, should receive the Covenant of the *LORD* *Jesus*. And again the Prophet saith, *Behold, I have set thee for a Light unto the Gentiles, to be † the Saviour of all the Ends of the Earth, saith the LORD the God who hath redeemed thee.* Who for that very End was prepared, that by his Own appearing he might redeem our Hearts, already devoured by Death, and delivered over to the Irregularity of Error, from Darkness ; and establish a Covenant with us by his Word. For so it is written, that the Father commanded him, by delivering of us from Darkness, to prepare unto himself a Holy People. Wherefore the Prophet saith, *I the LORD thy God have called thee in Righteousness, and I will take thee by the*

¶ Vid. Lat.  
Interp. Vet.

Isa. xlix. 6.

† For Salvati-  
on unto.

Isa. xlii. 6.

*the Hand and will strengthen thee. And give thee for a Covenant of the People, for a Light of the Gentiles. To open the Eyes of the Blind, to bring out the Prisoners from the Prison, and them that sit in Darkness out of the Prison-House. Consider therefore from whence we have been redeemed. And again the Prophet saith ; The Spirit of the LORD* Isa. Lxi. 1, 2.  
*is upon me, because he hath anointed me ;* Comp. Luke iv. 18.  
*he hath sent me to preach glad Tidings to the Lowly ; to heal the broken in Heart ; to preach Remission to the Captives, and sight unto the Blind : To proclaim the acceptable year of the LORD, and the Day of Restitution ; to comfort all that mourn.*

**XV. FURTHERMORE** it is written concerning the Sabbath in the Ten Commandments, which God spake in the Mount Sinai to Moses, Face to Face ; *Sanctifie the Sabbath of the LORD with pure Hands,* Exod. xx. 8.  
*and with a clean Heart.* And elsewhere he saith, *If thy Children shall keep* Jer. xvii. 24.  
*my Sabbaths, then will I put my Mercy upon them.* And even in the beginning of the Creation he makes mention

Gen. II. 2.  
Exod. XX. 11.  
XXXI. 17.  
|| Vid. Cotel.  
Annot. in loc.  
† How general  
this Tradition  
then was, See  
Coreler. Annot.  
in loc. Edit.  
Oxon. p. 50. a.

Psal. Lxxxix. 4.

|| That is, to  
the time of the  
Gospel, says,  
Dr. Bernard.  
q. v. Annot. p.  
127. Ed. Oxon.  
\* So the Lat.  
Vers.

of the Sabbath. *And God made in six Days the Works of his Hands; and he finished them on the || seventh Day, and he rested the seventh day and sanctified it.* Consider, my Children, what that signifies, *he finish'd them in six Days.* The meaning of it is this; that in † six thousand years the LORD God will bring all things to an End. For with him One Day is a Thousand Years: as himself testifieth, saying, *Behold this day shall be as a thousand years.* Therefore, Children, in six Days, that is, in six thousand years shall || All things be accomplished. *And rested the Seventh Day:* He meaneth this; that when his Son shall come, and abolish the Season of the \* Wicked One, and judge the Ungodly; and shall change the Sun, and the Moon and the Stars; then he shall gloriously rest in that seventh Day. He adds lastly; *Thou shalt sanctifie it with clean Hands and a pure Heart.* Wherefore we are greatly deceived if we imagin that any one can now sanctifie that Day which God has made Holy, without having a Heart pure in all things. He will there-

therefore then truly sanctifie it with blessed Rest, when we (having received the righteous Promise, when Iniquity shall be no more, all things being renewed by the LORD) shall be able to sanctifie it, being our selves first made Holy. Lastly, he saith unto them ; *Your New Moons and your Sabbaths I cannot bear them.*

Ila. I. 13.

Consider what he means by it ; The Sabbaths, *says he*, which ye now keep are not acceptable unto me, but those which I have made ; when resting from all things I shall begin || the Eighth Day, that is the Beginning of the other World. For which cause we observe the Eighth Day with Gladness, in which Jesus both rose from the dead ; and manifested himself *to his Disciples* ; and so ascended into Heaven.

|| So the other Fathers, q. v. Apud Coreler. Annot. in loc. pag. 36.

XVI. IT remains yet that we speak to you concerning the Temple : How those miserable Men being deceived have put their trust in the † House, and not in God himself who made them ; as if it were the Habitation of God. Much

† Vid. Edit. Oxon. & Vet. Lat. Interp.



after the same manner as the Gentiles have consecrated him in  
 \* *The Temple.* \* their Temples. But learn *therefore* how the LORD speaketh, rendering the Temple vain: *Who has measured the Heaven with a Span, and the Earth with his Hand? Is it not I? Thus saith the LORD; Heaven is my Throne, and the Earth is my Footstool. What is the House that ye will build me? Or what is the place of my Rest? Know therefore that all their Hope is vain. And again he speaketh after this manner; Behold they that destroy this Temple, even they shall build another. And so it came to pass; For through their Wars it is now destroy'd by their Enemies; and the Servants of their Enemies build it up. Farthermore, it has been made manifest how both the City, and the Temple, and the People of Israel should be given up. For the Scripture saith; And it shall come to pass in the last days, that the LORD will deliver up the Sheep of his Pasture; and their Fold, and their Tower unto Destruction. And it has come to pass, as the LORD hath spoken.*

\* *The Temple.*

Isa. xl. 12.

Isa. lxi. 1.

Isa. xlix. 17.

Jer xxv.  
Isa. v.

spoken. Let us enquire therefore, whether there be any Temple of God? Yes there is: *And that* there where himself declares that he would both make and establish it. For it is written; *And it shall be that as* Dan. 9. Haggai ii. *soon as the Week shall be compleated* the Temple of the LORD shall be gloriously built in the Name of the LORD. I find therefore that there is a Temple. But how *shall it be built in the Name of the LORD?* I will shew you. Before that we belived in God, the Habitation of our Heart, was corruptible and feeble, as a Temple truly built with Hands. For it was a House full of Idolatry, a House of Devils; inasmuch as there was done in it whatsoever was contrary unto God. But it *shall be built in the Name of the LORD.* Consider, how that the Temple of the LORD shall be very gloriously built. And by what means that shall be, learn. Having received Remission of *our* Sins, and trusting in the Name of the LORD, we are become Renew'd, being again created from the Beginning. Wherefore God truly dwells in our

¶ Vid. Lat. Vct.  
Interp.

House, that is, in us. But how *do's he dwell in us?* The Word of his Faith, the Calling of his Promise, the Wisdom of his Righteous Judgments, the Commands of his Doctrine; He himself prophecies within us, he himself dwelleth in us, and openeth to us who were in Bondage the Gate of || Our Temple, that is, || the Mouth of Wisdom, having given Repentance to us; and by this means has brought us into his incorruptible Temple, He therefore that desires to be saved looketh || not unto the Man, but unto him that dwelleth in him, and speaketh by him; being struck with Wonder, forasmuch as he never either heard him speaking such Words out of his Mouth, nor ever desired to hear them. This is that Spiritual Temple that is built unto the LORD.

XVII. AND thus I trust, I have declared to you as much, and with as great Simplicity as I could, those things which make for your Salvation, so as not to have omitted any thing

thing that *might be requisite thereunto*.  
 For should I speak farther of the  
 Things that || now are, and of those || So the Old  
 Lat. Interp.  
 that are to come, you would not  
*yet* understand them, seeing they  
 lie in Parables. This therefore *shall*  
*suffice* as to these things.

XVIII. LET us now go on to the  
 other kind of Knowledge and Do-  
 ctrine. There are two ways of  
 Doctrine and Power; The one of  
 Light, the other of Darkness. But  
 there is a great deal of difference be-  
 tween these two ways: For over  
 one are appointed the † Angels of † Vid. Core-  
 God, the Leaders of the way of ler. in loc.  
 Et Basil. in  
 Psal. i.  
 Light; Over the others the Angels  
 of Satan. And the one is the LORD  
 from Everlasting to Everlasting;  
 the other is the Prince of the Time  
 of Unrighteousness.

XIX. NOW the way of Light is  
 this; if any one desires to attain to  
 the Place that is appointed for him,  
 and will hasten thither by his Works.  
 And the Knowledge that has been  
 given to us of walking in it; to

this Effect. \* Thou shalt love him that made thee : \* Thou shalt glorifie him that hath redeemed thee from Death. \* Thou shalt be simple in Heart, and \* Rich in the Spirit. \* Thou shalt not cleave to those that walk in the Way of Death. \* Thou shalt hate to do any thing that is not pleasing unto God. \* Thou shalt abhor all Dissimulation. \* Thou shalt not neglect *any* of the Commands of the LORD. \* Thou shalt not exalt thy self, but shalt be humble. \* Thou shalt not take Honour to thy self. \* Thou shalt not enter into any Wicked Counsel against thy Neighbour. \* Thou shalt not be confident in thy Heart. \* Thou shalt not commit \* Fornication ; nor \* Adultery. Neither shalt thou \* corrupt thy self with Mankind. \* Thou shalt not make use of the Speech which God has given thee, to any Impurity. \* Thou shalt not accept any Mans Person, when thou reprovest any ones Faults. \* Thou shalt be Gentle. \* Thou shalt be Quiet. \* Thou shalt tremble at the Words which

which thou hast heard. \* Thou shalt not keep any Hatred in thy Heart against thy Brother. \* Thou shalt not entertain any doubt whether it shall be, or not. \* Thou shalt not take the Name of the LORD in vain. \* Thou shalt love thy Neighbour above thy own Soul. \* Thou shalt not destroy thy Conceptions before they are brought forth; nor kill them after they are born. \* Thou shalt not take off thy Hand from thy Son, or from thy Daughter; but shalt teach them from their youth the Fear of the LORD. \* Thou shalt not covet thy Neighbours Goods; neither shalt thou be an Extortioner. \* Neither shall thy Heart be joined to proud Men; but thou shalt be numbred among the Righteous and the Lowly. \* Whatever Troubles shall happen unto thee, thou shalt receive them as good. \* Thou shalt not be double-minded, or double-tongu'd; for a double Tongue is the Snare of Death. \* Thou shalt be subject unto the LORD and to inferior Masters as to the Images of God, in Fear and Reverence.

rence. \* Thou shalt not be bitter in thy Commands towards any of thy Servants that trust in God; least thou chance not to fear him who is over both; because he came not to call any with respect of Persons, but whomsoever his Spirit had prepared. \* Thou shalt communicate to thy Neighbour of all thou hast; Thou shalt not call any thing thine own: For if ye partake in such things as are incorruptible, how much more *should ye do it* in those that are Corruptible? \* Thou shalt not be forward to speak; for the Mouth is the Snare of Death. \* As far as thou art able, || keep thy self Pure. \* Reach not out thine Hand to receive, and with-hold it not when thou shouldst give. \* Thou shalt love, as the Apple of thine Eye, every one that speaketh unto thee the Word of the LORD. \* Call to thy Remembrance Day and Night, the future Judgment. \* Thou shalt seek out every Day the Persons of the Righteous. \* And both seek by thy Speech and go forth to exhort; and meditate how thou maiest save thine  
own

|| Vid. Corel.  
in loc.

own Soul. \* Thou shalt also labour with thy Hands that thy Sins may be forgiven thee. \* Thou shalt not deliberate whether thou shouldst give; \* Nor having given, murmur at it. \* Give to every one that asks; so shalt thou know who is the good Rewarder of thy Gifts. \* Keep what thou hast received; thou shalt neither add to it, or take from it. \* Let the Wicked be always thy Aversion. \* Thou shalt judge righteous Judgment. \* Thou shalt never cause Divisions; but shalt make Peace between those that are at variance, and bring them together. \* Thou shalt confess thy Sins; \* *And* not come to thy Prayer with an Evil-Conscience. This is the Way of Light.

XX. BUT the Way of Darknes is crooked, and full of Cursing. For it is the Way of Eternal Death with Punishment; in which they that walk, meet those things that destroy their own Souls. *Such are*; Idolatry, Confidence, Pride of Power, Hypocrisie, Double-Mindedness, Adultery,



dultery, Murder, Rapine, Pride, Transgression, Deceit, Malice, Arrogance, Witchcraft, Covetousness, and the Want of the Fear of God. *In this walk those* who are the Persecutors of them that are good; Haters of Truth; Lovers of Lies; who know not the Reward of Righteousness, nor cleave to any thing that is good. Who administer not righteous Judgment to the Widdow and Orphan; who watch for Wickedness, and not for the Fear of the LORD; From whom Gentleness, and Patience are far off; Who love Vanity, and follow after Rewards; Having no Compassion upon the Poor; nor take any pains for such as are heavy laden *and Oppressed*: Ready to evil speaking, not knowing him that made them: Murderers of Children; Corrupters of the Creature of God; That turn away from the Needy; Oppress the Afflicted; The Adorers of the Rich, but unjust Judges of the Poor; being Altogether Sinners.

XXI. IT is therefore fitting that learning the just Commands of the LORD, which we have before mentioned, we should walk in them. For he that do's such things shall be glorified in the Kingdom of God. But he that chuses the other part, shall be destroyed together with his Works. For this cause there shall be both a Resurrection and a Retribution. I beseech those that are Excellent among you, if so be you will take the Counsel which with a good intention I offer to you; You have those with you towards whom you may do good; Do not forsake them. For the Day is at hand in which All things shall be destroyed, together with the Wicked One. The LORD is near, and his Reward is with him. I beseech you therefore again and again; be as good Law-givers to one another; continue faithful Counsellors to each other; Remove from among you all Hypocrisie. And may God, the LORD of all the World, give you Wisdom, Knowledge, Understanding; and a true apprehension of his Judgments in Patience. Be ye taught

† *Vessel.*

taught of God ; Seeking what it is the LORD requires of you, and doing it ; that ye may be saved in the Day of Judgment. And if there be among you any remembrance of what is good ; think of me, meditating upon these things, that both your Desire and your Watching may turn to some good account. I beseech you ; I ask it as a Favour of you ; Whilst you are in this beautiful † *Tabernacle of the Body* be wanting in none of these things ; but without ceasing seek them, and fulfill every Command ; For these things are *fitting* and worthy to be done. Wherefore I have given the more diligence to write *unto you*, according to my Ability , that you might rejoice. Farewel, Children of Love and Peace. The LORD of Glory and of all Grace, be with your Spirit. *Amen.*

The End of the *Epistle* of BARNABAS  
the *Apostle* and Companion of St.  
PAUL the *Apostle.*

---

**T H E**  
**SHEPHERD**

**O F**  
**St. *HERMAS*.**

---

17

2

---



---

T H E  
C O N T E N T S.

---

The *First* BOOK.

- Vision I. **A** G A I N S T Filthy and Proud Thoughts : *Also the Correction of HERMAS for his Neglect of his Sons.*
- II. *Again of his Neglect in correcting his Talkative Wife ; and of his Lewd Sons ; and of his own Manners.*
- III *Of the Building of the Church-Triumphant : And of the several Orders of Reprobates.*
- IV. *Of the Tryal and Tribulation, that is about to come upon Men.*

## The Second BOOK.

*An Introduction to the following*  
COMMANDS.

- Command I. **O**F Believing in One God.
- II. *That we must avoid Detraction; and do our Alms-Deeds with Simplicity.*
- III. *Of Avoiding Lying: And the Repentance of HERMAS for his Disimulation.*
- IV. *Of putting away Ones Wife for ADULTERY.*
- V. *Of the Sadness of the Heart; and of Patience.*
- VI. *That every Man has two Angels; and of the Suggestions of both.*
- VII. *That we must fear God, but not the Devil.*
- VIII. *That we must flee from Evil, and do Good.*
- IX. *That we must ask of God daily; and without doubting.*
- X. *Of the Sadness of the Heart; and that we must take heed not to grieve the Spirit of God that is in us.*
- XI. *That*

XI. *That the Spirits and Prophets are to be tried by their Works; and of a Two-fold Spirit.*

XII. *Of a two-fold Desire: That the Commands of God are not impossible: And that the Devil is not to be feared by them that Believe.*

# The Third BOOK.

Similitude I. **T**HAT seeing we have no abiding City in this World; we ought to look after that which is to come.

II. *As the Vine is supported by the Elm, so is the Rich-Man help'd by the Prayers of the Poor.*

III. *As the Green Trees in the Winter cannot be distinguish'd from the Dry; so neither can the Righteous from the Wicked in this present World.*

IV. *As in Summer the living Trees are distinguish'd from the Dry by their Fruit and Green Leaves; so in the World to come the Righteous shall be distinguish'd from the Unrighteous by their Happiness.*



## The Contents.

- V. *Of a True Fast, and the Reward of it : Also of the Cleanness of the Body.*
- VI. *Of two Sorts of Voluptuous Men ; and of their Death, Defection, and of the Continuance of their Pains.*
- VII. *That they who Repent, must bring forth Fruits worthy of Repentance.*
- VIII. *That there are many kinds of Elect, and of Repenting Sinners : And how all of them shall receive a Reward proportionable to the Measure of their Repentance and Good Works.*
- IX. *The Greatest Mysteries of the Militant and Triumphant Church which is to be built.*
- X. *Of Repentance and Alms-Deeds.*
-

---

The First BOOK  
 O F  
 St. HERMAS,  
 Which is Called  
 His VISIONS.

---

The First VISION.

*Against filthy and proud Thoughts :  
 also the Correction of Hermas for  
 his Neglect of his Sons.*

I. **H**E who had bred me up  
 Sold a certain young Maid  
 at Rome : whom when I  
 saw many Years after, I remembred  
 her, and began to love her as a Sister.  
 It happen'd some time afterwards,  
 X 3 that

that I saw her wash'd in the River *Tyber*; and I reach'd out my hand unto her, and help'd her out of the River. And when I saw her, I thought with my self, saying, That I should be happy had I fortun'd to have met with a Wife like unto her both for her Beauty and Manners. This I thought with my self; nor did I think any thing more. But not long after, as I was walking and musing on these Thoughts, I began to honor the Creature of God, thinking with my self how noble and beautiful it is. And when I had walk'd a little, I fell asleep. And the Spirit caught me away, and carried me through a certain Place towards the Right-hand, through which no Man could pass. It was a Place among Rocks, very steep, and unpassable for Water. When I was past this Place I came into a Plain; and there falling down upon my Knees, I began to pray unto the LORD, and to confess my Sins. And as I was praying, the Heaven was opened, and I saw the Woman which I had coveted, saluting me from Heaven,

ven, and saying, *HERMAS*, hail!  
 And I looking upon her, answered,  
 Lady, What dost thou do here? She  
 answered me, I am taken up hither  
 to convince thee of Sin unto the  
 LORD. Lady, said I, Wilt thou con-  
 vince me? No, said she: but hear  
 the Words which I am about to speak  
 unto thee. God who dwelleth in  
 Heaven, and hath made All things  
 out of Nothing, and has multiplied  
 them for his Holy Churches sake, is  
 angry with thee, because thou hast  
 sinned against me. And I answering  
 said unto her, Lady, If I have sinned  
 against thee, *tell me* where, or in  
 what Place, or when did I ever speak  
 an unseemly or dishonest Word unto  
 thee? Have I not always esteemed  
 thee as a Lady? Have I not always  
 revered thee as a Sister? Why  
 then dost thou imagine these wicked  
 things against me? Then she, smi-  
 ling upon me, said, The desire of  
 Naughtiness has risen up in thy  
 heart. Does it not seem to thee \* to  
 be an ill thing for a Righteous Man  
 to have an evil desire rise up in his  
 heart? It is indeed a Sin, and that a

\* Edit. Oxon.  
 aliter Corcler.

very great one, to such a Man : for a righteous Man thinketh what is righteous. And whilst he does so, and walketh uprightly, he shall have the LORD in Heaven favourable unto him in all his Works. But as for those who think wickedly in their hearts, they take to themselves Death and Captivity : and especially those who love this present World, and glory in their Riches, and regard not the good things that are to come ; their Souls wander up and down, *and know not where to fix.* Now this is the Case of such as are Doubtful, who trust not in the LORD, and despise and neglect their own life. But do thou pray unto the LORD, and he will heal thy Sins, and *the Sins* of thy whole House, and of all *his* Saints.

II. AS soon as she had spoken these Words the Heavens were shut, and I remained utterly swallowed up in Sadness and Fear ; and said within my self, If this be laid against me for Sin, how can I ever be saved ? or how shall I ever be able to intreat  
the

the LORD for my many and great Sins? With what Words shall I beseech him to be merciful unto me?

As I was thinking over these things, and meditating in my self upon them, behold a Chair set over against me of the whitest Wool, as bright as Snow.

And there came an old Woman in a bright Garment, having a Book in her hand, and sat alone, and saluted me, saying, *HERMAS*, hail!

Vid. Hieron.  
in Holoam.  
vii. 9.

And I being full of Sorrow, and weeping, answered, Hail, Lady! and she said unto me, Why art thou sad, *Hermas*, who wert wont to be patient; and modest, and always cheerful? I answered, and said to her, Lady, a Reproach has been objected to me by an excellent Woman, who tells me that I have sinned against her. She replied, Far be any such thing from the Servant of God. But it may be the desire of her has risen up in thy Heart? For indeed there is such a Thought even in the Servants of God, leading unto Sin. Nor ought such a detestable Thought to be in the Servant of God; nor should a Spirit that is approved desire that  
which

which is evil ; nor especially *HERMAS*, who contains himself from all wicked Appetites, and is full of all Simplicity, and of great Innocence.

III. **NEVERTHELESS** the **LORD** is not angry with thee for thine own sake, but upon the account of thy House, which has committed Wickedness against the **LORD**, and against their Parents. And that Act of thy Fondness towards thy Sons ; in that thou hast not admonished them, but hast permitted them to live wickedly ; and for this Cause the **LORD** is angry with thee : But he will heal all the Evils that are done before thee in thy House. For through their Sins and Iniquities, thou art wholly consumed in secular Affairs. But now the Mercy of God hath taken Compassion upon thee, and upon thine House, and hath \* greatly comforted thee ; only as for thee, do not wander, but be of an even Mind, and comfort thy House. As the Workman bringing forth his Work, offers it to whomsoever he pleases ; so shalt thou by teaching every day what is just, cut  
off

\* *In Glory. ---*  
Edit. Oxon.  
*Hath preserved*  
*thee in Glory.*

off a great sin. Wherefore cease not to admonish thy Sons, for the LORD knows that they will repent with all their heart, and he will write thee in the Book of Life. And when she had said this, she added unto me; Wilt thou hear me Read? I answer'd her, Lady, I will. Hear then, *said she*; And opening the Book she read, gloriously, greatly, and wonderfully, such things as I could not keep in my Memory. For they were terrible Words, such as no Man could bear. Howbeit I committed her last Words to my Remembrance; for they were but few, and of great use.

“Behold the mighty LORD, who by  
“his invincible Power, and with his  
“excellent Wisdom made the World,  
“and by his glorious Counsel encom-  
“passed the Beauty of his Creature,  
“and with the Word of his strength  
“fix'd the Heaven, and founded  
“the Earth upon the Waters; and  
“by his powerful Vertue establish'd  
“his Holy Church, which he hath  
“blessed: Behold, he will remove  
“the Heavens, and the Mountains,  
“the Hills and the Seas; and all  
things:



“things shall be made Plain for his  
 “Elect; that he may render unto  
 “them the Promise which he has pro-  
 “mised with much Honor and Joy;  
 “if so be that they shall keep the  
 “Commandments of God, which  
 “they have received with great  
 “Faith.

IV. AND when she had made  
 an end of Reading, she rose out of  
 the Chair; and behold four Young-  
 men came, and carried the Chair to  
 the East. And she called me unto  
 her, and touch'd my Breast, and said  
 unto me, Did my Reading please  
 thee? I answered, Lady, These last  
 things please me; but what went be-  
 fore was severe and hard. She said  
 unto me, These last things are for  
 † the Righteous, but the foregoing  
 for the Revolters and Heathen. And  
 as she was talking with me, Two  
 more appeared, and took her up on  
 their shoulders, and went to the East,  
 where the Chair was. And she went  
 chearfully away; and as she was go-  
 ing, said unto me, HERMAS, be of  
 good chear.

† Edit. Oxon.

VISION

## VISION II.

*Again, of his Neglect in Correcting his Talkative Wife; and of his Lewd Sons; and of his Own Manners.*

I. **A**S I was on the Way to *Cume*, about the same time that I had been the last Year, I began to call to mind the Vision I formerly had. And again the Spirit carried me away, and brought me into the same Place, in which I had been the Year before. And when I was come into the Place, I fell down upon my Knees, and began to Pray unto the LORD, and to Honour his Name, that he had esteemed me worthy, and had manifested unto me my former Sins. And when I arose from Prayer, behold I saw over against me the Old Woman whom I had seen the last Year, walking and reading in a certain Book. And she said unto me, Can't thou tell these things to the  
Elect

Clem. Alex.  
Strom. vi.

Elect of God? I answered and said unto her, Lady, I cannot retain such great things in my Memory, but give me the Book, and I will write them down. Take it, says she, and see that thou restore it again to me. As soon as I had receiv'd it, I went aside into a certain Place of the Field, and transcribed every Letter, for I found no Syllables. And as soon as I had finished what was written in the Book, the Book was suddenly caught out of my hands, but by whom I saw not.

II. AFTER fifteen days, when I had fasted, and intreated the LORD with all earnestness, the Knowledge of the Writing was revealed unto me. Now the Writing was this: Thy Seed, O HERMAS! hath sinned against the LORD, and have betrayed their Parents, through their great Wickedness. And they have been called the Betrayers of their Parents, and have gone on in their Treachery. And now have they added Lewdness to their other Sins, and the Pollutions of Naughtiness; Thus

Thus have they fill'd up the Measure of their Iniquities. But do thou upbraid thy Sons with all these Words; and thy Wife, which shall be thy Sister. And let her learn to refrain her Tongue, with which she calumniates. For when she shall hear these things, she will refrain her self, and shall obtain Mercy.

And || they shall be instructed, when thou shalt have reproach'd them with these Words, which the LORD has commanded to be revealed unto thee. Then shall their Sins be forgiven which they have heretofore committed, and the Sins of all the Saints, who have sinned even unto this day; if they shall repent with all their Hearts, and remove all Doubts out of their Hearts. For the LORD hath sworn by his Glory concerning his Elect, having determined the certain Day, that if any one shall even now sin, he shall not be saved. For the Repentance of the Righteous has its End. The Days of Repentance are fulfilled to all the Saints; but to the Heathen, there is Repentance even unto the Last Day. Thou shalt

|| So Coreler.  
Edit. Oxon.  
And she, &c.

shalt therefore say to those who are over the Church, that they order their Ways in Righteousness; that they may fully receive the Promise with much Glory. Stand fast therefore ye that work Righteousness; and continue to do it, that your Departure may be with the Holy Angels. Happy are ye, as many as shall endure the Great Tryal that is at hand, and whosoever shall not deny his Life. For the LORD hath sworn by his Son, that who so denieth his Son and him, being afraid of his Life; he will also deny him in the || World that is to come. But those who shall never deny him, he will of his exceeding great Mercy be favourable unto them.

|| Days that  
are coming.

III. BUT thou, O *Hermas*! remember not the Evils which thy Sons have done, neither neglect thy Sister, but take care that they amend of their former Sins. For they will be instructed by this Doctrine, if thou shalt not be mindful of what they have done wickedly. For the Remembrance of Evils worketh Death;  
but

but the Forgetting of them, Life Eternal. But thou, O HERMAS! hast undergone a great many Wordly Troubles for the Offences of thy House ; because thou hast neglected them, as things that did not belong unto thee ; and thou art wholly taken up with thy great Business. Nevertheless, for this cause shalt thou be saved, that thou hast not departed from the Living God ; And thy Simplicity, and singular Continency shall preserve thee, if thou shalt continue in them. Yea, they shall save All such as do such things ; and walk in Innocence and Simplicity. They who are of this kind, shall prevail against all Impiety, and continue unto Life Eternal. Happy are all they that do Righteousness, they shall not be consumed for ever. But thou wilt say ; Behold there is a great Tryal coming. If it seems good to thee, Deny *him* again. The LORD is nigh to them that turn to him, as it is written in the Books of *Heldam* and *Modal*, who prophecy'd to the *Israelites* in the Wilderness.

Numb. xi. 26,  
27.

IV. MORE OVER, Brethren, it was reavealed to me, as I was sleeping, by a very goodly young Man, saying unto me; What thinkest thou of that old Woman from whom thou receivedst the Book; Who is she? I answered, a Sybil. Thou art mistaken, said he, she is not. I reply'd, who is she then, Sir? He answered me, it is the Church of God. And I said unto him, Why then do's she appear Old? She is therefore, said he, an Old Woman, because she was the first of all the Creation, and the World was made for her. After this I saw a Vision at home in my own House, and the Old Woman whom I had seen before, came to me and ask'd me, whether I had yet deliver'd the Book *which she had given me* to the Elders of the Church? And I answered, that I had not yet. She reply'd, Thou hast well done, for I have certain Words *more* to tell thee. But when I shall have finished all the Words, they shall be clearly understood by the Elect. And thou shalt write two Books, and send one to  
Clement,

*Clement*, and one to *Grapté*. For *Clement* shall send it to the foreign Cities, because it is permitted to him so to do. But *Grapté* shall admonish the Widows and Orphans. But thou shalt read it to the Elders that are over the Church.

---

### VISION III.

*Of the Building of the Church-Triumphant ; and of the several Orders of Reprobates.*

I. **T**HE Vision which I saw, Brethren, was this. When I had often fasted and pray'd unto the LORD, that he would manifest unto me the Revelation which he had promised by the Old Woman to shew unto me : The same Night she appear'd unto me, and said unto me ; because thou dost thus afflict thy self, and art so desirous to know All things, come into the Field, where thou wilt, and about the sixth Hour, I will appear unto thee,



thee, and shew thee what thou must see. I ask'd her, saying; Lady, into what part of the Field? She answered, wherever thou wilt, *only* chuse a good and a private place. And before I could begin to speak and tell her the place, she said unto me; I will come where thou wilt. I was therefore, Brethren, in the Field, and I observed the Hours, and came into the place where I had appointed to go. And I beheld a Bench placed; it was a linnen Pillow, and over it spread a Covering of fine Linnen. When I saw these things order'd in this Manner, and that there was no Body in the place, I began to be astonish'd, and my Hair stood on end, and a kind of Horror seiz'd me, for I was alone. But being come to my self, and calling to mind the Glory of God, and taking Courage, I fell down upon my Knees, and began again to confess my Sins as before. And *whilst I was doing this*, the *Old Woman* came thither with the six young Men whom I had seen before, and stood behind me as I was praying and confessing my Sins

Sins unto the LORD. And touching me, she said ; leave off now to pray only for thy Sins ; pray also for Righteousness, that thou maist receive a part from her in thy House. And she lifted me up from the place, and took me by the Hand, and brought me to the Seat ; and said to the young Men, Go, and Build. As soon as they were departed, and we were alone, she said unto me ; sit here. I answered her ; Lady, let those who are Elder sit first. She reply'd, sit down as I bid you. And when I would have sate on the right side, she suffered me not, but made a sign to me with her Hand, that I should sit on the left. As I was therefore musing, and full of Sorrow, that she would not suffer me to sit on the right side, she said unto me, HERMAS, why art thou sad ? The place which is on the right Hand is theirs who have already attain'd unto God, and have suffered for his Name sake. But there is yet a great deal remaining unto thee, before thou canst sit with them. But continue, as thou dost in thy Sincerity,

and thou shalt sit with them ; as all others shall that do their Works, and shall bear what they have born.

II. I said unto her ; Lady, I would know what it is that they have suffered ? Hear *then*, said she : Wild Beasts, Scourgings, Imprisonments, and Crosses for his Name sake. For this cause the right Hand of Holiness belongs to them, and to all others as many as shall suffer for the Name of God ; but the left belongs to the rest. Howbeit the Gifts and the Promises belong to both ; to them, and to those on the left Hand ; only that sitting on the right Hand they have some Glory *above the others*. But thou art desirous to sit on the right Hand with them ; and thy Defects are many. But thou shalt be purg'd from thy Defects : As also all who doubt not, shall be cleansed from all the Sins which they have committed unto this Day. And when she had said this she would have departed ; Wherefore falling down before her Feet, I began to intreat her, for the LORD's sake, that she would shew  
me

me the Vision which she had promised. Then she again took me by the Hand, and lifted me up, and made me sit upon the Seat on the left side; and holding up a certain bright Wand, said unto me; seest thou that great thing? I reply'd; Lady, I see nothing. *She answered;* Dost thou not see over against thee a great Tower, which is built upon the Water with bright square Stones? For the Tower was built upon a square by those six young Men that came with her. And thousands of other Men brought Stones: Some drew them out of the Deep; Others carried them from the Ground, and gave them to the six young Men. And they took them, and built. As for those Stones which were drawn out of the Deep, they put them all into the Building; for they were polish'd, and their Squares exactly answered one another, and so one was joyn'd in such wise to the other, that there was no space to be seen where they joyn'd. Insomuch that the whole Tower appear'd to be built as it were of one Stone. But

as for the other Stones that were taken off from the Ground, some of them they rejected, others they fitted into the Building. Others they cut out, and cast at a distance from the Tower. Moreover there were many other Stones, which lay round about the Tower, which they made no use of in the Building. Some of these were rough, others had Clefs in them; others were white and round, not proper for the building of the Tower. Besides these, I saw other Stones cast afar off from the Tower, and falling into the High-Way, but not continuing in the Way, but were rolled from the Way into a desert Place. Others I saw falling into the Fire and burning: Others were glowing hot just by the Water, yet could not roll themselves into it, though very desirous to fall into the Water.

III. AND when she had shew'd me these things she would have departed. But I said unto her, Lady, What do's it profit me to see these things, and not understand what they mean?

mean ? She answer'd and said unto me, you are very cunning, in that you are desirous to know those things which || relate to the Tower. Yea, || *Are about.* said I, Lady, that I may declare them unto the Brethren ; and they may rejoyce, and hearing these things may glorifie God with great Honour. Then she said ; Many indeed shall hear them, and when they shall have heard them, some shall rejoyce, and others weep. And yet even these, if they shall repent, shall rejoyce too. Hear therefore what I shall say concerning the Parable of the Tower, and after this be no longer importunate with me about the Revelation. For these Revelations have an end, seeing they are fulfilled. But thou dost not leave off to desire Revelations ; for thou art very † urgent. † Edit. Oxon.

As for the Tower which thou seest built, it is I-my self, namely the Church, which have appeared to thee both now, and heretofore. Wherefore ask what thou wilt concerning the Tower, and I will reveal it unto thee, that thou mayst rejoyce with the Saints. I said unto her,

\* Clem. Alex.  
Strom. xii.

*Baptism.*

her, Lady, Because thou hast thought me once worthy to receive from thee the Revelation of all these things, declare them unto me. She answer'd me; whatsoever is fit to be revealed unto thee, shall be revealed: \* Only let thy Heart be with the LORD, and doubt not, whatsoever thou shalt see. I ask'd her, Lady, why is the Tower built upon the Water? *She replied*; I said before to thee that thou wert very Wise to enquire diligently concerning the Building! therefore thou shalt find the Truth. Hear therefore why the Tower is built upon the Water: Because your Life is and shall be saved by Water. For it is founded by the Word of the Almighty and Honourable Name; and is supported by the Invisible Power and Virtue of God.

IV. AND I answering said unto her; These things are very admirable: But Lady, who are those six young Men that build? They are, *said she*, the Angels of God, which were first appointed, and to whom the LORD has deliver'd all his Creatures,

tures, to build them up, and to rule over. For by these the Building of the Tower shall be finish'd. And who are the rest who bring them Stones ? They also are the Holy Angels of the LORD ; but the other are more excellent than these. Wherefore when the whole Building of the Tower shall be finished, they shall all feast together besides the Tower, and shall glorifie God, because the Structure of the Tower is finish'd. I ask'd her, saying ; I would know the Condition of the Stones , and the meaning of them, what it is ? She answering said unto me ; Art thou better than all others , that this should be revealed unto thee ? For others are both before thee, and better than thou art, to whom these Visions should be made manifest : Nevertheless that the Name of God may be honour'd, it has been, and shall be reveal'd unto thee, for the sake of those who are doubtful , and think in their Hearts whether these things are so or not ? Tell them that all these things are true ; and that there is nothing in them that  
is



is not true; but all are firm, and truly established.

V. H E A R now then concerning the Stones that are in the Building. The square and white Stones, which agree exactly in their joynts; are the Apostles, and Bishops, and Doctors, and Ministers who through the Mercy of God have come in, and govern'd, and taught, and ministred holily and modestly to the Elect of God, both that are fallen asleep, and which yet remain; and have always agreed with them, and have had peace within themselves and with each other. For which cause their Joynts exactly meet together in the Building of the Tower. They which are drawn out of the Deep and put into the Building, and whose Joynts agree with the other Stones which are already built, are those which are already fallen asleep, and have suffered for the sake of the LORD'S Name. And what are the other Stones, Lady, that are brought from the Earth; I would know what they are? She answer'd, They which  
lie

lie upon the Ground and are not polished, are those which God has approved because they have walked in the Law of the LORD, and directed their ways in his Commandments. They which are put in the Building of the Tower, are the young in Faith and the Faithful. And these are admonish'd by the Angels to do well, because that Iniquity is not found in them. But who are those whom they rejected, and laid besides the Tower? They are such as have sinn'd, and are willing to repent; for which cause they are not cast far from the Tower, because they will be useful in the Building if they shall repent. They therefore that are yet to repent, if they shall repent shall become strong in the Faith; that is, if they repent now, whilst the Tower is building. For if the Building shall be finish'd, there will then be no place for them to be put in, but they shall be rejected; For he only has this Priviledge, who shall now be put to the Tower.

|| Vid. Edit.  
Oxon.

VI. BUT would you know who they are that were cut out and cast afar off from the Tower? || Lady, said I, I desire it. They are the Children of Iniquity, who believed only in Hypocrisie, and departed not from their Evil Ways: For this cause they are not saved, because they are not of any Use in the Building by reason of their Sins. Wherefore they are cut out, and cast afar off, because of the Anger of the LORD, and because they have provoked him to anger against them. As for the great Number of other Stones which thou hast seen placed *about the Tower*, but not put into the Building; those which are rugged, are they who have known the Truth, but have not continued in it, nor been joyn'd to the Saints; and therefore are unprofitable. Those that have Clefts in them, are they who keep up Discord in their Hearts against each other, and live not in Peace; that are friendly when present with their Brethren, but as soon as they are departed from one another, their  
Wicked-

Wickedness still continues in their Hearts. These are the Clefts which are seen in those Stones. Those that are maim'd and short are they who have believed indeed ; but still are in great measure full of Wickedness ; for this cause are they maim'd and not whole. But what are the white and round Stones, Lady, and which are not proper for the Building of the Tower ? She answering said unto me ; How long wilt thou continue Foolish and without Understanding ; asking every thing and discerning nothing ? They are such as have Faith indeed ; but have withal the Riches of this present World. When therefore any Troubles arise, for the sake of their Riches they deny the LORD. I answering said unto her ; when therefore will they be Profitable to the LORD ? When their Riches shall be cut away, says she, in which they take delight, then they will be profitable unto the LORD for his Building. For as a round Stone, unless he be cut away, and cast somewhat off of its Bulk cannot be made square ; so they who are rich in this World,

World, unless their Riches be pared off, cannot be made profitable unto the LORD. Learn this from thy own Experience: When thou wert Rich, thou wast unprofitable; but now thou art profitable, and fit for the Life which thou hast undertaken; for thou also once wast one of those Stones.

VII. AS for the rest of the Stones which thou sawest cast afar off from the Tower, and running in the Way; and tumbled out of the Way into Desert places; they are such as have believed indeed, but through their doubting have forsaken their true Way, thinking that they could find a better. But they wander and are miserable; going into desolate Ways. Then for those Stones which fell into the Fire, and were burnt; They are those who have for ever departed from the Living God; nor has it ever come into their Hearts to repent, by reason of the Affection which they bear to their Lusts and Wickednesses which they commit. And what are the rest which fell by the Water,

ter, and could not roll into the Water? They are such as have heard the Word; and were willing to be baptized in the Name of the LORD; but considering the great Holiness which the Truth requires, have withdrawn themselves, and walk'd again after their wicked Lusts. Thus she finish'd the Explication of the Tower. But I being still urgent, ask'd her: Is there Repentance allow'd to all those Stones which are thus cast away and were not suitable to the Building of the Tower; and shall they find place in this Tower? They may repent, said she, but they cannot come into this Tower; but they shall be placed in a much lower Rank; and this after that they shall have been afflicted, and fulfill'd the Days of their Sins. And for this cause they shall be removed, because they have received the Word of Righteousness. And then they shall be translated from their Afflictions, if they shall have a true sense in their Hearts of what they have done amiss. But if they shall not have this Sense in their Hearts, they shall not be

saved, by reason of the Hardness of their Hearts.

VIII. WHEN therefore I had done asking her concerning all these things, she said unto me ; Wilt thou see somewhat else ? And I being desirous of seeing it, I became very chearful of Countenance. She therefore looing back upon me, and smiling a little, said unto me : Seest thou seven Women about the Tower ? Lady, said I, I see them. This Tower, replied she, is supported by them, according to the Command of the LORD : Hear therefore the Effects of them. The first of them which holds her Hand fast, is called Faith ; by her the Elect shall be saved. The next which is girt up, and looks Manly, is named Abstinence : She is the Daughter of Faith. Whosoever therefore shall follow her shall be happy in all his Life ; because he shall abstain from all evil Works, believing that if he shall contain himself from all Concupiscence, he shall be the Heir of Eternal Life. And what Lady, said I, are the other five ?

They

They are, reply'd she, the Daughters of One another. One of them is called Simplicity; the next Innocence; the third Modesty; then Discipline, and the last of all is Charity. When therefore thou shalt have observed the Works of their Mother, thou shalt be able to observe all things. Lady, said I, I would know what *particular* Virtue every one of these has. Hear then, replied she; They have equal Vertues; and their Vertues are knit together, and follow one another as they were born. From Faith proceeds Abstinence; from Abstinence, Simplicity; from Simplicity, Innocence; from Innocence, Modesty; from Modesty, Discipline and Charity. Therefore the Works of these are Holy and Chast, and Right. Whosoever therefore shall serve these, and hold fast to their Works, he shall have his Dwelling in the Tower with the Saints of God. *Then* I ask'd her concerning the Times, whether the End were now at Hand? But she cry'd out with a loud Voice, saying; O foolish Man! Dost thou not see the



Tower that it is always building ? When therefore the Tower shall be finish'd, and built, it shall have an End ; and indeed it shall soon be accomplished. But do not ask me any more Questions. What has been said may suffice for thee and for all the Saints ; with the renewal of your Spirits. For these things have not been revealed to thee only, but that thou mayst make them manifest unto all. For therefore, O HERMAS, after three Days thou must understand these Words which I begin to speak unto thee, that thou mayst speak them in the Ears of the Saints ; that when they shall have heard and done them, they may be cleansed from their Iniquities, and thou together with them.

IX. HEAR me therefore, O my Sons ! I have bred you up in much Simplicity, and Modesty, and Innocency ; for the Mercy of God, which has dropp'd down upon you in Righteousness ; that you should be sanctified, and justified from all Sin and Wickedness : But ye will not  
cease

cease from your evil Doings. Now therefore hearken unto me, and have Peace one with another, and visit one another, and receive one another, and do not enjoy the Creatures of God alone. Give freely to them that are in need. For some by too free feeding contract an Infirmary in their Flesh, and do Injury to their Bodies; whilst the Flesh of others, who have not Food, withers away, because they want sufficient Nourishment, and their Bodies are consum'd. Wherefore this Intemperance is hurtful to you, who have, and do not communicate to them that want. Prepare for the Judgment that is about to come upon you. Ye that are the more Eminent search out them that are Hungry, whilst the Tower is yet unfinish'd. For when the Tower shall be finish'd, ye shall be willing to do good, and shall not find any place for it. See therefore, ye that glory in your Riches, least perhaps they groan who are in want; and their Sighing come up unto God, and ye be shut out with your Goods without the Gate of the Tower.

Behold I now warn you who are set over the Church, and love the highest Seats ; be not ye like unto those that work Mischief. And they indeed carry about their Poison in Boxes ; but ye contain your Poison and Medicines in your Hearts ; and will not purge them, and mix your Sense with a Pure Heart , that ye may find Mercy with the Great King. Take heed, my Children, that your Dissentions deprive you not of your Lives. How will ye instruct the Elect of God , when ye your selves want Correction ? Wherefore admonish one another, and be at Peace among your selves ; that I standing before your Father, may give an Account for you unto the LORD.

X. AND when she had made an end of talking with me, the six young Men that built came and carried her to the Tower ; and four others took up the Seat *on which she sate*, and went away again, they also, to the Tower. I saw not the Faces of these, for their Backs were towards me. As she was going along

I asked her, that she would reveal to me what concern'd the three Forms in which she had appear'd unto me. But she answering said unto me; concerning these things thou must ask some other, that they may be revealed unto thee. Now, Brethren, in the First Vision the last Year, she appeared unto me exceeding old, and sitting in a Chair. In another Vision, she had indeed a youthful Face, but her Flesh and Hair were old; and she talked with me standing, and was more chearful than the first time. In the third Vision, she was in all respects much younger, and comely to the Eye; only she had the Hair of an Aged Person: Yet she looked chearful, and sat upon a Seat. I was therefore very sad concerning these things, until I might understand the Vision. Wherefore I saw the same Old Woman in a Vision of the Night saying unto me; All Prayer needeth Humility. Fast therefore, and thou shalt learn from the LORD that which thou dost ask. I fasted therefore one Day. The same Night a young Man

appear'd to me and said ; Why dost thou thus often desire Revelations in thy Prayers ? Take heed that by asking many things, thou hurt not thy Body. Let these Revelations suffice thee ; Canst thou see more notable Revelations than those which thou hast already received ? I answered and said unto him ; Sir, I only ask this one thing upon the account of the three Figures of the Old Woman *that appeared to me*, that the Revelation may be compleat. He answer'd me ; You are not without Understanding, but your Doubts make you so ; forasmuch as you have not your Heart with the LORD. I replyed and said ; But I shall learn these things more carefully from you.

XI. HEAR then, says he, concerning the Figures, about which you enquire. And first, in the first Vision she appear'd to thee in the Shape of an Old Woman ; because your ancient Spirit was decay'd, and without Strength, by reason of your Infirmities, and the Doubtfulness of your Heart. For as they who are  
Old

Old have no hope of renewing themselves, nor expect any thing but their Departure : So you being weakned through your worldly Affairs gave your self up to Sloath, and cast not away your Sollicitude from your self upon the LORD ; and your Sense was confused, and you grew Old in your Sadness. But Sir, I would know why she sate upon a Chair ? He answered ; Because every one that is weak sitteth upon a Chair by reason of his Infirmary ; that his Weakness may be upheld : See therefore the Figure of the first Vision.

XII. IN the second Vision you saw her standing, and having a youthful Face, and more chearful than her former ; but her Flesh and her Hair were ancient. Hear, said he, this Parable also. When any one grows Old, He despairs of himself by reason of his Infirmary and Poverty ; and expects nothing but the last Day of his Life. But on the suddain an Inheritance is left to him ; and he hears of it, and rises ; and  
being

being become chearful, he puts on *new* Strength ; And now he no longer lies along, but stands ; and is deliver'd from his former Sorrow ; and sits not, but acts manfully. So you, having heard the Revelation which God revealed unto you ; because God had Compassion upon you, and renew'd your Spirit ; both laid aside your Infirmities, and Strength came to you, and you grew strong in the Faith ; and God seeing your Strength rejoiced. For this cause he shewed you the Building of the Tower ; and will shew other things unto you, if you shall have Peace with all your Heart among each other.

XIII. BUT in the third Vision you saw her yet younger ; fair and chearful, and of a serene Countenance. For as if some good News comes to one that is sad, he straightway forgets his Sadness, and regards nothing else but the good News which he has heard ; and for the rest he is comforted, and his Spirit is renew'd through the Joy which  
he

he has received : Even so you have been renew'd in your Spirit, by seeing these good things. And for that you saw her sitting upon a Bench, it denotes a strong Position ; because a Bench has four Feet, and stands strongly. And even the World its self is kept up by the four Elements. They therefore that repent perfectly, shall be young ; and they that turn from their Sins with their whole Heart, shall be establish'd. And now you have the Revelation fully ; ask no more to have any thing farther revealed unto you. But if any thing be to be revealed, it shall be made manifest unto you.

---

## VISION IV.

*Of the Tryal and Tribulation  
that is about to come upon Men.*

I. **I** Saw a Vision, Brethren, twenty Days after the former Vision ; a Figure of the Tribulation that is at hand. I was walking in the Field  
Way :



Way : Now from the publick Way to the Mannour *whither I went* is about ten Furlongs. It is a Way very little frequented : And as I was walking alone, I entreated the LORD that he would confirm the Revelations which he had shew'd unto me by his Holy Church: and would grant Repentance to all his Servants, who had been offended, that his great and honourable Name might be glorified ; and because he thought me Worthy to whom he might shew his Wonders ; and that I might honour him, and give thanks unto him. And behold somewhat like a Voice answer'd me ; *Doubt not*, HERMAS. Wherefore I began to think, and say within my self; why should I doubt, seeing I am thus settled by the LORD, and have seen such glorious things ? I had gone but a little farther, Brethren, when behold I saw a Dust rise up to Heaven. I began to say within my self; Is there a Drove of Cattle coming, that raises such a Dust ? It was about a Furlong off from me. And behold I saw the Dust rise more and more, inso-  
much

much that I began to suspect that there was somewhat extraordinary in it. And the Sun shone a little ; and behold I saw a great Beast, as it were a Whale ; and fiery Locusts came out of his Mouth. The Heighth of the Beast was about a hundred Feet ; and he had a Head like a || large Earthen || *Vas urnale.* Vessel. I began to weep, and to pray unto the LORD, that he would deliver me from it. Then I call'd to mind the Word which I had heard ; *Doubt not,* HERMAS. Wherefore, Brethren, putting on the Faith of God, and remembering who it was that had taught me great things, I deliver'd my self boldly unto the Beast. Now the Beast came on in such a manner, as if it could with one Blast have devour'd a City. I came near unto it ; and the Beast extended its whole Bulk upon the Ground ; and put forth nothing but its Tongue, nor once moved its self, till I had quite pass'd by it. Now the Beast had upon its Head four Colours, first Black, then a Red, and Bloudy Colour, then a Golden ; and then a White.

II. AFTER that I had pass'd by it, and was gon forward about thirty Foot ; behold there met me a certain Virgin well-adorn'd, as if she had been just come out of her Bride-Chamber, all in white, having on white Shoes, and a Vail down her Face ; and cover'd with shining Hair. Now I know by my former Visions that it was the Church ; and thereupon grew the more chearful. And she saluted me saying, Hail O Man ! I return'd the Salutation, saying, Lady, Hail ! She answering said unto me, Did nothing meet you, O Man ! I replied ; Lady, There met me such a Beast , as seem'd able to devour a whole People : But by the Power of God, and through his singular Mercy I escap'd it. Thou didst escape it well, said she ; because thou didst cast thy whole Care upon God ; and open'dst thy Heart unto him ; believing that thou couldst be safe by no other, than by his Great and Honourable Name. For this cause the LORD sent his Angel, who is over the Beasts, whose Name is HEGRIN , and stopp'd his Mouth

Mouth, that he should not devour thee. Thou hast escap'd a great Tryal by means of thy Faith; and because thou, didst not doubt for such a terrible Beast. Go therefore, and relate to the Elect of God, the great things that he hath done for thee. And thou shalt say unto them, that this Beast is the Figure of the Tryal that is about to come. If therefore ye shall have prepared your selves, ye may escape it, if your Heart be pure and without Spot; and if ye shall serve God all the rest of your Days without complaint. Cast all your Cares upon the LORD, and he will direct them. Believe in God, ye doubtful, because he can do all things; He can both turn away his Wrath from you, and send you Help and Security. Wo to the double-minded, to those who shall hear these Words, and shall despise them; It had been better for them that they had not been born.

III. THEN I ask'd her concerning the four Colours which the Beast had upon its Head. But she answer'd me, saying; Again art thou curious  
in

in that thou askest concerning these things. And I said unto her, Lady; Shew me what they are? Hear, said she: The Black which thou sawest, *denotes* the World in which you dwell. The Fiery and Bloudy Colour, *signifies*, that this Age must be destroyed by Fire and Bloud: The Golden Part are ye, who have escaped out of it. For as Gold is try'd by the Fire, and is made Profitable; so are ye also in like manner try'd who dwell among *the Men of this World*. They therefore that shall endure to the end, and be proved by them, shall be purged. And as Gold, by this Tryal is cleansed and loses it Dross; so shall ye also cast away all Sorrow, and Trouble; and be made pure for the Building of the Tower. But the White Colour, denotes the time of the World which is to come, in which the Elect of God shall inhabit: Because the Elect of God shall be pure and without Spot unto Life Eternal. Wherefore do not thou cease to speake these things in the Ears of the Saints. Here ye have the Figure of the great Tribulation

bulat[i]on that is about to come ;  
which if you please, shall be nothing  
to you. Keep therefore in mind the  
things which I have said unto you.  
When she had spoken thus much, she  
departed : But I saw not whither  
she went. But suddainly I heard a  
Noise, and I turn'd back, being a-  
fraid ; for I thought that the Beast  
was coming toward me.

---

A a

The

---

The Second BOOK  
 O F  
 St. HERMAS  
 Which is Called  
 His COMMANDS.

---

*The Introduction.*

**W**HEN I had pray'd at home, and was fate down upon the Bed; a certain Man came in to me with a Reverend Look, in the Habit of a SHEPHERD cloath'd with a white Cloak, having his Bag upon his Back, and his Staff in his Hand, and saluted me. I return'd his Salutation; and immediately he fate down by me, and said unto me; I am sent by that Venerable

ble Messenger, that I should dwell with thee all the remaining Days of thy life. But I thought that he was come to try me, and said unto him, Who are you? For I know to whom I am delivered. He said unto me, Do you not know me? I answer'd, No. I am, said he, that SHEPHERD, to whose Care you are delivered. Whilst he was yet speaking his Shape was changed; and when I knew that it was he to whom I was committed, I was aham'd, and a suddain Fear came upon me, and I was utterly overcome with Sadness, because I had spoken so foolishly unto him. But he said unto me, Be not aham'd, but stir up Vertue in thy Mind, through the Commands which I am about to deliver unto thee. For, said he, I am sent to shew unto thee all those things again, which thou hast seen before; and especially such of them as may be of most use unto you. And first of all write my COMMANDS and SIMILITUDES, that by often reading of them, you may the more easily || keep them in *Memory*. || *Observe them.* Whereupon I wrote his Commands



and Similitudes, as he bad me. Which things if when you have heard, ye shall observe to do them ; and shall exercise your selves in them, and walk according to them with a pure Mind ; ye shall receive from the LORD those things which he has promised unto you. But if having heard them ye shall not repent, but shall still go on to add to your Sins ; ye shall be punished by him. All these things that SHEPHERD, the Angel of Repentance, commanded me to write.

---

## The First COMMAND.

### *Of Believing in ONE GOD.*

Irenæus lib. 1.  
c. 3. Origen.  
de Princ. l. 1.  
c. 3. Euseb.  
Hist. Eccles. l.  
v. c. 8. Atha-  
nas. de Incarn.  
Verb. &c.

**F**IRST of all believe that there is One God who created and finished All things ; and made All things out of Nothing. He comprehends all things, and is only Immenſe, *not to be comprehended by Any*. Who can neither be defined by any Words, nor conceived by the Mind. Therefore believe in him, and fear him ;

him ; and fearing him abstain *from all Evil*. Keep these things , and cast all Iniquity far from thee ; and put on Righteousness ; and thou shalt live to God, if thou shalt keep this Commandment.

---

## The Second COMMAND.

*That we must avoid Detraction ;  
and do our Alms-Deeds with  
Simplicity.*

I. **H**E said unto me ; Be innocent and || without disguise ; || *Simple.*  
so shalt thou be like an Infant who knows no Malice, which destroys the Life of Man. *And* especially see that thou speak Evil of None ; nor willingly hear any one speak *Evil of Any*. For if thou shalt hear them, thou shalt be partaker of the Sin of him that speaketh Evil ; and by believing *such a one* thou also shalt have Sin ; because thou believedst him that spake Evil of thy Brother.

\* Vid. Antioch.  
Hom. xxix.  
† Dæmon.

|| Vid. Antioch.  
Hom. xcvi.  
\* Simply.

† His own.

¶ Gloriously to  
God.

\* Detraction is a pernicious thing ; an inconstant † Evil Spirit ; that never continues in Peace, but is always in Discord. *Wherefore* refrain thy self from it ; and keep Peace evermore with thy Brother. Put on a Holy Constancy, in which there are no Sins ; but all is full of Joy : and do good of thy Labours. || Give \* without distinction to all that are in Want ; not doubting to whom thou givest. But give to All ; for God will have us give to all of † the Goods which he dispenses to us. They therefore that receive shall give an Account to God, both wherefore they received, and for what End. And they that receive without a real need, shall give an account *for it* ; but he that gives shall be Innocent : For he has fulfill'd his Duty as he received it from God ; not making any Choice to whom he should give, and to whom not. And this Service he did with Simplicity, and || to the Glory of God. Keep therefore this Command according as I have deliver'd it unto thee ; that thy Repentance may be found

to be sincere ; and that Good may come to thy House ; and have a pure Heart.

## The Third COMMAND.

*Of avoiding Lying and the Repentance of HERMAS for his Dissimulation.*

|| **M**OREOVER he said unto me ; Love Truth ; and let all the Speech be true which proceeds out of thy Mouth ; that the Spirit which the LORD hath appointed in thy Flesh may be found true towards all Men ; and the LORD be magnified, who hath given such a Spirit unto thee : Because God is true in all his Words, and there is no Lie found in him. But they that lie, deny the LORD ; \* not rendring to God what they received from him. For they received the Spirit without a Lie : if therefore they make that a Lyar, they defile the Commandment of the LORD, and become Deceivers.

|| Antioch.  
Hom. lxvi.

\* See below,  
Book lii. Sin.  
x. Chap. 32.

ceivers. And when I heard this, I wept bitterly. And when he saw me weeping he said unto me ; Why weepest thou ? And I said ; Because, Sir, I doubt whether I can be saved ? Heask'd me, Wherefore ? I reply'd ; Because, Sir, I never spake a true Word in my Life ; but always lived in Dissimulation ; and affirm'd a Lie for Truth to all Men ; and no Man contradicted me, but all gave Credit to my Words. How then can I live, seeing I have done in this manner ? And he said unto me ; Thou thinkest well , and truly. For thou oughtest, as the Servant of God, to have walked in the Truth, and not have joyn'd an Evil Conscience with the Spirit of Truth ; nor have grieved the Holy and true Spirit of God. And I reply'd unto him ; Sir, I never before hearkned so diligently to these things. He answer'd ; Now thou hearest them : Take care from henceforth, that even those things which thou hast formerly spoken falsely for the sake of thy Business, may by thy present Truth, receive Credit. For even those

those things may be credited, if for the time to come thou shalt speak the Truth: and † by so doing thou mayst attain unto Life. And who-<sup>† If thou shalt keep the Truth</sup> soever shall hearken unto this Command, and do it; and shall depart from all Lying, he shall live unto God.

## The Fourth COMMAND.

*Of putting away ones Wife for Adultery.*

I. **F**URTHERMORE, said he, I command thee, that thou keep || thy self Chast; and that thou suffer not any thought † of any other † <sup>|| Chastity.</sup> Marriage, or of Fornication, to <sup>† Another Man.</sup> enter into thy Heart; For such a Thought produces a great Sin. But be thou at all times mindful of the LORD, and thou shalt never sin. For if such an Evil Thought should arise in thy Heart, thou wouldst be guilty of a great Sin; and they who do such things, follow the way of Death.

Look

Look therefore to thy self, and keep thy self from such a Thought : For where Chastity remains in the Heart of a Righteous Man, there an Evil Thought ought never to arise. And I said unto him, Sir, Suffer me to speak a little with you. He bad me, Say on. And I answer'd, Sir, If a Man shall have a Wife that is faithful in the LORD, and shall catch her in Adultery ; shall a Man sin that continues to live still with her ? And he said unto me ; As long as he is ignorant of her Sin, he commits no fault in living with her : But if a Man shall know his Wife to have offended ; and she shall not repent of her Sin, but go on still in her Fornication, and a Man shall continue nevertheless to live with her, he shall become guilty of her Sin, and partake with her in her Adultery. And I said unto him ; what therefore *is to be done* if the Woman continues on in her Sin ? He answered ; Let her Husband put her away, and let him continue by himself. But if he shall put away his Wife, and marry another, he also shall

shall commit Adultery. And I said; What if the Woman that is so put away shall repent, and be willing to return to her Husband, shall she not be received by him? He said unto me, Yes; and if her Husband shall not receive her, he will sin; and commit a great Offence against himself: But he ought to receive her though an Offender, if she repents; only not often. For to the Servants of God there is but one Repentance. And for this Cause a Man that putteth away his Wife ought not to take another, because she may repent. This Act is alike both in the Man and in the Woman. Now they commit Adultery, not only who pollute their Flesh, but who also make an Image. || If therefore a Woman perseveres in any thing of this kind, and repents not; depart from her, and live not with her: Otherwise thou also shalt be Partaker of her Sin. But it is therefore commanded that both the Man and Woman should remain unmarried, because such Persons may repent. Nor do I in this administer any Occasion

|| See 1 Cor.  
vii. 15.



caſion for the doing of theſe things ſo; but *rather* that whoſo has offend- ed ſhould not offend any more. But for their former Sins, God who has the Power of Healing will give a Remedy : For it is he who can do all things.

† *Senſe.*

¶ *Præpoſitus :*  
*See below,*  
*Chap. iii.*

\* *Great Wiſ-*  
*dom.*

¶ *In his Under-*  
*ſtanding.*

II. I ASKED him again , and ſaid ; Seeing my LORD has thought me worthy with whom to dwell continually ; ſpeak a few Words unto me, becauſe I underſtand nothing and my Heart is hardned through my former Converſation; and open my † Underſtanding be- cauſe I am very dull, and apprehend nothing at all. And he answering ſaid unto me ; I am the ¶ Miniſter of Repentance, and give † Under- ſtanding to all that repent. Do's it not ſeem to thee to be \* a very wiſe thing to repent ? Becauſe he that do's ſo gets a great † Feeling : For he † feels himſelf to have ſinn'd and done wickedly in the ſight of the LORD ; and he remembers ¶ with- in himſelf that he has offended, and repents and do's no more wickedly ;  
but

but do's that which is good, and humbles his Soul, and afflicts it, because he has offended. You see therefore that Repentance is a deep Sense. And I said unto him; For this cause, Sir, I enquire diligently into all things, because I am a Sinner, that I may know what I must do that I may live; and because my Sins are many. And he said unto me; Thou shalt live if thou shalt keep these my Commandments. And whosoever shall hear and do these Commands, shall live unto God.

III. AND I said unto him; I have even now heard from certain Teachers that there is no other Repentance besides that of *Baptism*; when we go down into the Water, and receive the Forgiveness of our Sins: and that after that, we must sin no more, but live in \*Purity. \* *Chastity.*

And he said unto me, thou hast † been rightly inform'd. Nevertheless seeing now thou enquirest diligently into all things, I will manifest this *also* unto thee; yet not so as to give any Occasion of *sinning* either

† *Rightly heard*

|| *Those days.*

\* Vid. Annot.  
Coteler. in loc.  
pag. 60, 61.

either to those who shall hereafter believe, or who have already believ'd in the LORD. For neither they who have already believed, or who shall hereafter believe have any Repentance of Sins, but Forgiveness of *them*. But as to those who are already called, the LORD before || that time appointed Repentance : Because God knoweth the Thoughts of all Mens Hearts, and their Infirmities; and the manifold Wickedness of the Devil, who is always contriving something against the Servants of God ; and maliciously lays Snares for them. Therefore our merciful LORD had Compassion towards his Creature, and appointed that Repentance, and gave unto me the Power of it. And therefore I say unto thee, If any one after that Great and Holy Calling shall be tempted by the Devil and Sin, he has but one \* Repentance. But if he shall often sin and repent ; it shall not profit such a one ; for he shall hardly live unto God. And I said, Sir, I am restored again to Life since I have thus diligently hearken'd to these

these Commands. For I perceive, that if I shall not hereafter add any more to my Sins, I shall be saved. And he said, Thou shalt be saved; and so shall all others, as many as shall observe these Commandments.

IV. AND again I said unto him; Sir, seeing thou hearest me patiently, shew me yet one thing more. Tell me, saith he, what it is. And I said; If a Husband or Wife die, and the Party which survives marry again, do's he sin in so doing? || He that marries (says he) sins not: Howbeit if he shall remain single, he shall thereby gain to himself great Honour with the LORD. Keep therefore thy Chastity, and Modesty; and thou shalt live unto God. Observe from henceforth those things which I speak with thee, and command thee to observe; from the time that I have been deliver'd unto thee, and dwell in thy House. So shall thy former Sins be forgiven, if thou shalt keep these my Commandments. And in like man-

ner

|| Vid. Nct. Co-  
teler. in loc.  
p. 64. B. C.  
Rom. vii. 3.  
Comp. 1 Cor.  
vii.

ner shall all others be forgiven, who shall observe these my Commandments.

---

## The Fifth COMMAND.

*Of the Sadness of the Heart :  
And of Patience.*

I. **B**E Patient, says he, and of an Even-Mind ; so shalt thou have Dominion over all Wicked Works, and shalt fulfil all Righteousness. For if thou shalt be Patient, the Holy Spirit which dwelleth in thee shall be pure ; and not be darkned by any other Evil Spirit ; But being full of Joy shall be enlarged, and feast in the † Body in which it dwells, and shall appear before the LORD with Joy, and in great Peace. But if any †† Anger shall over-take thee, presently the Holy Spirit which is in thee will be straightned and seek to depart *from thee*. For he is choaked by the Evil Spirit,

† *The Vessel.*

†† *Disposition to Anger : And so in what follows.*

Spirit; and has not the || Liberty of <sup>Place.</sup> appearing before the LORD as he would. For he is grieved by †† Anger. \* When therefore both these <sup>\* Vid. Antioch. Hom. cx.</sup> Spirits dwell together, it is destructive to a Man. As if one should take a little Wormwood, and put it into a Vessel of Honey, the whole Honey would be spoiled; and a great Quantity of Honey is corrupted by a very little Wormwood, and loses the Sweetness of Honey, and has no longer any Favour with its Lord; because the whole Honey is made bitter, and loses its Use. But if no Wormwood be put into the Honey it is sweet and profitable to its Lord. Thus is an Equality of Mind sweeter than Honey, and profitable to the LORD, who dwelleth in it. But †† Anger is unprofitable. If therefore †† Anger shall be mixed with Equanimity, the Soul is distress'd, and its Prayer is not profitable || with God. And I <sup>To.</sup> said unto him; Sir, I would know the Sinfulness of †† Anger, that I may keep my self from it. And he said unto me, Thou shalt know it;

B b                      and

\* *Angel.*

and if thou shalt not keep thy self from it, thou shalt lose thy Hope with all thy House. Wherefore depart from it. For I the \* Messenger of Righteousness am with thee; and all that depart from it, as many as shall repent with all their Hearts, shall live unto God; and I will be with them, and will keep them all. For all such as have repented, have been justified, by the \* Messenger which bringeth Salvation.

†† *Angriness.*‖ *Virtue.*

II. AND now, says he, hear the Wickedness of †† Anger; How Evil and Hurtful it is, and how it overthrowes the Servants of God. For nothing can hurt those that are full of Faith, Because the ‖ Power of God is with them. But he overthrowes the doubtful, and those that are destitute of Faith: But as often as he sees the other sort, he will cast himself into their Hearts. Let not therefore any Man or Woman be in Bitterness for any thing; whether for such things as they have occasion for here; or for Sustenance; or for any vain Word, if any should chance

to fall in ; or by reason of any Friend ; or for any Debt ; or for any superfluous things of the like Nature. For these things are foolish, and superfluous , and vain to the Servants of God. But Equanimity is strong, and forcible ; and of great Power, and sitteth in great Enlargement ; is chearful, rejoicing in Peace ; and glorifying God at all times with Meekness. And this Equality of Mind dwells with those that are full of Faith. But †† Anger is foolish, †† *Angriness : Disposition to Anger. See above.* and light, and empty. Now Bitterness is bred through Folly ; by Bitterness, †† Anger ; by †† Anger, Fury. And this Fury arising from many evil Principles, worketh a great and uncurable Sin. For when all these things are in the same \* Man \* *Vessel.* in which the Holy Spirit dwells ; the Vessel cannot contain them, but runs over : And because the tender Spirit cannot tarry with the Evil-One ; it departs and dwells with him that is mild. When therefore it is departed from the Man in whom it dwelt ; that Man becomes destitute of the Holy Spirit, and is af-



terwards filled with Wicked Spirits, and is blinded with Evil Thoughts. Thus do's it happen to all Angry Men. Wherefore depart thou from Anger, and put on Equanimity, and resist Wrath; and thou shalt be found with Modesty and Chastity by God. Take good heed therefore that thou neglect not this Commandment. For if thou shalt obey this Command, then shalt thou also be able to observe the other Commandments which I shall command thee. Wherefore strengthen thy self now in these Commands, that thou mayst live unto God. And whosoever shall observe these Commandments shall live unto God.

---

### The Sixth COMMAND.

\* Vid Coreler:  
Annot. in loc.  
pag. 67. 68.  
Comp. Edit.  
Oxon. p. 61.  
Not. a.

*That every Man has two \* Angels,  
and of the Suggestions of both.*

**I** COMMANDED thee, said he,  
in my first Commandment, that  
thou shouldst keep Faith, and Fear,  
and

and Repentance. Yes, Sir, said I. He continued; But now I will shew thee the Vertues of these Commands, that thou mayst know their Effects; how they are † prescribed alike to the Just and Unjust. Do thou therefore believe the Righteous, but give no Credit to the Unrighteous. For Righteousness keepeth the right Way, but Unrighteousness the wicked Way. Do thou therefore keep the right Way, and leave that which is Evil. For the Evil Way has not a Good End; but hath many Stumbling-Blocks; it is rugged and full of Thorns, and leads to Destruction, and is hurtful to all such as walk in it. But they who go in the right Way, walk with Evenness, and without Offence; because it is not Rough, nor Thorny. Thou seest therefore, how it is best to walk in this Way. Thou shalt therefore go, says he, and all others as many as believe in God with all their Heart shall go through it. And now, says he; || Understand first of all what belongs to Faith. There are two

B b 3

ousness

† Placed.  
|| Vid Antioch.  
Hom. lxi.  
Comp Orig. L.  
li. De Princip.  
Et in Luc.  
Hom. xxxv.

ousness, the Other of Iniquity. And I said unto him ; Sir, How shall I know that there are two such Angels with Man ? Hear, says he, and understand. The Angel of Righteousness, is Mild, and Modest, and Gentle, and Quiet. When therefore he gets into thy Heart, immediately he talks with thee of Righteousness, of Modesty, of Chastity, of Bountifulness, of Forgiveness, of Charity, and Piety. When all these things come into thy Heart, know then that the Angel of Righteousness is with thee. Wherefore hearken to this Angel and to his Works. Learn also the Works of the Angel of Iniquity. He is first of all Bitter, and Angry, and Foolish ; and his Works are pernicious, and overthrow the Servants of God. When therefore these things come into thy Heart ; thou shalt know him by his Works, that it is the Angel of Iniquity. And I said unto him ; Sir, How shall I understand these things ? Hear, says he, and understand. When Anger overtakes thee, or Bitterness, know that he is in thee : As also, when  
the

the desire of many \* things, and of \* Works.  
the best Meats, and of Drunkenness;  
when the Love of what belongs to  
others; of Pride, and of much  
Speech, of Ambition; and of the  
like things, *come upon thee.* When  
therefore these things arise in thy  
Heart, know that the Angel of Ini-  
quity is with thee. Seeing there-  
fore thou knowest his Works, depart  
from them all, and give no Credit  
to him: Because his Works are E-  
vil, and agree not to the Servants of  
God. Here therefore thou hast the  
Works of both these Angels. Know  
now and believe the Angel of Right-  
eousness, because his Instruction  
is Good. For let a Man be never  
so happy; yet if the Thoughts of  
the other Angel arise in his Heart,  
that Man or Woman must needs sin.  
But let a Man or Woman be never  
so Wicked, and the Works of the  
Angel of Righteousness come into  
his Heart, that Man or Woman must  
needs do some Good. Thou seest  
therefore how it is good to follow the  
Angel of Righteousness. If there-  
fore thou shalt follow him, and be-

lieve in his Works, thou shalt live unto God. And as many as shall believe in his Works, shall live also unto God.

---

### The Seventh COMMAND.

*That we must fear God, but not  
the Devil.*

|| Vid. Antioch.  
Hom. cxxvii.

|| **F**EAR God, says he, and keep his Commandments. For if thou keepest his Commandments thou shalt be powerful in every Work, and all thy Counsel shall be excellent. For by fearing God, thou shalt do every thing well. This is that Fear with which thou must be affected, that thou mayst be saved. But fear not the Devil: For if thou fearest the LORD thou shalt have Dominion over him; because there is no Power in him. Now if there be no Power in him, then neither is he to be feared. But he in whom Power is Excellent, he is also to be feared. For every

every one that has Power is to be feared. But he that has no Power is despised by every one. Fear the Works of the Devil because they are Evil. For by fearing the LORD, thou wilt fear and not do the Works of the Devil, but keep thy self from them. For there is a twofold Fear; For if whilst thou fearest the LORD thou wilt do that which is Evil, thou shalt not do even that. But if thou wilt do good, the Fear of the LORD is Strong, and Great, and Glorious: Wherefore, Fear God and thou shalt live. And whosoever shall fear him, and keep his Commandments, their Life is with the LORD. But they who keep them not, neither is Life in them.

---

### The Eighth COMMAND.

*That we must Flee from Evil,  
and Do Good.*

**I** HAVE told thee, said he, that there are two kinds of Creatures of the LORD, and that there  
is

\* Amloch.  
Hom. lxxix.

is a two-fold \* Abstinence. From some therefore thou must abstain, and from others not. I answered, Tell me, Sir, from what I must abstain, and from what not. Hearken, said he. Keep thy self from Evil, and do it not. But abstain not from Good, but do it. For if thou shalt abstain from what is Good, and not do it; thou shalt sin. Abstain therefore from all Evil, and thou shalt know all Righteousness. I said; What Evil things are they from which I must abstain? Hearken, said he; from Adultery; from Drunkenness; from wicked Riots; from Excess of Eating; from Daintiness and Dishonesty; from Pride; from Denials; from Lying; from Detraction; from feigned Wickedness; from Remembrance of Injuries; and from Evil Reports. For these are || all the Works of Iniquity; from which the Servant of God must abstain. For he that cannot keep himself from these things, cannot live unto God. But hear, said he, what follows of these kind of things. And indeed many more there

|| Of all Inquiries.

there are from which the Servant of God must abstain. From Theft, and Cheating; from False-Witness; from Covetousness; from Boasting; and all other things of the like Nature. Do these things seem to thee to be Evil or not? Indeed they are very Evil to the Servants of God. Wherefore every such Person must abstain from all these \* Works. Keep thy \* Vid. Coteler. in loc.  
self therefore from them, that thou mayst live unto God, and be written among those that abstain from them. And thus have I shewn thee what things thou must avoid: Now learn from what thou must not abstain. Abstain not from any good Works, but do them. Hear, said he, what the Vertue of those good Works is which thou must do, that thou mayst be saved. The first of all is Faith; the Fear of the LORD; Charity; Concord; Piety; Equity; Truth; Patience; Chastity. There is nothing better than these things in the Life of Man; who shall keep and do these things in their Life. Hear next what follow these. To minister to the Widows;



dows; not to despise the Fatherless and Poor; to redeem the Servants of God from Necessity; to be Hospitable; for in Hospitality there is sometimes great Fruit. Not to be contentious, but be quiet; to be humble above all Men; to reverence the Aged; to labour to be Righteous; to keep up Brotherhood; to bear Affronts; to be equal minded; not to cast away those that have fallen from the Faith; but to make them gentle; to admonish Sinners; not to oppress those that are our Debtors; and all other things of alike kind. Do these things seem to thee to be good, or not? And I said, what can be better than these Words? Live, then said he, in these Commandments, and do not depart from them. For if thou shalt keep all these Commandments, thou shalt live unto God. And all they that shall keep these Commandments shall live unto God.

## The Ninth COMMAND.

*That we must ask of God daily;  
and without Doubting.*

**A** GAIN he said unto me ; || Re- || Vid. Anrioch.  
Hom. lxxxlii.  
move from thee all Doubting;  
and Question nothing at all. When  
thou askest any thing of the LORD,  
say not within thy self; How shall  
I be able to ask any thing of the  
LORD and receive it, seeing I am so  
great a Sinner against him? Do not  
think thus, but turn unto the LORD  
with all thy Heart. Ask without  
Doubting, and thou shalt know the  
Mercy of the LORD; How that he  
will not forsake thee, but will fulfil  
the Request of thy Soul. For God  
is not as Men, mindful of *the* Inju-  
ries *he has received*; but he forgets  
Injuries, and has Compassion upon  
his Creature. Wherefore purifie thy  
Heart from all the Vices of this pre-  
sent World; and observe the Com-  
mands I have before deliver'd unto  
thee from God; and thou shalt re-  
ceive

ceive whatsoever good things thou shalt ask, and nothing shall be wanting unto thee of all thy Petitions ; if thou shalt ask of the LORD without doubting. But they that are not such, shall obtain none of those things which they ask. For they that are full of Faith, ask with Confidence, and receive from the LORD, because they ask without doubting. But he that doubts ; shall hardly live unto God, except he repent. Wherefore purifie thy Heart from doubting, and put on Faith ; and trust in God ; and thou shalt receive all that thou shalt ask. But and if thou shouldst chance to ask somewhat and not receive it, yet do not therefore doubt, because thou hast not presently received the Petition of thy Soul. For it may be thou shalt not yet receive it for thy Tryal, or else for some Sin which thou knowest not. But do not thou leave off to ask, † and then thou shalt receive. Else if thou shalt cease to ask, thou must complain of thy self, and not of God, that he has not given unto thee *what thou didst desire*. Consider therefore

† *Asking the  
Petition of thy  
Soul.*

fore this Doubting how cruel and pernicious it is; and how it utterly roots out many from the Faith, who were very faithful and firm. For this Doubting is the Daughter of the Devil; and deals very wickedly with its Servants. Despise it therefore, and thou shalt rule over it || on every || *In every thing.* Occasion. Put on a firm and powerful Faith. For Faith promises all things, and perfects all things. But doubting will not believe, that it shall obtain any thing, by all that it can do. Thou seest therefore, says he, how Faith cometh from above, from God; and has great Power. But Doubting is an Earthly Spirit, and proceedeth from the Devil, and has no Strēgth. Do thou therefore keep the Vertue of Faith, and depart from Doubting, in which is no Vertue, and thou shalt live unto God. And all shall live unto God, as many as shall do these things.

The

## The Tenth COMMAND.

*Of the Sadness of the Heart ; and that we must take heed not to grieve the Spirit of God that is in us.*

I. **P**UT all Sadness far from thee ; for it is the Sister of Doubting and of Anger. How, Sir, said I, Is it the Sister of these ? For Sadness, and Anger, and Doubting, seem to me to be very different from one another. And he answered ; || Art thou without Sense that thou dost not understand it ? For Sadness is the most mischievous of all Spirits, and the worst to the Servants of God : It destroys the Spirits of all Men, and torments the Holy Spirit ; and again it saves. Sir, said I, I am very foolish, and understand not these † things. I cannot apprehend how it can torment, and yet save ? Hear, said he, and understand. They who never sought out the Truth, nor enquired concerning the Majesty of God ; but only believed, are involved in the Affairs of the Heathen. And there

|| *Without Sense  
thou dost not  
understand it.*

† *Questions.*

there is another \* lying Prophet, that destroys the Senses of the Servants of God ; *that is*, of those that are doubtful, not of those that fully trust in the LORD. Now those doubtful Persons come to him, as to a Divine Spirit, and enquire of him, what shall befall them. And this lying Prophet, having no Power in him of the Divine Spirit, answers them according to their Demands ; and fills their Souls with Promises according as they desire. Howbeit that Prophet is vain, and answers vain things to those who are themselves vain. And whatsoever is asked of him by vain Men, he answers them vainly. Nevertheless he speaketh some things truly. For the Devil fills him with his Spirit, that he may overthrow some of the Righteous.

\* Vid. Edit.  
Oxon. p. 70.b.  
Comp. 2 Cor.  
vii. 10.

II. WHOSOEVER therefore are strong in the Faith of the LORD, and have put on the Truth ; they are not joyned to such Spirits, but depart from them. But those that are doubtful, and often repenting ; like the Heathens, consult them, and heap up

to themselves great Sin, serving Idols. As many therefore as are such, enquire of them upon every Occasion; worship Idols, and are foolish, and void of the Truth. For every Spirit that is given from God is not asked; but having the Power of the Divinity speaks all things of its self; because it comes from above from the Power of the Holy Spirit. But he that being ask'd speaks according to Mens desires, and concerning many other Affairs of this present World, understands not the things which relate unto God. For *these Spirits* are darkned through such Affairs, and corrupted, and broken. As good Vines if they are neglected, are oppress'd with Weeds and Thorns, and *at last* kill'd by them; So are the Men who believe such *Spirits*: They fall into many Actions and Businesses, and are void of Sense, and when they think of things pertaining unto God, they understand nothing at all. But if at any time they chance to hear any thing concerning the LORD, their † Thoughts are upon their Business: But they that

† Sense.

that have the Fear of the LORD, and search out the Truth concerning God, have all their Thoughts with the LORD. They apprehend whatsoever is said to them, and forthwith they understand it, because they have the Fear of the LORD in them. For where the Spirit of the LORD dwells, there is also a great Sense added. Wherefore joyn thy self to the LORD, and thou shalt understand and apprehend all things.

III. LEARN now, O Unwise Man! How Sadness grieves the Holy Spirit, and how it saves. When a Man that is doubtful is engaged in any Affair, and do's not accomplish it by reason of his Doubting; this Sadness enters into him, and grieves the Holy Spirit, and makes him sad. Again, Anger when it overtakes any Man for any Business, he is greatly moved; and Anger possesses his Heart; and he is disturb'd in his Work which he is about, and afterwards repents, because he did amiss. Thus both Doubting and Sadness hurt the Holy Spirit. Doubting,



|| Antioch.  
Hom. xxv.

because his Work did not succeed ; and Sadness, because he angr'd the Holy Spirit. || Remove therefore Sadness from thy self ; and offend not the Holy Spirit which dwelleth in thee ; least he ask the LORD, and depart from thee. For the Spirit of the LORD which is given to us in the Flesh, endures not Sadness. Wherefore cloath thy self with Chearfulness, which has always Favour with the LORD, and thou shalt rejoyce in it. For every chearful Man do's well, and relishes those things that are good, and despises Unrighteousness. But the sad Man do's wickedly, because he grieves the Holy Spirit, which is given to the chearful Man. And again he do's ill, because he prays with Sadness unto the LORD, except he first makes a thankful acknowledgment unto him *of former Mercies* ; and obtains not of God what he asks. For the Prayer of a sad Man has not always Efficacy to come up to the Altar of God. And I said unto him, Sir, Why has not the Prayer of a sad Man Vertue to come up to the Altar of God ?

Because

Because, said he, that Sadness remaineth in his Heart. When therefore a Man's Prayer shall be accompanied with Sadness, it will not suffer his Requests to ascend pure to the Altar of God. For as Wine when it is mingled with Vinegar, has not the Sweetness it had before ; so Sadness being mix'd with the Holy Spirit, suffers not a Man's Prayer to be Pure, *as it would be otherwise.* Wherefore purifie thy self from Sadness, which is Evil, and thou shalt live unto God. And all others shall live unto God, as many as shall lay aside Sadness, and put on Chearfulness.

---

### The Eleventh COMMAND.

*That the Spirits and Prophets are to be tried by their Works ; and of a Two-fold Spirit.*

**H**E shew'd me certain Men sitting upon Benches, and one sitting in a Chair : And he said unto me ; Seest thou those who sit

|| *Of Men.*

upon the Benches ? Sir, said I, I see them. He answer'd ; They are the Faithful ; and he who sits in the Chair, is an Earthly Spirit. For he cometh not into the Church || with the Faithful, but avoids it. But he joyns himself to the Doubtful and Empty ; and prophecies to them in hidden Places and Corners ; and pleases them by speaking according to all the Desires of their Hearts. For that which is fitted to empty Vessels is not broken, but the one agrees to the other. But when such a one comes into the Company of Just Men, who have the Spirit of God, and they pray unto the LORD ; that Man is emptied, because that Earthly Spirit flies from him, and he is dumb, and cannot speak any thing. As if in a Store-House you shall stop up Wine or Oyl ; and among those Vessels shall place an empty Jar ; and shall afterwards come to open it, you shall find it empty as you stopp'd it up : So those empty Prophets, when they come among the Spirits of the Just, are found to be such as they came. Thus  
you

you see the Life of each of these kind of Prophets. Wherefore prove that Man by his Life and Works, who says that he hath the Holy Spirit. And believe the Spirit which comes from God, and has Power *as such*. But believe not the Earthly Spirit, in whom there is no Trust nor Vertue, but he is empty ; because he is from the Devil. Hear now the Similitude which I am about to speak unto thee. Take a Stone, and throw it up towards Heaven ; or take a Spout of Water, and mount it up thither-ward ; and see if thou canst reach unto Heaven. Sir, said I ; How can this be done ? For neither of those things, which you have mentioned, are possible to be done. And he answer'd ; Therefore as these things cannot be done, so is the Earthly Spirit without Vertue, and without Effect. Understand yet farther the Power *of the other*, in this Similitude. The Grains of Hail that *drop down* are exceeding small ; and yet when they fall upon the Head of a Man, how do they cause Pain to it ? And again ; con-

sider the Droppings of a House; how the little Drops falling upon the Earth, work a Hollow in the Stones, So in like manner the least things which come from above, and fall upon the Earth, have great force. Wherefore join thy self to this Spirit, which has Power; and depart from the other which is empty.

---

### The Twelfth COMMAND.

*Of a two-fold Desire: That the Commands of God are not impossible: And that the Devil is not to be feared by them that Believe.*

\* Vid. Antioch.  
Hom. lxxiv.

I. **A** GAIN he said unto me; \* Remove from thee all Evil Desires, and put on all Good and Holy Desires. For having put on a good Desire, thou shalt hate that which is Evil, and bridle it as thou wilt. But an Evil Desire is dreadful, and hard to be appeas'd. It is very horrible and wild; and by its Wildness consumes Men. And especially if the Ser-

Servant of God shall chance to fall into it, except he be very Wise, he shall be ruined by it. For it destroys those who have not the Garment of a good Desire; and engages them in the Affairs of this present World, and delivers them unto Death. Sir, said I, What are the Works of an evil Desire, which shall bring Men unto Death? Shew them to me, that I may depart from them. Hear, said he, in what Works an evil Desire shall bring the Servants of God unto Death. The Spirit of all Men is Earthly, and light, and has no Vertue, and speaks much. I said; How then shall a Man be able to discern them? Consider what I am going to say concerning both kinds of † Men; and as I speak unto thee so shalt thou prove the Prophet of God, and the False Prophet. And first, try the Man who hath the Spirit of God; because the Spirit, which is from above, is humble, and quiet, and departs from all Wickedness, and from the vain Desires of the present World; and makes himself more humble

humble than all Men ; and answers to none when he is ask'd ; nor to every one singly ; neither do's the Spirit of God speak to a Man when he will ; but speaks when God pleases. When therefore a Man who has the Spirit of God shall come into the Church of the Righteous, who have the Faith of God , and they pray unto the LORD ; then the Holy Angel of God fills that Man with the Blessed Spirit, and he speaks in the Congregation as he is moved by God. Thus therefore is the Spirit of God known, because whosoever speaks by the Spirit of God, speaketh as the LORD will.

II. H E A R now concerning the Earthly Spirit which is empty and foolish, and without Vertue. And first of all the Man, who may be supposed to have this Spirit exalteth himself, and desires to have the first Seat , and is wicked and full of Words ; and spends his time in Pleasure, and in all manner of Voluptuousness ; and receives the Reward of his Divination. Which if he receives

ceives not, he do's not divine. Although the Spirit of God may receive Reward, and Divine: But it becomes not the Prophet of God so to do. But it is an evil Desire to covet another Mans Wife; or for a Woman to covet anothers Husband; as also to desire the Dainties of Riches; and Multitude of superfluous Meats; and Drunkenness; and many Delights. For in much Delicacy there is Folly; and many Pleasures are needless to the Servants of God. Such Lusting therefore is evil and pernicious, which brings to Death the Servants of God. For all such Lusting is from the Devil. Whosoever therefore shall depart from *all* evil Desires, shall live unto God: But they that are subject unto them shall die for ever. For this evil Lusting is deadly. Do thou therefore put on the Desire of Righteousness, and being armed with the Fear of the LORD resist all wicked Lusting. For Fear dwelleth in good Desires; and when evil Coveting shall see thee arm'd with the Fear of the LORD, and resisting it,



it ; it will flie far from thee, and not appear before thee, but be afraid of thy Armour ; and thou shalt have the Victory, and be crown'd for it ; and shalt attain unto that Desire which is good ; and shalt give the Victory which thou hast obtain'd unto God, and shalt serve him in doing what thou thy self wouldst do. For if thou shalt be subject to good Desires, and follow them ; thou shalt be able to get the Dominion over thy wicked Lustings ; and they shall be subject to thee as thou wilt.

III. AND I said ; Sir, I would know how I ought to serve that Desire which is good ? Hearken, said he, Fear God, and put thy Trust in him ; and love Truth, and Righteousness ; and do that which is good. If thou shalt do these things, thou shalt be an approved Servant of God ; and shalt serve him. And when he had fulfilled these Twelve Commands, he said unto me ; Thou hast *now* these Commands, walk in them ; and exhort those that hear them that they repent ; and that they

they keep their Repentance pure all the remaining Days of their Life. And fulfil diligently this Service which I commit to thee, and thou shalt receive great Advantage by it, and shalt find Favour with all such as shall repent, and shall believe thy Words. For I am with thee, and will force them to believe. And I said unto him; Sir, These Commands are Great and Excellent, and able to cheer the Heart of that Man that shall be able to keep them. But Sir, I cannot tell, whether they can be observed by any Man? He answer'd; Thou shalt easily keep these Commands, and they shall not be hard: Howbeit if thou shalt suffer it once to enter into thy Heart that they cannot be kept by any one, thou shalt not fulfil them. But now I say unto thee; If thou shalt not observe these Commands, but shalt dissemble, thou shalt not be saved, nor thy Children, nor thy House: Because thou hast judged that these Commands cannot be kept by Man.

IV. THESE things he spake very angrily unto me, insomuch that he greatly affrighted me. For he changed his Countenance, so that a Man could not bear his Anger. And when he saw me altogether troubled and confounded, he began to speak more moderately and chearfully saying; O foolish, and without Understanding! Unconstant, not knowing the Majesty of God, how great, but withal how merciful he is; who created the World for Man; and hath made every Creature subject unto him, and given him all Power, that he should be able to overcome all these Commands. He is able, said he, to overcome all these Commands, who has the LORD in his Heart: But they who have the LORD only in their Mouths, and their Heart is hardened, are far from the LORD. To such Persons these Commands are hard and difficult. Put therefore ye that are empty and light in the Faith, the LORD your God, and keep him in your Hearts; and ye shall understand how that nothing is more

more easie then these Commands ,  
nor more pleasant, nor more gentle  
and holy : And turn your selves to  
the LORD your God, and forsake the  
Devil and his Pleasures, because they  
are Evil, and Bitter, and Impure.  
And fear not the Devil, because he  
has no Power over you. For I am  
with you, the \* Messenger of Re- \* Angel.  
pentance, who have the Dominion  
over him. The Devil do's indeed  
affright Men ; but his Terror is vain.  
Wherefore fear him not, and he will  
flee from you.

V. AND I said unto him; Sir,  
Hear me speak a few Words unto  
you. He answer'd, Say on : A Man  
indeed desires to keep the Command-  
ments of God ; and there is no one  
but what prays unto God, that he  
may be able to keep his Command-  
ments. But the Devil is hard, and  
by his Power rules over the Servants  
of God. And he said ; He cannot  
rule over the Servants of God, who  
believe in him with all their Hearts.  
The Devil may strive, but he cannot  
overcome them. For if ye resist  
him,

† Origen. in  
 Matth. xxiv. 42.

him, he will flee away with shame from you. But they that are not full in the Faith, fear the Devil, as if he had some great Power. For the Devil tries the Servants of God, and if he finds them empty, he destroys them. For as a Man, when he fills up Vessels with good Wine, † and among them puts a few Vessels half full, and comes to try and tast of the Vessels, do's not try those that are full, because he knows that they are good; but tast those that are half full, least they should grow sowre; for Vessels half full soon grow sowre, and lose the Tast of Wine: So the Devil comes to the Servants of God to try them. They that are full of Faith resist him stoutly, and he departs from them, because he finds no place where to enter into them; then he go's to those that are not full of Faith, and because he has place of entrance he goes into them and do's what he will with them, and they become his Servants.

| *Angel.*

VI. BUT I, the || Messenger of Repentance, say unto you, Fear not

not the Devil. For I am sent unto you, that I may be with you, as many as shall repent with your whole Heart, and that I may confirm you in the Faith. || Believe therefore ye who by reason of your Transgressions have forgot God, and who company your Salvation with your Sins, lead your Lives in Trouble; that if ye shall turn to the LORD with your whole Hearts, and shall serve him according to his Will; he will give a Remedy to your Souls, notwithstanding your former Sins, and ye shall have dominion over all the Works of the Devil. Be not then afraid in the least of his Threatnings; for they are without force; as the Sinews of a dead Man. But hearken unto me, and fear the LORD Almighty who is able to save and to destroy you; and keep his Commands, that ye may live unto God. And I said unto him; Sir, I am now confirm'd in all the Commands of the LORD whilst that you are with me; and I know that you will break all the Power of the Devil. And we also shall overcome him, if we shall

|| Vid. Antioch.  
Hom. lxxvii.

be able, through the help of the LORD, to keep these Commands which you have delivered. Thou shalt keep them, said he, if thou shalt purifie thy Heart towards the LORD. And all they also shall keep them who shall cleanse their Hearts from the vain desires of the present World, and shall live unto God.

---

---

---

The Third BOOK  
O F  
St. HERMAS

Which is Called  
His SIMILITUDES.

---

The First SIMILITUDE.

*That seeing we have no abiding City  
in this World; we ought to look af-  
ter that which is to come.*

**A**ND he said unto me; || Ye || Antioch.  
know that ye who are the Hom. xv.  
Servants of the LORD, live  
here as in a Pilgrimage. For your  
City is far off from this City. If  
therefore ye know your City in which  
ye are to dwell, why do ye here buy  
D d 2 Estates,



Estates, and provide your selves with Delicacies, and stately Buildings, and superfluous Houses ? For he that provides himself these things in this City, do's not think of returning into his own City. O foolish, and doubtful, and wretched Man ! Who understandest not that all these things are other Mens, and under the Power of another ! For the LORD of this City saith unto thee, either obey my Laws, or depart out of my City. What therefore shalt thou do who art subject to a Law in thine own City ? Canst thou for thy Estate, or for any of those things which thou hast provided, deny thy Law ? But if thou shalt deny it, and wilt afterwards return into thy own City, thou shalt not be received, but shalt be excluded thence. See therefore that like a Man in another Country, thou procure no more to thy self than what is necessary, and sufficient for thee ; and be ready, that when the God or LORD of this City shall drive thee out of it, thou mayst oppose his Law, and go into thine own City ; where thou mayst with  
all

all Chearfulness live according to  
thine own Law without Wrong.  
Take heed then ye that serve God,  
and have him in your Hearts; work  
ye the Works of God, being mind-  
ful both of his Commands and of his  
Promises, which he has promised;  
and be assured that he will make  
them good unto you; if ye shall  
keep his Commandments. Instead  
therefore of the Possessions that ye  
would otherwise purchase, redeem  
|| those that are in want from their || *Souls.*  
Necessities, as every one is able;  
Justifie the Widows; Judge *the*  
*Cause* of the Fatherless; and spend  
your Riches and your Wealth in such  
Works as these. For, for this end  
has God enriched you, that ye might  
fulfil these kind of Services. It is  
much better to do this, than to buy  
Lands or Houses; because all such  
things shall perish with this present  
Time. But what ye shall do for the  
Name of the LORD, ye shall find in  
your City, and shall have Joy with-  
out Sadness or Fear. Wherefore cover  
not the Riches of the Heathen; for  
they are destructive to the Servants

of God. But of your own Abundance which you have, do those things by which ye may attain unto Joy. And do not commit Adultery, nor touch any other Mans Wife; nor desire her: But covet that which is thy own Business, and thou shalt be saved.

---

### The Second SIMILITUDE.

*As the Vine is supported by the Elm,  
so is the Rich-Man help'd by the  
Prayers of the Poor.*

**A**S I was walking into the Field, and consider'd the Elm and the Vine, and thought with my self of their Fruits; an Angel appear'd unto me, and said unto me; What is it that thou thinkest upon thus long within thy self? And I said unto him; Sir, I think of this Vine and this Elm, because their Fruits are fair. And he said unto me; || These two Trees are set for a Pattern to the Servants of God. And I said unto

¶ Vid. Origen.  
in Jos. Hom.x.

unto him ; Sir, I would know what the Pattern is for which these Trees are set. Harken, saith he ; Seest thou this Vine and this Elm ? Sir, said I, I see them. This Vine, saith he, is fruitful, but the Elm is a Tree without Fruit. Nevertheless this Vine unless it were set by this Elm, and supported by it, would not bear much Fruit ; but lying along upon the Ground, would bear ill Fruit, because it did not hang upon the Elm : Whereas now being supported upon the Elm, it bears Fruit both for its self and for that. See therefore how the Elm gives no less, but rather more Fruit than the Vine. How, Sir, said I, do's it bear more Fruit than the Vine ? Because, said he, the Vine being supported upon the Elm gives both much and good Fruit : Whereas if it lay along upon the Ground it would bear but little, and that very ill too. This Similitude therefore is set forth to the Servants of God ; and it represents the Rich and Poor Man. I answer'd, Sir, make this manifest unto me. Hear, said he : The Rich Man has

D d 4

Wealth,

Wealth; howbeit towards the LORD he is Poor: For he is taken up about his Riches, and prays but little to the LORD; and the Prayers which he makes are lazy and without force. When therefore the Rich Man reaches out to the Poor those things which he wants, the Poor Man prays unto the LORD for the Rich; and God grants unto the Rich Man all good things; because the Poor Man is Rich in Prayer; and his Requests have great Power with the LORD. Then the Rich Man ministers all things to the Poor, because he perceives that he is heard by the LORD; and he the more willingly, and without doubting affords him what he wants, and takes care that nothing be lacking to him. And the Poor Man gives Thanks unto the LORD for the Rich; because he do's this Work to him from the LORD. With Men therefore the Elm is not thought to give any Fruit; and they know not, neither understand that its Company being added to the Vine, the Vine bears a double Encrease, both for its self and for the Elm.

Elm. Even so the Poor praying unto the LORD for the Rich, are heard by him ; and their Riches are encreased, because they minister to the Poor of their Wealth. They are therefore both made Partakers of each others Good Works. Whosoever therefore shall do these things, he shall not be forsaken by the LORD, but shall be written in the Book of Life. Happy are they who are Rich, and perceive themselves to be encreased : For he that is sensible of this, will be able to minister somewhat to others.

---

### The Third SIMILITUDE.

*As the Green Trees in the Winter cannot be distinguish'd from the Dry ; so neither can the Righteous from the Wicked in this present World.*

**A** GAIN he shewed me many Trees whose Leaves were shed, and which seemed to me to be wither'd ;

ther'd ; for they were all alike. And he said unto me, Seest thou these Trees ? I said, Sir, I see that they look like dry Trees. He answering said unto me ; These Trees are like unto the Men who live in this present World. I reply'd ; Sir, Why are they like unto dryed Trees ? Because, said he, neither the Righteous nor Unrighteous are known *from one another* ; but are all alike in this present World. For this World is as the Winter to the Righteous Men, because they are not known, but dwell among Sinners. As in the Winter all the Trees, having lost their Leaves, are like dry Trees ; nor can it be said which are Dry and which are Green : So in this present World neither the Righteous nor Wicked are discern'd from each other, but they are all alike.

## The Fourth SIMILITUDE.

*As in Summer the living Trees are distinguish'd from the Dry by their Fruit and Green Leaves ; so in the World to come the Righteous shall be distinguish'd from the Un-righteous by their Happinefs.*

**A** GAIN he shewed me many other Trees , of which some had Leaves, and others appear'd dry and wither'd. And he said unto me, Seest thou these Trees ? I answer'd, Sir, I see them ; and some are dry, and others full of Leaves. These Trees, saith he, which are green are the Righteous, who shall possess the World to come. For the World to come, is the Summer to the Righteous ; but to Sinners it is the Winter. When therefore the Mercy of the LORD shall shine forth, then they who serve God shall be made manifest, and plain unto all. For as in the Summer the Fruit of every Tree is shewn and made manifest,  
so



† *Nations.*

so also the Works of the Righteous shall be declared and made manifest, and they shall all be restored in that World merry and joyful. For the other † kind of Men, namely Wicked, like the Trees which thou sawest dry, shall as such be found dry and without Fruit in that other World ; and like dry Wood shall be burnt, and it shall be made manifest that they have done Evil in the time of their Life ; and they shall be burnt because they have sinned, and have not repented of their Sins. And also all the other Nations shall be burnt, because they have not acknowledged God their Creator. Do thou therefore bring forth good Fruit, that in the Summer thy Fruit may be known ; and keep thy self from much Business, and thou shalt not offend. For they that are involved in much Business, sin much ; because they are taken up with their Affairs, and neglect to serve God. And how can a Man that do's not serve God, ask any thing of God, and receive it ? But they who serve him, ask and receive what they desire. But if a Man has only  
one

one thing to follow, he may serve God, because his Mind is not thereby taken off from God, but he serves him with a pure Mind. If therefore thou shalt do thus, thou shalt have Fruit in the World to come; and all, as many as shall do in like manner, shall bring forth Fruit.

## The Fifth SIMILITUDE.

*Of a True Fast, and the Rewards of it: Also of the Cleanness of the Body.*

I AS I was fasting, and sitting down in a certain Mountain, and giving Thanks unto God for all the things that he had done || unto me; || *With me.* behold I saw the Shepherd, *who was wont to converse with me*, sitting by me, and saying unto me: What has brought thee hither thus early in the Morning? I answer'd, Sir, To Day I keep a \*Station. He answer'd, \* *Vid. Not.* What is a Station? I reply'd; It is a Coteler. in loc. *Fast. pag. 72, 73.*

Fast. He said; What is that Fast? I answer'd, I fast, as I have been wont to do. Ye know not, said he, what it is to fast unto God; nor is this a Fast which ye fast, profiting nothing with God. Sir, said I, what makes you speak thus? He reply'd; I speak it, because this is not the *true* Fast which you think that you fast; but I will shew you what that is <sup>†</sup> *Coreler. ibid.* which is a <sup>†</sup> compleat Fast, and acceptable unto God. Hearken, said he, The LORD do's not desire such a needless Fast: For by Fasting in this manner, thou advancest nothing in Righteousness. But the true Fast is this; Do nothing wickedly in thy Life; but serve God with a pure Mind; and keep his Commandments, and walk according to his Precepts, nor suffer any wicked Desire *to dwell* in thy Mind. And trust in the LORD; that if thou dost these things, and fearest him, and abstainest from every evil Work, thou shalt live unto God. If thou shalt do this, thou shalt perfect a great Fast, and an acceptable one unto the LORD.

II. HEARKEN unto the Similitude which I am about to propose unto thee, as to this matter. A certain Man having a Farm, and many Servants, planted a Vineyard in a certain part of his Estate for his Posterity : And taking a Journey into a far Country chose one of his Servants which he thought the most faithful and approved, and deliver'd the Vineyard into his care ; commanding him that he should stake up his Vines. Which if he did, and fulfilled his Command, he promised to give him his Liberty. Nor did he command him to do any thing more ; and so went into a far Country. After then that that Servant had taken that Charge upon him ; he did whatsoever his LORD commanded him. And when he had staked the Vineyard, and found it to be full of Weeds, he began to think with himself, saying ; I have done what my Lord commanded me ; I will now dig this Vineyard, and when it is digg'd it will be more beautiful ; and the Weeds being pull'd up it will

will bring forth more Fruit, and not be choak'd by the Weeds. So setting about his Work he digg'd it, and pluck'd up all the Weeds that were in it : And by that means the Vineyard became very beautiful and prosperous, and not over-run and choak'd with Weeds. After some time the LORD of the Vineyard comes and goes into the Vineyard, and when he saw that it was handsomely stak'd, and digg'd, and the Weeds pluck'd up that were in it, and the Vines flourishing, he rejoiced greatly at the Care of his Servant. And calling his Son whom he loved, and who was to be his Heir ; and his Friends with whom he was wont to consult, he tells them what he had commanded his Servant to do, and what his Servant had done more : And they immediately congratulated that Servant, that he had received so full a Testimony from his Lord. Then he said unto them ; I indeed promised this Servant his Liberty, if he observed the Command which I gave him ; and he observed it, and besides has done a good Work to my Vine.

Vineyard , which has exceedingly pleased me. Wherefore for this Work which he hath done, I will make him my Heir together with my Son; because that when he saw what was good, he dissembled it not, but did it. This Design of the LORD, both his Son and his Friends approved, *namely*, that this Servant should be Heir together with his Son. Not long after this, the Master of the Family calling together his Friends, sent from his Supper several kinds of Food to that Servant. Which when he had received, he took so much of them as was sufficient for himself, and divided the rest among his Fellow Servants. Which when they had received, they rejoyced; and wish'd that he might find yet greater favour with his Lord, for what he had done to them. When his Lord heard all these things, he was again fill'd with great Joy; and calling again his Friends and his Son together, he related to them what his Servant had done with the Meats which he had sent unto him. They therefore so much the more assented to the Ma-

ster of the Household ; that he ought to make that Servant his Heir together with his Son.

III. I SAID unto him ; Sir, I know not these Similitudes, neither can I understand them, unless you expound them unto me. I will, says he, expound all things unto thee whatsoever I have talk'd with thee, or shewn unto thee. Keep the Commandments of the LORD and thou shalt be approved, and shalt be written in the Number of those that keep his Commandments. But if besides those things which the LORD hath commanded, thou shalt add some good thing ; thou shalt purchase to thy self a greater Dignity , and be in more favour with the LORD than thou shouldst otherwise have been. If therefore thou shalt keep the Commandments of the LORD, and shalt add to them these Stations, thou shalt rejoyce ; but especially if thou shalt keep them according to my Commands. I said unto him ; Sir, Whatsoever thou shalt command me, I will observe ; for I know that thou wilt

wilt be with me. I will, said he, be with thee, who hast taken up such a Resolution ; and I will be with all those who purpose in like manner. This Fast, saith he, whilst thou dost also observe the Commandments of the LORD, is exceeding good. Thus therefore shalt thou keep it. First of all, take heed to thy self, and keep thy self from every wicked Act, and from every filthy Word, and from every hurtful Desire ; and purifie thy Sense from all the Vanity of this present World. If thou shalt observe these things, this Fast shall be such as it ought to be. Thus therefore do. Having perform'd what is before written, that day on which thou fastest thou shalt taste nothing at all but \* Bread and Water † and computing the Quantity of Food, which thou art wont to eat upon other Days, thou shalt \* lay aside the Expence which thou shouldst have made that Day, and give it unto the Widow, the Fatherless and the Poor. \* And thus thou shalt perfect the Humility of thy Soul ; that he who receives of it may satisfie his Soul, and his

\* Vld. Not.  
Corelerli. pag.  
74. A. B. C.  
† Vid. Antioch.  
Hom. vii.



Prayer come up to the LORD God for thee. If therefore thou shalt thus accomplish thy Fast, as I command thee; thy Sacrifice shall be acceptable unto the LORD, and thy Fast shall be written *in his Book*. This Station thus perform'd is good, and pleasing, and acceptable unto the LORD. These things if thou shalt observe with thy Children, and with all thy House, thou shalt be happy. And whosoever, when they hear these things, shall do them; they *also* shall be happy, and whatsoever they shall ask of the LORD they shall receive it.

IV. AND I pray'd him that he would expound unto me the Similitude of the Farm, and the Lord; and of the Vineyard and of the Servant that had staked the Vineyard; and of the Weeds that were pluck'd out of the Vineyard; and of his Son and his Friends which he took into Counsel with him. For I understood that that was the Similitude. He said unto me; Thou art very ready in asking: Howbeit thou oughtst not

to ask any thing, for if it be fitting  
to shew it unto thee, it shall be  
shewed. I answer'd him; Sir, What-  
soever thou shalt shew, without ex-  
plaining it unto me, I shall in vain  
see it: And what Similitudes thou  
shalt propose, and not expound them,  
I shall in vain hear them. He an-  
swered me again, saying, Whosoever  
is the Servant of God, and has the  
LORD in his Heart, desires Under-  
standing of him, and receives it;  
and he explains every Similitude, and  
understands the Words of the LORD  
which need an Enquiry. But they  
that are lazy, and slow to pray;  
doubt to seek from the LORD, al-  
though the LORD be of such an ex-  
traordinary Goodness, that without  
ceasing he giveth all things to them  
that ask of him. Thou therefore  
who art strengthened by that Vene-  
rable Messenger, and hast received  
such a powerful *Gift of Prayer*; see-  
ing thou art not sloathful, why dost  
thou not now ask Understanding of  
the LORD and receive it? I said un-  
to him; seeing I have thee present,  
it is necessary that I should seek it of

thee, and ask thee ; for thou shewest all things unto me, and speakest to me when thou art present. But if I should see or hear these things when thou wert not present, I would then ask the LORD that he would shew them unto me.

V. AND he reply'd ; I said a little before that thou wert subtle and bold, and that thou askest the meaning of *these* Similitudes. But because thou still persistest ; I will unfold to thee the Parable which thou desirest, that thou mayst make it known unto all Men. Hear therefore, said he, and understand. The Farm before mention'd denotes the whole Earth : The Lord of the Farm is he, who created and finished all things ; and gave Vertue unto them. His Son is the Holy || Spirit ; The Servant is the Son of God. The Vineyard is the People whom he saves. The Stakes are the \* Messengers which are set over them by the LORD, to support his People. The Weeds that are pluckt up out of the Vineyard, are the Sins which the Servants of God had

|| Vid. Edit.  
Oxon. Annot.  
a. p. 105.

\* Angels.

had committed. The Food which he sent him from his Supper, are the Commands which he gave to his People by his Son. The Friends whom he call'd to Counsel with him, are the Holy Angels whom he first created. The Absence of the Master of the Household is the Time that remains unto his Coming. I said unto him ; Sir, All these things are very excellent, and wonderful, and good. But, continued I, could I or any other Man besides, though never so wise, have understood these things ? Wherefore now Sir, tell me what I ask. He replied, ask me what thou wilt. Why, said I, is the Son of God in this Parable, put in the place of a Servant ?

VI. Hearken, said he ; The Son of God is not put in the condition of a Servant, but in great Power and Authority. And I answer'd, How, Sir ? I understood it not. Because said he, The Son set his \* Messengers \* *Angels.* over those whom the Father deliver'd unto him, to keep every one of them ; but he himself labour'd very much,

and suffer'd much, that he might blot out their Offences. For no Vineyard can be digg'd without much Labour and Pains. Wherefore having blotted out the Sins of his People, he shew'd to them the Paths of Life, giving them the Law which he had received of the Father. You see, said he, that he is the LORD of his People, having received all Power from his Father. But why did the LORD take into Counsel his Son, concerning *dividing the Inheritance*, and the Good Angels? Hear: Because that Messenger hearkned to the Holy Ghost, which was first of all infused into the Body in which God should dwell. For *his* Understanding placed him in the Body, as it seem'd Good to him. This Body therefore into which the Holy Spirit was brought, served that Spirit, walking rightly and purely in Modesty; nor ever defiled that Spirit. Seeing therefore the Body at all times obeyed the Holy Spirit, and labour'd rightly and chastly with him; nor falter'd at any time; that Body being wearied conversed indeed Servily, but being stoutly approved with the Holy

Holy

Holy Spirit, was accepted by God. For such a powerful Course pleased God, because he was not defiled in the Earth, keeping the Holy Spirit in Council with him. He called therefore his Son, and the Good Angels, that there might be some place of standing given to this Body which had served the Holy Spirit without Complaint; least it should seem to have lost the reward of its Service. For every pure Body, shall receive its reward; that is found without Spot, in which the Holy Spirit has been appointed to dwell. And thus you have now the Exposition of this Parable also.

VII. SIR, said I, I now understand your Meaning, since I have heard this Exposition. Harken farther, said he: Keep this thy Body Clean and Pure; that the Spirit which shall dwell in it may bear Witness unto it, and be judged to have been with thee. Also take heed that it be not instill'd into thy Mind that this Body perishes, and thou abuse it to any Lust. For if thou shalt defile thy Body; thou shalt  
also

also at the same time defile the Holy Spirit; and if thou shalt defile the Holy Spirit, thou shalt not live. And I said; What if through Ignorance this should have been already committed, before a Man heard these Words; How can he attain unto Salvation, who has thus defiled his Body? He reply'd; As for Mens former Actions, which through Ignorance they have committed, God only can afford a remedy unto them; For all power belongeth unto him. But now Guard thy self; and seeing God is Almighty and Merciful, he will grant a remedy to what thou hast formerly done amiss, if for the time to come thou shalt not defile thy Body and Spirit: For they are Companions together, and the One cannot be defiled but the other will be so too. Keep therefore both of them Pure, and thou shalt live unto God.

## The Sixth SIMILITUDE.

*Of two sorts of Voluptuous Men, and  
of their Death, Defection, and of  
the Continuance of their Pains.*

I. **A**S I was sitting at home, and  
praising God for all the things  
which I had seen ; and was thinking  
concerning the Commands, that they  
were exceeding Good and Great, and  
Honest, and Pleasant ; and such as  
would certainly bring a Man to Sal-  
vation ; I said thus within my self :  
I shall be happy if I shall walk accord-  
ing to these Commands, and whoso-  
ever shall walk in them shall live un-  
to God. Whilst I was meditating on  
this wise, I saw him whom I had  
before been wont to see, sitting by  
me ; and he spake thus unto me.  
What doubtest thou concerning the  
Commands which I have delivered  
unto thee ? Doubt not whether they  
are Good, but trust in the LORD and  
thou shalt walk in them. For I will  
give thee strength || to fulfil them. || *In them.*  
These Commands are profitable to  
those



those who shall repent of those sins which they have formerly committed; if for the time to come they shall not continue in them. Whosoever therefore ye be that Repent, cast away from you the naughtiness of the present World. And put on all Vertue, and all Righteousness, and so shall ye be able to keep these Commands; neither sin from henceforth any more. For if ye shall keep your selves from sin for the time to come, ye shall cut off a great deal of your former sins. Walk in my Commands, and ye shall live unto God: These things have I spoken unto you. And when he had said this, he added; let us go into the Field, and I will shew thee Shepherds of Sheep. I reply'd, Sir, let us go. And we came into a certain Field, and there he shew'd me a young Shepherd, \* finely array'd, with his Garments of a Purple Colour. And he fed large Flocks; and his Sheep were full of Pleasure, and in much Delight and Chearfulness; and they ran here and there, as it were rejoicing. And the Shepherd took very great Satisfaction in his Flock; and

\* Vid. Annot.  
Cortier. in loc.

and the Countenance of that Shepherd was Cheerful, running up and down among his Flock.

II. THEN the Angel said unto me; See'st thou this Shepherd? I answer'd, Sir, I see him. He said unto me; this is the † Messenger of De-  
light and Pleasure. He therefore cor-  
rupts the Minds of the Servants of God, and turns them from the Truth, delighting them with many Pleasures, and they perish. For they forget the Commands of the living God, and live in luxury and in vain satisfactions; and are corrupted by this Evil-Angel, some of them unto Death; and others even to a falling off from *the truth*. I replied; I understand not what you mean, by being corrupted unto Death, and so falling away. Hear, says he: All those Sheep which thou sawest exceeding fair and joyful, are such as have for ever departed from God, and given themselves up to the desires of this present Time. To these therefore there is no return, by Repentance, unto Life; because that to their other Sins they have added

ded this, that they have Blasphemed the Name of the LORD. These kind of Men are ordained unto Death. But those Sheep which thou sawest not leaping for Joy, but feeding in one place; are such as have indeed given themselves up to Pleasures and Delights; but have not spoken any thing wickedly against the LORD. These have not departed from the Truth, and therefore have yet Hope laid up for them in Repentance. For *such* a Defection has some hope still left of a renewal; But they that are dead, are utterly gone for ever. Again we went a little farther forward; and he shew'd me a great Shepherd, who had as it were a Wild Figure; clad with a White Goats Skin, having his Bag upon his Shoulder, and in his Hand a Stick full of Knots, and very hard, and a Whip in his *Other* Hand; And his Countenance was Stern and Sour; enough to affright a Man; such was his look. He took from that young Shepherd such Sheep as lived in Pleasures, but did not skip up and down; and drove them into a certain Steep Craggy Place, full of Thorns and Briars,

Briars, infomuch that they could not get themselves free from them; but being entangled in them, fed upon Thorns and Briars, and were grievously tormented with his Whipping. For he still drove them on, nor afforded them any Place or Time to stand still.

III. W H E N therefore I saw them so cruelly whipp'd and afflicted, I was grieved for them, because they were greatly tormented, nor had they any Rest afforded them. And I said unto the Shepherd that was with me; Sir, Who is this cruel and implacable Shepherd, who is moved with no Compassion towards these Sheep? He answer'd, \* This Shepherd is indeed the || Messenger of the Righteous, but is set over them for their Punishment. To him therefore are deliver'd those who have erred from God, and follow'd the Desires and Pleasures of this World, and served them. For this Cause he punishes them every one according to their Deserts with cruel and various kind of Pains. Sir, said I, I would

\* Vid. Origen.  
in Psal. xxxvii.  
Hom. 1.  
|| Angel.

would know, what kind of Pains they are which every one undergoes? Hearken, said he; The several Pains and Torments are those which Men every Day undergo in their *present* Lives. For some suffer Losses; others Poverty; others divers Sickneses. Some are Unconstant; Others suffer Injuries from those that are Unworthy; Others fall under many other Tryals and Inconveniencies. Many with an unsettled design aim at many things, and it profiteth them not, and they say that they have not Success in their Undertakings. These things call to their Mind what they have done amiss, and they complain of the LORD. When therefore they shall have undergone all kind of Vexation and Inconveniencie; then they are deliver'd over to me for good Instruction, and are confirm'd in the Faith of the LORD, and serve the LORD all the rest of their Life with a pure Mind. And when they begin to repent of their Sins, then they call to mind their Works which they have done amiss, and give Honour to God, saying,

ing, That he is a just Judge, and that they have deservedly suffer'd all things according to their Deeds. And for what remains of *their Lives* they serve God with a pure Mind, and have Success in all their Undertakings, and receive from the LORD whatever they desire. And then they give thanks unto the LORD that they were deliver'd unto me; nor do they suffer any more Cruelty.

IV. I SAID unto him; Sir, I intreat you now to shew me one thing. What, said he, dost thou desire? I said unto him; Are they who depart from the Fear of God tormented for the same time that they enjoy'd their false Delight and Pleasures? He answer'd me; They are tormented for the same Time. And I said unto him, they are then tormented but little; whereas they who enjoy their Pleasures so as to forget God, ought to endure seven times as much Punishment. He answer'd me; Thou art foolish; neither understandest thou the Efficacy of this *kind* of Punishment. I said unto him, Sir, If I understood it, I

F f                      would

would not desire you to tell me. Hearken, said he, and learn what the force of both is, both of the Pleasure and of the Punishment. An hour of Pleasure is terminated within its own Space: But one hour of Punishment has the Efficacy of thirty Days. \* Whosoever therefore enjoys his false Pleasure for one Day, and is one Day tormented, that one Day of Punishment is equivalent to a whole years space. Thus look how many Days any one pursues his Pleasures, so many Years is he punish'd for it. You see therefore, how that the Time of Worldly Enjoyments is but short, but that of Pain and Torments, a great deal more.

\* Origen. in  
Num. Hom. viii.

V. I REPLY'D, Sir; forasmuch as I do not understand all these Times of Pleasure and Pain; I intreat you that you would explain your self more clearly concerning them. He answer'd me saying; Thy Foolishness still sticks inseparably unto thee. Shouldst thou not rather purifie thy Mind, and serve God? Take heed, least when thy Time is fulfill'd, thou shalt be found still unwise.

wife. Hear then, as thou desirest, that thou mayst the more easily understand. He that gives himself up one Day to his Pleasures and Delights; and do's whatsoever his Soul desires; is full of great Folly, nor understands what he do's, but the Day following forgets what he did the Day before. For Sweetness and Worldly Pleasure have no Memory by reason of the Folly that is rooted in them. But when Pain and Torment befall a Man a Day, he is *in Effect* troubled the whole Year *after*; because his Punishment continues firm in his Memory. Wherefore he remembers it with Sorrow the whole Year; and then calls to mind his vain Pleasure and Delight, and perceives that for the sake of that he was punished. Whosoever therefore have deliver'd themselves over to such Pleasures, are thus punished; because that when they had Life, they rendred themselves liable to Death. I said unto him; Sir, And what Pleasures are hurtful? He answer'd, That is Pleasure to every Man which he do's willingly. For the Angry Man, gratifying his Passion perceives



Pleasure in it ; and so the Adulterer, and Drunkard ; the Detractor, and Lyar, and Covetous Man, and the Deceiver ; and whosoever commits any thing like unto these, because he gratifies his Infirmities, he receives a Satisfaction in the doing of it. All these Pleasures and Delights are hurtful to the Servants of God. For these therefore they are tormented and suffer Punishment. There are also Pleasures that bring Salvation unto Men. For many, when they do what is good, find Pleasure in it, and are attracted by the Delights of it. Now this Pleasure is profitable to the Servants of God, and brings Life to such Men : But those hurtful Pleasures, which were before mention'd, bring Torments and Punishment. And whosoever shall continue in them, and shall not repent of what they have done, shall gain Death unto themselves.

## The Seventh SIMILITUDE.

*That they who Repent, must bring forth  
Fruits worthy of Repentance.*

**A**FTER a few Days I saw the same Person that before talked with me, in the same Field, in which I had before seen the Shepherds. And he said unto me; What seekest thou? Sir, said I, I came to intreat you, that you would command the Shepherd who is the Minister of Punishment, to depart out of my House, because he greatly afflicts me. And he answer'd; It is necessary for thee to endure Inconveniencies and Vexations; for so that good Angel hath commanded concerning thee, because he would try thee. Sir, said I; What so great Offence have I committed, that I should be deliver'd to this || Messenger? Hearken, said he: || *Angel.* Thou art indeed guilty of many Sins, yet not so many that thou shouldst be delivered to this || Messenger: But thy House hath committed many Sins and Offences, and therefore that good || Messenger being grieved at their

Doings commanded that for some time thou shouldst suffer Affliction, that they may both repent of what they have done, and may wash themselves from all desires of this present World. When therefore they shall have repented; and be purified, then that Messenger which is appointed over *thy* Punishment, shall depart from thee. I said unto him; Sir, If they have behaved themselves so as to anger that good Angel, yet what have I done? He answer'd; They cannot otherwise be afflicted, unless thou, who art the Head of the Family, suffer. For whatsoever thou shalt suffer, they must needs feel it: But as long as thou shalt stand well establish'd, they cannot experience any Vexation. I replyed; But, Sir, behold they also now repent with all their Hearts. I know, says he, that they repent with all their Hearts; but dost thou therefore think that their Offences who repent are immediately blotted out? No, they are not presently; but he that repents must afflict his Soul, and shew himself humble in all his Affairs, and undergo many and divers Vexations. And  
when

when he shall have suffer'd all things that were appointed for him ; then perhaps he that made him and all things besides will be moved with Compassion towards him , and afford him some Remedy ; and especially if he shall perceive his Heart who repents, to be pure from every Evil Work. But at present it is expedient for thee and for thy House to be grieved ; and it is needful that thou shouldst endure much Vexation ; as the Angel of the LORD who committed thee unto me, has commanded. Rather give Thanks unto the LORD , that knowing what was to come, he thought thee worthy to whom he should foretel that Trouble was coming upon those that were able to bear it. I said unto him ; Sir, Be but thou also with me, and I shall easily undergo any Trouble. I will, said he, be with thee ; and I will ask the Messenger who is set over thy Punishment, that he would moderate his Afflictions towards thee. And moreover thou shalt suffer Adversity but for a little time ; and then thou shalt again be restored to thy former Place ; only continue on in

the Humility of thy Mind. Obey the LORD with a pure Heart; thou and thy House, and thy Children; and walk in the Commands which I have delivered unto thee. And then thy Repentance may be firm and pure. And if thou shalt keep these things with thy House, all Inconveniencies shall depart from thee. And all Vexation shall in like manner depart from all those, whosoever shall walk according to these Commands.

---

### The Eighth SIMILITUDE.

*That there are many kinds of Elect, and of Repenting Sinners: And how all of them shall receive a Reward proportionable to the Measure of their Repentance and Good Works.*

I. **A** GAIN he shew'd me a Willow which covered the Fields and the Mountains, under whose Shadow came all such as were called by the Name of the LORD. And by that Willow stood the Angel of the LORD very excellent and lofty; and did

did cut down Boughs from that Willow with a great Hook ; and reach'd out to the People that were under the Shadow of that Willow little Rods, as it were about a Foot long. And when all of them had taken them, he laid aside his Hook, and the Tree continued intire, as I had before seen it. At which I wondred, and mused within my self. Then that Shepherd said unto me ; Forbear to wonder that that Tree continues whole, notwithstanding so many Boughs have been cut off from it : But attend ; for now it shall be shewn thee, what that Angel means, who gave those Rods to the People. So he again demanded the Rods of them ; and in the same Order that every one had received them, was he call'd to him, and restored his Rod : Which when he had received, he examin'd them. From some he received them Dry and Rotten, and as it were touch'd with the Moth ; those he commanded to be separated from the rest, and placed by themselves. Others gave him their Rods dry indeed, but not touch'd with the Moth ; these also he order'd to be set by themselves. Others gave
   
 in

in their Rods half dry; these also were set apart. Others gave in their Rods half dry, and cleft; these too were set by themselves. Others brought in their Rods, half dry and half green; and were in like manner placed by themselves. Others deliver'd up their Rods two parts green, and the third dry; and they too were set apart. Others brought their Rods two parts dry and the third green; and were also placed by themselves. Others deliver'd up their Rods yet less dry, for there was but a very little, to wit, their Tops dry; but they had Clefs, and these were set in like manner by themselves. In the Rods of others there was but a little green, and the rest dry; and these were set aside by themselves. Others came, and brought their Rods green as they had received them, and the greatest part brought their Rods thus, and these also were put apart by themselves. Others brought their Rods not only green, but full of Branches; and these were set aside; being received by the Angel with great Joy. Others brought their Rods green with Branches, and those also full

full of Fruit. They who had such Rods were very chearful ; and the Angel himself took great Joy at them ; nor was the Shepherd that stood with me less pleased with them.

II. THEN the Angel of the LORD commanded Crowns to be brought : And the Crowns were brought made of Palms ; and the Angel crown'd those Men in whose Rods he found the young Branches with Fruit ; and commanded them to go into the Tower. He also sent those into the Tower in whose Rods he found Branches without Fruit, giving his Seal unto them. For they had the same Garment, that is, one white as Snow, with which he bad them go into the Tower. And so he did to those who return'd their Rods green as they received them, giving them a white Garment ; and so sent them away to go into the Tower. Having done this, he said to the Shepherd *that was with me* ; I go my way ; but do thou send these within the Walls, every one into the place in which he has deserved to dwell, examining first their Rods ; but examine them dili-



diligently that no one deceive thee. But and if any one shall escape thee, I will try them upon the Altar. Having said this to the Shepherd he departed. After he was gone, the Shepherd said unto me ; Let us take the Rods from them all, and plant them ; if perchance they may grow green again. I said unto him, Sir, How can those dry Rods ever grow green again ? He answer'd me ; That Tree is a Willow, and always loves to live. If therefore these Rods shall be planted, and receive a little Moisture, many of them will recover themselves. Wherefore I will try, and will pour Water upon them, and if any of them can live, I will rejoyce with him : But if not, at least by this means I shall be found not to have neglected my part. And they all came unto him, every one in the Rank in which he stood, and gave him their Rods ; which having received, He planted every one of them in their several Orders. And after he had planted them all, he poured much Water upon them, in-somuch that they were covered with Water, and did not appear above it.

And

And when he had water'd them, he said unto me ; Let us depart, and after a little time we will return and visit them. For he who created this Tree, would have all those live that received Rods from it. And I hope, now that these Rods are thus watered, many of them, receiving in the Moisture, will recover.

III. I SAID unto him, Sir ; Tell me what this Tree denotes ? For I am greatly moved, that after so many Branches have been cut off, it seems still to be whole ; nor do's there any thing the less of it appear to remain, which greatly amazes me. He answer'd, Hearken. This great Tree which covers the Plains and the Mountains, and all the Earth, is the Law of God, publish'd throughout the whole World.. Now by this Law the Son of God is preach'd to all the Ends of the Earth. The People that stand under its Shadow, are those which have heard his Preaching, and believed. The great and good Angel which you saw, was MICHAEL, who has the Power over this People, and Governs them. For he has planted the Law in  
the

the Hearts of those who have believed. And therefore he visits them to whom he has given the Law, to see if they have kept it. And he examines every ones Rod ; and of those, many that are weakned. For those Rods are the Law of the LORD. Then he discerns all those who have not kept the Law, knowing the place of every one of them. I said unto him ; Sir, why did he send away some to the Tower, and left others here to you ? He reply'd ; those who have transgress'd the Law, which they receiv'd from him, are left in my Power, that they may repent of their Sins : But they who satisfied the Law and kept it, are under his Power. But who then, said I, are those, who went into the Tower Crowned ? He reply'd ; All such as having striven with the Devil, have overcome him, are Crown'd. And they are those, who have suffer'd injuries, that they might keep the Law. But they who gave up their Rods Green, and with young Branches ; but without Fruit, have indeed endured Trouble for the same Law, but have not suffer'd Death ; but neither have they deny'd their Holy Law : They  
who

who deliver'd up their Rods Green as they received them ; are those who were Modest and Just, and have lived with a very Pure Mind, and kept the Commandments of God. The rest thou shalt know, when I shall have consider'd those Rods which I have planted and watered.

IV. A F T E R a few days we return'd, and in the same place stood that great Angel, and I stood by him. Then he said unto me ; Gird thy self with a || Napkin, and serve me. And I girded my self with a clean Towel, which was made of Coarse Cloath. || Vid. Edit. Oxon. p. 129 not. d. And when he saw me girded, and ready to minister unto him, he said ; Call those Men whose Rods have been planted every one in his Order as they gave them. And he brought me into the Field, and I called them all, and they all stood ready in their several Ranks. Then he said unto them, let every one pluck up his Rod and bring it unto me. And first they deliver'd theirs, whose Rods were Dry and Rotten. And those whose Rods still continued so, he commanded to stand apart. Then they came whose Rods were

were Dry but not Rotten. Some of these deliver'd in their Rods Green; Others dry and rotten, as if they had been touch'd by the Moth. Those who gave them up Green, he commanded to stand apart: But those whose Rods were dry and rotten, he caused to stand with the first sort. Then came they whose Rods were half dry, and Cleft: Many of these gave up their Rods Green, but still Cleft. Others delivered them up Green with Branches, and Fruit upon the Branches, like unto theirs who went Crown'd into the Tower. Others deliver'd them up Dry and Rotten: And some as they were before, half dry, and cleft. Every one of these he order'd to stand apart, some by themselves, others in their respective Ranks.

V. THEN came they whose Rods were for the most part Green; but cleft. These deliver'd their Rods altogether Green, and stood in their own Order. And the Shepherd rejoiced at these, because they were all even and free from their Clefts. Then they gave in their Rods, who had half Green and half

half Dry. Of these some were found wholly Green, others half dry; others green, with young Shoots. And all these were sent away, every one to his proper Rank. Then they gave up their Rods, who had two parts Green, and the rest Dry: Many of these gave in their Rods Green; many half dry; the rest dry but not rotten. So these were sent away, each to his proper Place. Then came they who had their Rods two parts Dry and the third Green; many of these delivered up their Rods half dry; others dry and rotten; others half dry and cleft; but few Green. And all these were set every one in his own Rank. Then they reach'd in their Rods, who had them before a third part Green, and the rest dry; Their Rods were for the most part found Green, having little Boughs, with Fruit upon them; and the rest altogether Green. And the Shepherd upon sight of these rejoiced exceedingly, because he had found them thus. And they also went to their proper Orders.

VI. NOW after he had examin'd all their Rods, he said unto me; I told thee that this Tree loved Life: Thou seest how many have repented, and attain'd unto Salvation. Sir, said I, I see it. That thou mightest know, saith he, that the Goodness and Mercy of the LORD is Great and to be had in Honour; who gave his Spirit to them that were worthy of Repentance. I answer'd, Sir, why then did not all of them repent? He reply'd; Those whose Minds the LORD foresaw would be Pure, and that they would serve him with all their Hearts, to them he gave Repentance. But for those whose deceit and wickedness he beheld, and perceived that they would not truly return unto him; to them he deny'd any return unto Repentance, lest they should again blaspheme his Law with wicked Words. I said unto him; Now Sir, make known unto me, what is the place of every one of those, who have given up their Rods, and what their || Portion; that when they who have not kept their Seal entire, but have cast away the Seal which they received, shall hear and be-

|| *Seal.*

believe these things, they may acknowledge their *Evil*-deeds and repent; and receiving again their Seal from you, may give Glory to God, that he was moved with Compassion towards them, and sent you to renew their Spirits. Hearken, said he: They whose Rods have been found dry and rotten, and as it were touch'd with the Moth; are the Deserters, and the Betrayers of the Church. Who with the rest of their Crimes, have also blasphemed the LORD, and deny'd his Name which was called upon them. Therefore all these are Dead unto God; and thou seest that none of them have repented, although they have heard my Commands which thou hast delivered unto them. From these Men therefore Life is far distant. And they also who have deliver'd up their Rods Dry but not Rotten, have not been far from them. For they have been Counterfeits, and brought in Evil-Doctrines; and have perverted the Servants of God; and especially those who had sinn'd, not suffering them to return unto Repentance; but keeping them back by their False Doctrines. These therefore have



Hope ; and thou seeſt that many of them have repented, ſince the time that thou haſt laid my Commands before them ; and many more will yet Repent. But they that ſhall not Repent ; both they have loſt Patience, and ſhall loſe their Life. But they that have repented, their place is begun to be within the firſt Walls, and ſome of them are even gone into the Tower. Thou ſeeſt therefore, ſaid he, that in the Repentance of ſinners there is Life ; but that for them who Repent not, Death is prepared.

VII. HEAR now concerning thoſe who gave in their Rods half dry, and full of Clefts. They whoſe Rods were only half-dry, are the Doubtful ; for they are neither Living nor Dead. But they who deliver'd in their Rods not only half-dry, but alſo full of Clefts, are both Doubtful and Evilſpeakers ; who detract from thoſe that are abſent, and have never peace among themſelves ; and that envy one another. Howbeit to theſe there is yet left ſpace for Repentance ; for thou ſeeſt that ſome of theſe alſo have repented. Now all thoſe of this kind  
who

who have quickly repented, shall have a place in the Tower ; but they who have been more slow in their Repentance, shall dwell within the Walls : But they that shall not repent, but shall continue on in their *wicked* Doings, shall die the Death. As for those who had their Rods Green, but yet Cleft ; they are such as were always Faithful and Good ; but who had some Envy and Strife among themselves concerning Dignity and Preheminence. Now all such are Vain and without Understanding, as contend with one another about these things. Nevertheless seeing they are otherwise Good, if when they shall hear these Commands they shall amend themselves, and shall at my Perswasion suddainly repent ; they shall forthwith begin to dwell in the Tower, as they who have truly and worthily repented. But if any one shall again return to his Dissention, he shall be shut out from the Tower, and shall lose his Life. For the Life of those who keep the Commandments of the LORD, consists in *doing* what they are commanded ; not in Principality, or in any *other* Dignity. For by Patience

and Humility of Mind Men shall attain unto Life ; but by Seditions, and Contempt of the Law, they shall purchase Death unto themselves.

VIII. THEY who in their Rods had half Green and half Dry, are those who are engag'd in many Affairs ; nor are wholly applied to Holy things. For which Cause half of them liveth, and half is dead. Wherefore many of these since the time that they have heard my Commands, have repented ; and begun to live in the Tower. But some of them have wholly fallen away ; to these there is no more place for Repentance. For by reason of their present Interests, they have blasphemed and denied God : And for this Wickedness have lost Life. And of these many are still in doubt ; these may yet return ; and if they shall quickly repent, they shall have a place in the Tower ; but if they shall be more slow, they shall dwell within the Walls ; but if they shall not repent, they shall die. As for those who had two parts of their Rods Green, and the third Dry ; they have deny'd the LORD, by their manifold

nifold sins. Of these many have repented, and found a place in the Tower; and many have altogether departed from God. These have utterly lost their Lives. And some being in a doubtful state, have raised up Dissentions: These may yet return, if they shall suddainly repent, and not be with-held by their pleasures; but if they shall continue in their Evil-doings they shall Die.

IX. **THEY** who gave in their Rods two parts Dry, and the other Green; are those who have indeed been faithful, but withall Rich, and full of good things; and thereupon have desired to be famous || among those without, *|| With foreign Nations.* and have thereby fallen into great Pride, and began to aim at high matters, and to forsake the Truth: Nor did they hold fast to the Righteous, but lived || with Strangers; and this Life seem'd the more Pleasant to them. Howbeit they departed not from God, but continued in the Faith; only they did not exercise the Works of Faith. Many therefore of these repented; and began to dwell in the Tower. Yet others still living among strange

People, and being lifted up with their Vanities, have utterly fallen away from God ; and follow'd the Works, and Wickednesses of the Heathen. These kind of Men therefore are reckon'd among Strangers to the Gospel. Others of these became Doubtful minded ; despairing by reason of their wicked doings ever to attain unto Salvation : Others being Dubious, stirr'd up Dissentions. To these therefore, and to those who by reason of their Doings are become doubtful, there is still hopes of return ; but they must repent quickly, that their Place may be in the Tower. But they that repent not, but continue still in their Pleasures ; are nigh unto Death.

X. As for those who gave in their Rods Green, excepting their Tops, which only were Dry, and had Clefs ; These were always Good, and Faithful, and Approved towards God : Nevertheless they sinn'd a little, by reason of their empty Pleasures, and little Disputes which they had among themselves. Wherefore many of them when they heard my words, repented forthwith ; and began to dwell in the Tower.

Tower. Nevertheless some grew doubtful, and others to their doubtful Minds added Dissentions. To these therefore there is still hope of return, because they were always Good; but they shall hardly be moved. As for those lastly, who gave in their Rods dry, their Tops only excepted, which alone were Green; They are such as have believed indeed in God, but have lived in Wickedness; yet without departing from God: Having always willingly Born the Name of the LORD; and readily received into their Houses the Servants of God. Wherefore hearing these things, they return'd, and without delay repented, and lived in all Righteousness. And some of them suffered Death; others readily underwent many trials, being mindful of their Evil-doings.

XI. AND when he had ended his Explications of all the Rods, he said unto me; Go, and say unto all Men that they Repent, and they shall live unto God: Because the LORD being moved with great Clemency hath sent me to preach Repentance unto all; even to those who by reason of their  
Evil

Evil-doings, deserve not to attain unto Salvation. But the LORD will be Patient, and keep the Invitation that was made by his Son. I said unto him; Sir, I hope that All when they shall hear these things will repent. For I trust that every one acknowledging his Crimes, and taking up the fear of the LORD, will return unto Repentance. He said unto me; Whosoever shall repent with all their Hearts, and cleanse themselves from all the Evils that I have before mentioned; and not add any thing more to their sins, shall receive from the LORD the Cure of their former Iniquities; if they shall not make any Doubt of my Commands, and shall live unto God. But they that shall continue to add to their Transgressions, and shall still converse with the Lusts of this present World, shall Condemn themselves unto Death. But do thou walk in these Commands, and thou shalt live unto God. And whosoever shall walk in these, and exercise them rightly, shall live unto God. And having shew'd me all these things, he said: I will shew thee the rest in a few days.

The

# The Ninth SIMILITUDE.

*The Greatest Myſteries of the Militant and Triumphant Church which is to be built.*

I. **A**FTER I had written the Commands and Similitudes of the Shepherd, the Angel of Repentance ; he came unto me, and ſaid to me ; I will ſhew thee all thoſe things which the || Spirit ſpake with thee || *See above Book I.* under the Figure of the Church. For that Spirit is the Son of God. And becauſe thou wert weak in Body, it was not declared unto thee by the Angel, until thou wert ſtrengthened by the Spirit, and encreaſed in force, that thou mighteſt alſo ſee the Angel. For then indeed the Building of the Tower was gloriouſly ſhewn unto thee by the Church ; nevertheleſs thou ſaweſt all things ſhewn unto thee as it were by a Virgin. But now thou art enlightned by the Angel, but indeed by the ſame Spirit. But thou muſt conſider all things diligently ; for therefore am I ſent into thine Houſe by that Venerable \* Meſ- \* *Angel.* ſenger,



senger, that when thou shalt have seen all things powerfully, thou mayst not be afraid as before. And he led me to the Top of a Mountain of *Arcadia*, and we sat upon its Top. And he shew'd me a great Plain, and about it Twelve Mountains in different Figures. The First was black as Soot. The Second was smooth, without Grass. The Third was full of Thorns and Thistles. The Fourth had Grass half dryed; of which the upper part was green, but that next the Root was dry; and some of the Herbs, when the Sun grew hot, were dry. The Fifth Mountain was very rugged; but yet had green Grass. The Sixth Mountain was full of Clefts, some lesser, and some greater; and in those Clefts grew Grass, not flourishing, but which seem'd to be withering. The Seventh Mountain had delightful Pasture; and was wholly fruitful; and all kinds of Cattle, and of the Birds of Heaven, fed upon it; and the more they fed of it, the more and better did the Grass grow. The Eighth Mountain was full of Fountains, and from those Fountains were water'd all kinds of  
the

the Creatures of God. The Ninth Mountain had no Water at all, but was wholly destitute of it ; and nourish'd deadly Serpents, and destructive to Men. The Tenth Mountain was full of tall Trees, and altogether shady ; and under the Shade of them lay Cattle resting and chewing the Cud. The Eleventh Mountain was full of the thickest Trees ; and those Trees seem'd to be loaded with several sorts of Fruits ; that whosoever saw them could not chuse but desire to eat of their Fruit. The Twelfth Mountain was altogether white, and of a most pleasant Aspect, and its self gave a most excellent Beauty to its self.

II. I N the middle of the Plain || Origen Hom. iii. in Ezech. he shew'd me a huge white Rock, which rose out of the Plain, and the Rock was higher than those Mountains, and was square ; so that it seem'd capable of supporting the whole World. It look'd to me to be old, yet had in it a new Gate, which seem'd to have been newly hewn out in it. Now that Gate was bright beyond the Sun its self ; insomuch that

I greatly admired at its Light. About that Gate stood Twelve Virgins; of which Four that stood at the Corners of the Gate, seem'd to me to be the Chiefest; although the rest also were of worth, and they stood in the four parts of the Gate. It added also to the Grace of those Virgins, that they stood in pairs, cloathed with linnen Garments, and decently girded, their right Arms being at liberty, as if they were about to lift up a Hook, for so they were adorn'd; and were exceeding chearful and ready. When I saw this, I wonder'd with my self to see such great and noble things. And again I admir'd upon the Account of those Virgins, that they were so handsom and delicate; and stood with such Firmness and Constancy, as if they would carry the whole Heaven. And as I was thinking thus within my self; the Shepherd said unto me; What thinkest thou within thy self, and art disquieted, and fillest thy self with Care? Do not seem to consider as if thou wert wise what thou dost not understand, but pray unto the LORD, that thou mayst have Ability

to understand it : What is to come thou canst not understand, but seeest that which is before thee. Be not therefore disquieted at those things which thou canst not see ; but get the Understanding of those which thou seeest. Forbear to be curious : And I will shew thee all things that I ought to declare unto thee ; but first consider what yet remains.

III. AND when he had said this unto me, I looked up, and behold I saw Six tall and Venerable Men coming ; their Countenances were all alike ; and they call'd a certain Multitude of Men ; and they who came at their Call were also tall and stout. And those six commanded them to build a certain Tower over that Gate. And immediately there began to be a great Noise of those Men running here and there about the Gate, who were come together to build the Tower. Now those Virgins which stood about the Gate perceived that the Building of the Tower was to be hastned on by them. And they stretched out their Hands, as if they were about to receive somewhat from

† So Corcleri-  
us in loc.

from them. Then those six Men commanded, that they should lift up Stones out of a certain deep place, and prepare them for the Building of the Tower. And there were lifted up ten white Stones, square, and † not cut round. Then those six Men called the Virgins to them, and commanded them to carry all the Stones that were to be put into the Building; and having carried them through the Gate to deliver them to those that were about to build that Tower. Immediately the Virgins began to lift up all of them together those Stones, that were before taken out of the Deep.

IV. AND they also who stood about the Gate did carry *Stones* in such a manner, that those Stones which seem'd to be the strongest were laid at the Corners, the rest were put into the Sides; and thus they carried all the Stones, and bringing them through the Gate, deliver'd them to the Builders, as they had been commanded. Now they receiving them at their Hands built with them. The Building was made upon

upon that great Rock, and over the Gate; and by these the whole Tower was supported. But the Building of the Ten Stones fill'd the whole Gate, which began to be made at the Foundation of that Tower. After those ten Stones were five and twenty others lifted up out of the Deep; and these were placed in the Building of the same Tower; being lifted up by those Virgins, as the others had been before. After these were five and thirty others lifted up; and these were also in like manner fitted into the same Work. Then forty other Stones were brought up, and all these were added unto the Building of that Tower. So there began to be four Ranks in the Foundation of that Tower; and the Stones began to cease to be drawn out of the Deep; and they also which built rested a little. Again, those six Men commanded the Multitude, that they should bring Stones out of those twelve Mountains to the Building of the same Tower. So they cut out of all the Mountains Stones of divers Colours, and brought them, and gave them to the Virgins; which when they had re-

H h

ceived

ceived they reach'd them up, and carried them into the Building of the Tower. In which when they were built they became white, and different *from what they were before*; for they were all alike, and did change their former Colours. And some were reach'd up by the Men themselves, which when they came into the Building, continued such as they were put in. These neither became white, nor different *from what they were before*; because they were not carried by the Virgins through the Gate. Wherefore these Stones were disagreeable in the Building; which when those six Men perceived, they commanded them to be removed, and put again in the place from which they were brought. And they said to those who brought those Stones: Do not ye reach up to us any Stones for this Building; but lay them down by the Tower, that these Virgins may take them up and reach them to us. For unless they shall be carried by these Virgins through this Gate, they cannot change their Colours: Therefore do not labour in vain.

V. SO the Building that day was ended, howbeit the Tower was not finish'd ; for it was afterwards to be built, therefore now also there was some delay made of it. And those six Men commanded those that built to depart, and as it were to rest for some time; but they order'd those Virgins that they should not depart from the Tower : Now they seem'd to me to be left for the guarding of it. When all were departed, I said unto that Shepherd ; Sir, Why is not the Building of the Tower finish'd ? Because it cannot, said he, be finish'd until its Lord comes, and approves of the Building ; that if he shall find any Stones in it that are not good they may be changed ; for this Tower is built according to his Will. Sir, said I, I would know, what the Building of this Tower signifies ; as also I would be inform'd concerning this Rock, and this Gate, and concerning the Mountains, and the Virgins, and the Stones that were drawn out of the Deep, and not cut, but put into the Building just as they came forth ; and why the ten Stones



were first laid in the Foundation ; then the twenty five ; then thirty five ; then forty ? Also concerning those Stones that were put into the Building, and again taken out, and carried back into their place ? Fulfil, *I pray*, the desire of my Soul as to all these things, and manifest all unto me. And he said unto me ; If thou shalt not be dull, thou shalt know all, and shalt see all the other things that are about to happen in this Tower ; and shalt understand diligently all these Similitudes. And after a few days we came into the same place where we had sate before ; and he said unto me, Let us go unto the Tower ; for the LORD of it will come and examine it. So we came thither , and found none but those Virgins there. And he asked them, whether the LORD of that Tower was come thither ? And they reply'd, that he would be there presently, to examine the Building.

VI. AFTER a very little while I saw a great Multitude of Men coming, and in the middle of them a Man so tall, that he surpassed the  
Tower

Tower in Bigness. And about him were those six, who before commanded in the Building, and all the rest of those who had built that Tower, and many others of great Dignity : And the Virgins that kept the Tower ran to meet him, and kissed him, and began to walk near unto him. But he examined the Building with so much care that he handled every Stone ; and strook every one with a Rod which he held in his Hand ; of which some being so struck turn'd black as Soot ; others were rough ; some looked as if they had Cracks in them ; others seem'd maimed ; some neither black nor white ; some look'd sharp, and agreed not with the other Stones, and others were full of Spots. These were the several kinds of these Stones which were not found proper in the Building : All which the LORD commanded to be taken out of the Tower, and laid near it, and other Stones to be brought, and put in their Places. And they that built, ask'd him from which of the Mountains he would have Stones brought to put in the Place of those that were laid

aside: But he forbad them to bring any from the Mountains, and commanded that they should take them out of a certain Field that was near: So they digged in that Field, and found many bright square Stones, and some also that were round. Howbeit all that were found in that Field were taken away, and carried through the Gate by those Virgins; and those of them that were square were fitted and put into the places of those that were pulled out. But the round ones were not put into the Building, because they were hard, and it would have required too much time to cut them; but they were placed about the Tower, as if they should hereafter be cut square, and put into the Building; for they were very white.

VII. WHEN he who was chief in Dignity, and LORD of the whole Tower saw this, he called to him the Shepherd that was with me, and gave him the Stones that were rejected and laid about the Tower, and said unto him; Cleanse these Stones with all Care, and fit them into the Building

Building of the Tower, that they may agree with the rest; but those that will not suit with the rest, cast away afar from off from the Tower. When he had thus commanded him, he departed, with all those that came with him to the Tower: But those Virgins still stood about the Tower to keep it. And I said unto that Shepherd; How can these Stones, seeing they have been rejected, return into the Building of this Tower? He reply'd; I will cut off the greatest part from these Stones, and will add them to the Building, and they will agree with the rest. And I said, Sir, How will they be able to fill the same place, when they shall be so much cut away? He answer'd; They that shall be found too little shall be put into the middle of the Building, and the greater shall be placed without, and keep them in. When he had said thus unto me, he added; Let us go, and after three days we will return, and I will put these Stones, being cleansed, into the Tower: For all these that are about the Tower must be cleansed, least the Master of the House chance to

come upon the suddain, and find those which are about the Tower, unclean, and so shall despise them; and these Stones shall not be put into this Building, and I shall be look'd upon to have been negligent. When therefore we came after three days to the Tower, he said unto me; Let us examin all these Stones, and let us see which of them may go into the Building. I answer'd, Sir, Let us see.

VIII. AND first of all we began to consider those which had been Black; for they were found just such as they were when they were pull'd out of the Tower: Wherefore he commanded them to be removed from the Tower, and put by themselves. Then he examined those which had been rough; and commanded many of those to be cut round, and to be fitted by the Virgins into the Building of the Tower: So they took them, and fitted them into the middle of the Building; and he commanded the rest to be laid by with the Black Ones, for they also were become Black. Next he considered those which  
were

were full of Cracks; and many of those also he order'd to be pared away, and so to be added to the rest of the Building, by the same Virgins: These were placed without, because they were found entire; but the residue through the multitude of their Cracks could not be reform'd, and therefore were cast away from the Building of the Tower. Then he consider'd those that were maimed; many of these had Cracks, and were become Black: Others had large Clefts: These he commanded to be placed with those that were rejected; but the rest being cleansed and reform'd, he commanded to be put into the Building: These therefore those Virgins took up, and fitted into the Middle of the Building; because they were but Weak. After these he examined those which were found half White and half Black; and many of those were now Black; These also he order'd to be laid among those that were cast away. The rest were found altogether White; those were taken up by the Virgins, and fitted into the same Tower: || And these were put in the outside, because they were found entire; that so they might

|| Vid. MS.  
Lamb. Edit.  
Oxon, p. 157.

might keep in those that were placed in the middle ; for nothing was cut off from them. Next he look'd upon those which were Hard and Sharp ; But few of these were made use of, because they could not be Cut : For they were found very hard ; but the rest were form'd, and fitted by the Virgins into the middle of the Building, because they were more weak. Then he consider'd those which had Spots ; of these a few were found Black, and these were carried to their Fellows. The rest were White and Entire ; and they were fitted by the Virgins into the Building, and placed in the Outside, by reason of their Strength.

IX. AFTER this he came to consider those Stones which were White and Round ; and he said unto me, What shall we do with these Stones ? I answer'd, Sir, I cannot tell. He reply'd, Canst thou think of nothing then for these ? I answer'd, Sir, I understand not this Art ; neither am I a Stone-Cutter , nor can I tell any thing. And he said, Seest thou not that they are very Round ? Now to make them Square, I must cut off a  
great

great deal from them ; Howbeit it is necessary that some of these should go into the Building of the Tower : I answer'd ; If it be Necessary, why do you perplex your self, and not rather chuse, if you have any Choice among them, and fit them into the Building ? Upon this he chose out the largest and brightest, and squared them ; which when he had done the Virgins took them up, and placed them in the Outside of the Building. And the rest that remained, were carried back into the same Field from which they were taken : Howbeit they were not cast away ; Because, said he, there is yet a little wanting to this Tower, which is to be Built ; and perhaps the LORD will have these Stones fitted into this Building, because they are exceeding White. Then were there called twelve very Stately Women, cloath'd with a Black Garment, girded, and their Shoulders free, and their Hair loose. These seem'd to me to be Country Women. And the Shepherd commanded them to take up those Stones which were cast out of the Building, and carry them back to the Mountains out of which



which they were taken. And they took them up joyfully, and carried them back to their Places from whence they had been taken. When not one Stone remain'd about the Tower, he said unto me; let us go about this Tower, and see that nothing be wanting to it. We began therefore to go round it; and when he saw that it was handsomely Built, he began to be very Glad: for it was so beautifully framed, that any one that had seen it must have been in Love with the Building: For it seem'd to be all but one Stone, nor did a joynt any where appear; but it look'd as if it had all been cut out of One Rock.

X. AND when I diligently consider'd what a Tower it was, I was extremely pleas'd; And he said unto me, Bring hither some Lime and little Shells, that I may fill up the Spaces of those Stones that were taken out of the Building, and put in again; for all things about the Tower, must be made Even. And I did as he commanded me, and brought them unto him; And he said unto me, Be ready to Help me, and this Work will quickly

ly be finish'd. He therefore filled up the Spaces of those Stones, and commanded the place about the Tower to be cleansed. Then those Virgins took Beasoms, and cleansed all the place around, and took away all the Rubbish, and threw on Water. Which being done, the place became delightful, and the Tower Beauteous. Then he said unto me ; All is now Clean : If the LORD should come to finish the Tower, he will find nothing whereby to complain of us. When he had said this he would have departed. But I laid hold on his Bag, and began to entreat him for the LORD's sake, that he would explain to me all things that he had shewn me. He said unto me, I have at present a little business ; but I will suddainly explain all things unto thee. Tarry here for me till I come. I said unto him ; Sir, What shall I do here alone ? He answer'd, Thou art not alone, seeing all these Virgins are with thee. I said ; Sir, Deliver me then unto them. Then he called them, and said unto them ; I commend this Man unto you till I shall come. So I remain'd with those Virgins ; Now they were Chearful  
and

and Courteous unto me ; especially the four , which seem'd to be the Chiefest among them.

XI. THEN those Virgins said unto me ; that Shepherd will not return hither to day. I said unto them ; What then shall I do ? They answer'd, Tarry for him till the Evening, if perhaps he may come and speak with thee ; But if not, yet thou shalt continue with us till he do's come. I said unto them, I will tarry for him till Evening ; but if he comes not by that time I will go home, and return hither again the next Morning. They answered me ; thou art deliver'd unto us, thou mayst not depart from us. I said, Where shall I tarry ? They replied ; Thou shalt sleep with us as a Brother, not as a Husband : For thou art our Brother, and we are ready from henceforth to dwell with thee ; for thou art very dear to us. Howbeit I was ashamed to continue with them. But she that seem'd to be the chiefest amongst them, embraced me, and began to kiss me. And the rest when they saw that I was kissed by her, began also to kiss me

me as a Brother ; and led me about the Tower , and play'd with me. Some of them also sung Psalms, others made up the Chorus with them. But I walked about the Tower with them , rejoycing silently and seeming to my self to be grown young again. And when the Evening came on, I would forthwith have gone home, but they with-held me, and suffer'd me not to depart. Wherefore I continued with them that Night near the same Tower. So they spread their Linnen Garments upon the Ground ; and placed me in the middle, nor did they any thing else but Pray. I also pray'd with them without ceasing, no less than they. Who when they saw me pray in that manner, rejoyced greatly ; and I continued there with them till the next day. And when we had worship'd God, then the Shepherd came and said unto them ; You have done no Injury to this Man. They answer'd, Ask him. I said unto him, Sir, I have received a great deal of Satisfaction in that I have remained with them. And he said unto me, How didst thou sup ? I answered, Sir,

Sir, I feasted the whole Night upon the Words of the LORD. They received thee well then, said he? I said, Sir, Very well. He answer'd, Wilt thou now learn *what thou didst desire*? I reply'd, Sir, I will: And first I pray thee that thou shouldst shew me all things in the Order that I asked them. He answer'd. I will do all as thou wouldst have me, nor will I hide any thing from thee.

XII. FIRST of all Sir, said I, Tell me, what this Rock and this Gate denote? Hearken said he; This Rock, and this Gate are the Son of God. I reply'd, Sir, How can that be; seeing the Rock is old, but the Gate new? Hear, said he, O foolish Man! and understand. The Son of God is indeed more antient than any Creature; insomuch that he was in Council with his Father at the Creation of all things. But the Gate is therefore new, because he appear'd in the last days at the fulness of *time*; that they who shall attain unto Salvation, may by it enter into the Kingdom of God. You have seen, said

said he, those Stones which were carried through the Gate, how they were placed in the Building of the Tower; but that those which were not carried through the Gate, were sent away into their own places? I answer'd, Sir, I saw it. Thus, said he, No Man shall enter into the Kingdom of God, but he who shall take upon him the Name of the Son of God. For if you would enter into any City, and that City should be encompassed with a Wall, and had only one Gate, could you enter into that City except by the Gate which it has? I answer'd, Sir, How could I do otherwise? As therefore, said he, there would be no other way of entering into that City but by its Gate, so neither can any one enter into the Kingdom of God, but only by the Name of the Son of God, who is most dear unto him. And he said unto me, Didst thou see the Multitude that built that Tower? Sir, said I, I saw it. He answer'd, All those are the Angels, venerable in their Dignity. With these is the LORD encompassed as with a Wall; but the Gate is the Son of God; who is the

only Way of coming unto God. For no Man shall enter into the Kingdom of God by any other Way, but only by his Son. Thou sawest *also*, said he, the six Men, and in the middle of them that Tall, Great Man, who walk'd about the Tower, and rejected the Stones out of the Tower? Sir, said I, I saw them. He answer'd, that Man was the glorious Son of God; and those six were his Angels of most eminent Dignity, which stand about him on the Right Hand and on the Left. Of these excellent Angels none comes in unto God without him. He added; Whosoever therefore shall not take upon him his Name, he shall not enter into the Kingdom of God.

XIII. THEN he said, What is this Tower? This said he, is the Church. And what, Sir, are these Virgins? He said unto me, these are the Holy Spirits; for no Man can enter into the Kingdom of God except these cloath him with their Garment. For it will avail thee nothing to take up the Name of the Son of God, unless thou shalt also receive  
their

their Garment from them. For these Virgins are the Powers of the Son of God. So shall a Man in vain carry his Name, unless he shall also carry his Powers. And he said unto me; Sawest thou those Stones that were cast away? They carried indeed the Name, but put not on their Garment. I said, Sir, What is their Garment? || Their very Names, said he, are their Garment. Therefore whosoever carries the Name of the Son of God, ought to carry their Names also; for the Son of God also himself carrieth their Names. As for those Stones, continued he, which being deliver'd by their Hands, thou sawest remain in the Building, they were cloathed with their Power; for which cause thou seest the whole Tower of the same † Colour with the Rock, and made as it were of one Stone. So also those who have believed in God by his Son, have put on this Spirit. Behold there shall be one Spirit, and one Body, and one Colour of their Garments: And all they shall attain this, who shall carry the Names of these Virgins. And I said, Sir, Why then were

† Vid. Annot.  
 Edit. Oxon.  
 p. 166. d.  
  
 † Vid. Origen.  
 Philocal. c. viii.

I i 2      those



those Stones cast away which were rejected ; seeing they also were carried through the Gate ; and delivered by the Hands of these Virgins into the Building of this Tower ? Seeing, said he, thou takest care to enquire diligently into all things ; hear also concerning those Stones which were rejected. All these received the Name of the Son of God, and with that the Power of these Virgins. Having therefore received these Spirits they were perfected, and brought into the Number of the Servants of God ; and they began to be one Body, and to have one Garment ; for they were sensible of the same Righteousness, which they alike exercised. But after that they beheld those Women which thou sawest cloathed with a black Garment, with their Shoulders at Liberty and their Hair loose ; they fix'd their Desires upon them, being tempted with their Beauty ; and were cloathed with their Power, and cast off the Cloathing of the Virgins. Therefore were they cast off from the House of God, and delivered to those Women. But they  
that

that were not corrupted with their Beauty, remained in the House of God. This, said he, is the signification of those Stones which were rejected.

XIV. AND I said: Sir, What if any of these Men shall repent, and cast away their desire of those Women, and be converted, and return to these Virgins, and put on again their Vertue; shall they not enter into the House of God? They shall enter, said he, if they shall lay aside all the Works of those Women, and shall resume the Power of these Virgins, and shall walk in their Works. And for this Cause there is a stop in the Building, that if they shall repent, they may be added to the Building of this Tower; but if they shall not repent, that others may be built in their places, and they be utterly cast away. For all these things I gave Thanks unto the LORD, that being moved with Mercy towards all those upon whom his Name is called, he sent to us the Angel of Repentance to preside over us who have sinned against him; and that

he has renew'd our Spirits which were almost gone, and who had no hope of Salvation, but are now refreshed to the Renewal of Life. Then I said; Shew me now Sir, Why this Tower is not built upon the Ground, but upon a Rock, and upon the Gate? He replied; Thou art yet foolish and without Understanding, seeing thou askest this. And I said; Sir, I must needs ask all things of you, because I understand nothing. For all your Answers are great and excellent; and which a Man can hardly understand. Hear, said he: The Name of the Son of God is great and without Bounds, and the whole World is supported by it. If therefore, said I, every Creature of God be sustain'd by his Son; Why do's he not support those also who have been invited by him, and who carry his Name, and walk in his Commandments? Seest thou not, said he, that he do's support them, who with all their Heart carry his Name? He therefore is their Foundation, and gladly supports those who do not deny his Name, but willingly bear it.

XV. AND

XV. AND I said: Sir, tell me, the Names of these Virgins; and of those Women that were cloathed with the black Garment. Hear, said he, the Names of those Virgins which are the more powerful, and stand at the Corners of the Gate. These are their Names: The First is called || Faith; the Second, Abstinence; the Third, Power; the Fourth, Patience; the rest which stand beneath these are, Simplicity; Innocence; Chastity; Chearfulness; Truth; Understanding; Concord; and Charity. Whosoever therefore carry these Names, and the Name of the Son God, shall enter into the Kingdom of God. Hear now, said he, the Names of those Women, which were cloathed with the black Garment. Of these, Four are the principal; the First is Perfidiousness; the Second, Intemperance; the Third, Infidelity; the Fourth, Pleasure. And the rest which follow are called thus, Sadness; Malice; Lust; Anger; Lying; Foolishness; Pride, and Hatred. The Servant of God which carries these Spirits, shall see indeed the Kingdom of God, but he shall

|| Origen. Hom.  
in Ezck.

not enter into it. But Sir, what are those Stones which were taken out of the Deep and fitted into the Building? The ten, said he, which were placed at the Foundation, are the first Age; the following five and twenty, the second, of Righteous Men. The next thirty five, are the Prophets and Ministers of the LORD. And the forty, are the Apostles and Doctors of the Preaching of the Son of God. And I said, Sir, Why did the Virgins carry even these Stones also through the Gate, and so put them into the Building? And he said, Because these first Spirits carried them; and they departed not one from the other, neither the Men from the Spirits, nor the Spirits from the Men; but the Spirits were joyned to those Men even to the day of their Death; who if they had not had these Spirits with them they could not have been useful to the Building of this Tower.

XVI. AND I said; Sir, Shew me this farther. He answer'd, What do'st thou demand? Why did these Stones come out of the Deep, and were placed into the Building of this Tower,

Tower, seeing that they long ago carried their just Spirits? † It was † Vid. Edit. necessary, said he, for them to ascend <sup>Exon.p.171.b.</sup> by Water, and so to beat rest. For they could not otherwise enter into the Kingdom of God, but by laying aside the Mortality of their former Life. They therefore being dead, were *nevertheless* sealed with the Seal of the Son of God, and so entred into the Kingdom of God. For before a Man receives the Name of the Son of God, he is ordained unto Death; but when he receives the Seal he is freed from Death, and delivered unto Life. Now that Seal is Water, into which Men go down under the Obligation unto Death, but come up appointed unto Life. Wherefore to those also was this Seal || preached, <sup>Vid. Coteler. Annot. in loc. pag. 77, 78. Comp. 1 Pet. iii. 19.</sup> and they made use of it, that they might enter into the Kingdom of God. And I said; Why then, Sir, did these forty Stones also ascend with them out of the Deep, having already received that Seal? He answered; \* Because these Apostles \* Vid. Clem. and Teachers, who preached the Name of the Son of God, dying after they had received his Faith and Power, <sup>Alex. Strom. ii. Et vi.</sup>

Power, preached to them who were dead before ; and they gave this Seal to them. They went down therefore into the Water with them, and again came up. But these went down alive ; whereas those, who were before dead, went down dead, but came up alive. Through these therefore they received Life and knew the Son of God : For which Cause they came up with them, and agreed in the Building of the Tower ; and were not cut, but put in intire ; because they dyed in great Purity being full of Righteousness ; only this Seal was wanting to them. Thus you have the Explication of these things.

XVII. I ANSWER'D : Sir, Tell me now what concerns those Mountains, why they are so different ; some of one Form, and some of another. Hear, said he : These Twelve Mountains which thou seest, are Twelve Nations, which make up the whole World. Wherefore the Son of God is preached to them, by those whom he sent unto them. But why, said I, are they different, and every one of a several Figure ? *He replied ;*  
Hearken.

Hearken. Those Twelve Nations which possess the whole World, are Twelve Peoples: And as thou hast beheld these Mountains different, so are they. I will therefore open to thee the Meaning, and Actions of every Mountain. *But* first, Sir, said I, shew me this: Seeing these Mountains are so different, how have they agreed into the Building of this Tower; and are no less bright than those which came out of the Deep? Because, reply'd he, all the Nations under Heaven, that have heard and believed, have been called in the same one Name of the Son of God. Wherefore having received his Seal, they have all been made Partakers of the same Prudence and \* Knowledge; \* *Sense.* and their Faith and Charity have been the same; and they have carried the Spirits of these Virgins with his Name. And therefore the Building of this Tower seemed of the same Colour, and did shine like the Brightness of the Sun. Howbeit after that they were thus perswaded, *and that* there began to be one Body of them all, some among them polluted themselves, and were cast off from the

Gene-



Generation of the Righteous, and again return'd to their former State, and became even worse than they were before.

XVIII. HOW, said I, Sir, were they worse who knew the LORD? He answer'd; If he who knows not the LORD liveth wickedly, the Punishment of his Wickedness attends him. But he who has known the LORD, ought to abstain altogether from all Wickedness, and more and more be the Servant of Righteousness. And do's not he then seem to thee to sin more who ought to follow Goodness, if he shall prefer the part of Sin; than he who offends without knowing the Vertue of God? Wherefore these are indeed ordain'd unto Death; But they who have known the LORD, and have seen his wonderful Works, if they shall live wickedly, they shall be doubly punish'd, and shall die for ever. As therefore thou hast seen that after the Stones were cast out of the Tower, which had been rejected; they were deliver'd to wicked and cruel Spirits; and thou beheldst  
the

the Tower so cleansed, as if it had all been made of one Stone : || So the Church of God, when it shall be purified ; ( the Wicked and Counterfeits, the Mischeivous and Doubtful, and all that have behaved themselves wickedly in it, and committed divers kinds of Sin, being cast out ; ) shall become one Body, and there shall be one Understanding, one Opinion, one Faith, and the same Charity. Then shall the Son of God rejoice among them ; and shall receive his People with a pure Will. And I said ; Sir, All these things are great and honourable : But now shew unto me the Effect and Force of every Mountain ; that every Soul which trusteth in the LORD, when it shall hear these things, many honour his Great, and Wonderful, and Holy Name. Hear, said he, the Variety of these Mountains, that is, of the twelve Nations.

|| Vld. Orig.  
Philocal. C.  
viii.

**XIX.** THEY who have believed of the first Mountain, which is Black, are those who have revolted from the Faith ; and spoken wicked things against the LORD ; and betray'd the Servants of God. To these Death

is

† *Feigned.*

is proposed, but there is no Repentance for them : And therefore they are Black , because their kind is wicked. Of the second Mountain which was Smooth, are the † Hypocrites, who have believed, and the Teachers of Naughtiness: And these are next to the foregoing, which have not in them the Fruit of Righteousness. For as their Mountain is barren, and without Fruit ; so also such kind of Men have indeed the Name of *Christians*, but are empty of Faith ; nor is there any Fruit of the Truth in them. Nevertheless there is room left to them for Repentance, if they shall suddainly pursue it : But if they shall delay, they also shall be Partakers of Death with the foregoing kind. I said, Sir, Why is there room left to those for Repentance, and not to the foregoing kind, seeing their Sins are well nigh the same? There is therefore, said he, to these a return unto Life, because they have not blasphemed their LORD, nor betray'd the Servants of God : But by their desire of Gain have deceived Men, leading them according to the desires of Sinners ; wherefore they shall

shall suffer for this thing. Howbeit there is still left them room for Repentance, because they have not spoken any thing wickedly against their LORD.

XX. THEY who are of the third Mountain which had Thorns and Brambles, are those who believed, but were some of them Rich, others taken up with many Affairs: The Brambles are their Riches; the Thorns, those Affairs in which they were engaged. Now they who are entangled in much Business, and in Diversity of Affairs, joyn not themselves to the Servants of God, but wander, being called away by those Affairs with which they are choaked. And so they which are rich, with difficulty yield themselves to the \* Conversation of the Servants of God; fearing least any thing should be ask'd of them. These therefore shall hardly enter into the Kingdom of God. For as Men walk with difficulty bare-foot over Thorns; even so these kind of Men, shall scarcely enter into the Kingdom of God. Nevertheless there is afforded to all these

\* Vid. Edit.  
Oxon. p. 172.  
Not, b.

a return unto Repentance ; if so be they shall quickly return to it ; that because in their former days they have neglected to work, in the time that is to come they may do some Good. If therefore having repented they shall do the Works of Righteousness, they shall live : But if they shall continue in their Evil Courses, they shall be deliver'd to those Women that will take away their Life.

XXI AS for the fourth Mountain, which had much Grass, the upper part of which is green, but the rest dry, and some of which being touch'd with the Heat of the Sun, is wither'd ; it denotes the doubtful, who have believed, and some others who carry the LORD in their Tongues, but have him not in their Heart : Therefore their Grass is dry, and without Root ; because they live only in Words, but their Works are dead. These therefore are neither dead nor living, and withal are doubtful. For the Doubtful are neither Green nor Dry, that is, neither Dead nor Alive. For as their Grass dries away at the Sight  
of

of the Sun ; so the Doubtful as soon as they hear of Persecution, and fear Inconveniences, return to their Idols, and again serve them, and are ashamed to bear the Name of their LORD. This kind of Men then is neither Dead nor Alive; nevertheless these also may live, if they shall presently repent : But if not, they shall be delivered to those Women, who shall take away their Life.

XXII. AS concerning the fifth Mountain that is craggy, and yet has green Grass : They are of this kind who have believed, and are Faithful indeed, but believe with Difficulty ; and are bold, and self-conceited ; that would be thought to know all things, but really know nothing. Wherefore by reason of this Confidence Knowledge is departed from them, and a rash Presumption is entred into them. But they carry themselves high, and as prudent Men ; and though they are Fools, yet would seem to be Teachers. Now by reason of this Folly many of them whilst they magnifie themselves, are become vain and empty. For Boldness and vain

K k

Con-

Confidence is a great Seducer. Wherefore many of these are cast away : But others acknowledging their Error, have repented, and submitted themselves to those who are knowing : And to all the rest of this kind there is Repentance allow'd ; forasmuch as they were not so much wicked as foolish, and void of Understanding. If these therefore shall repent, they shall live unto God ; but if not, they shall dwell with those Women, who shall exercise their Wickedness upon them.

XXIII. FOR what concerns the sixth Mountain having greater and lesser Clefts, they are such as have believed ; but those in which were the lesser Clefts are they who have had Controversies among themselves ; and by reason of their Quarrels languish in the Faith : Nevertheless many of these have repented, and so will the rest when they shall hear my Commands ; for their Controversies are but small, and they will easily return unto Repentance. But those who have the greater *Clefts*, will be as stiff Stones, mindful of  
Grudges

Grudges and Offences, and practising Anger among themselves. These therefore are cast from the Tower, and rejected to be put into its Building ; therefore this kind of Men shall hardly live. Our God and LORD, who ruleth over all things, and has Power over all his Creatures, will not remember our Offences, but is easily appeased by those who confess their Sins : But Man being Languid, Mortal, Infirm, and full of Sins, perseveres in his Anger against Man ; as if it were in his Power to save or to destroy him. But I, as the Angel who am set over your Repentance, admonish you, that whosoever among you has any such purpose he would lay it aside, and return unto Repentance ; and the LORD will provide Remedies for your former Sins, if you shall purge your selves from this Evil Spirit ; but if you shall not do it, ye shall be delivered to him unto Death.

XXIV. AS for the seventh Mountain in which the Grass was green and flourishing, and the whole Mountain fruitful ; and all kind of Cattel fed



upon the Grasse of it ; and the more the Grasse was eaten, so much the more it flourished ; they are such as believed, and were always good and upright ; and without any Differences among themselves, but still rejoiced in all the Servants of God, having put on the Spirit of these Virgins ; and been always ready to shew Mercy to all Men, and easily giving to all Men of their Labours without upbraiding, and without Deliberation. Wherefore the LORD seeing their Simplicity and  
 || Innocence, has encreased them in the Works of their Hands, and given them Grace in all their Works. But I, who am appointed over your Repentance exhort you, that as many as are of this kind would continue in the same purpose, that your Seed may not be rooted out for ever. For the LORD hath try'd you, and written you into our Number ; and all your Seed shall dwell with the Son of God ; for ye are all of his Spirit.

XXV. AS concerning the eighth Mountain in which were a great many

many Springs, by which every kind of all the Creatures of God was watered; they are such as have believed the Apostles which the LORD sent into all the World to preach; and some Teachers who have preached and taught purely and sincerely, and have not in the least yielded to any Evil Desires, but have constantly walked in Righteousness and Truth. These therefore have their Conversation among the Angels.

XXVI. AGAIN; as for what concerns the ninth Mountain which was desert, and full of Serpents; they are such as have believed, but had many Stains: These are such Ministers as discharge their Ministry amiss; ravishing away the Goods of the Widows and Fatherless; and serve themselves, not others, out of those things which they have received. These, if they continue in this Covetousness, shall deliver themselves unto Death, nor shall there be any hope of Life for them. But if they shall be converted, and shall discharge their Ministry sincerely, they may live. As for those which were

found rough ; they are such as have deny'd the Name of the LORD, and not return'd again to the LORD, but have become savage, and wild ; not applying themselves to the Servants of God ; but being separated from them, have for the sake of a little Anxiety lost their Lives. For as a Vine that is forsaken in a Hedge, and never dress'd, perishes and is choaked by the Weeds, and in time becomes wild ; and ceases to be useful to its LORD. So this kind of Men despairing of themselves, and being made sour, have begun to be unprofitable to their LORD. Howbeit to these there is at last Repentance allow'd, if they shall not be found from their Hearts to have denied *Christ* : But if any of these shall be found to have denied *him* from his Heart, I cannot tell whether such a one can attain unto Life. And I say therefore, that if in these Days any one has denied, he should return unto Repentance ; for it cannot be that any one who now denies the LORD, can afterwards attain unto Salvation : Nevertheless Repentance is proposed unto them, who have formerly deny'd.

ny'd. But he who will repent must hasten on his Repentance, before the Building of this Tower is finished : Or if not, he shall be delivered by those Women unto Death. But they that are maimed, are the Deceitful; and those who mix one with another : These are the Serpents that you saw in that Mountain. For as the Poyson of Serpents is deadly unto Men ; So the Words of such Persons infect and destroy Men. They are therefore maimed in their Faith, by reason of that kind of Life in which they lead. Howbeit some of them, having repented, have been saved ; and so shall others of the same kind be saved, if they shall repent ; but if not, they shall die by those Women whose Power and Force they enjoy.

XXVII. FOR what concerns the tenth Mountain, in which were the Trees covering the Cattle, they are such as have believed ; and some of them been Bishops, that is, Governours of the Churches. Others, are such Stones, as have not feignedly, but with a chearful Mind enter-

tain'd the Servants of God. Then such as have been set over *inferior* Ministries; and have protected the Poor and the Widows; and have always kept a chaste Conversation; therefore they also are protected by the LORD. Whosoever shall do on this wise, are honour'd with the LORD; and their Place is among the Angels, if they shall continue to obey the LORD even unto the End.

XXVIII. AS to the eleventh Mountain in which were Trees loaded with several sorts of Fruits; they are such as have believed, and suffered Death for the Name of the LORD; and have endured with a ready Mind, and have given up their Lives with all their Hearts. And I said, Why then Sir, have all these Fruit; but some fairer than others? Hearken, said he: Whosoever have suffered for the Name of the LORD are esteemed honourable by the LORD; and all their Offences are blotted out, because they have suffered Death for the Name of the Son of God, Hear now, why their Fruits are different, and some of them excel others. They who  
being

being brought before Magistrates, and being ask'd, deny'd not the LORD, but suffered with a ready Mind; these are more honourable with the LORD.

The Fruits therefore that are the most fair are these. But they who were fearful and doubtful; and have deliberated with themselves whether they should confess or deny *Christ*; and yet have suffered; their Fruits are smaller, because that this Thought came into their Hearts: For it is a wicked and evil Thought for a Servant to deliberate whether he should deny his Master. Take heed therefore ye who have such Thoughts, that this Mind continue not in you, and ye die unto God. But ye who suffer Death for his Name sake, ought to honour the LORD, that he has esteem'd you worthy to bear his Name; and that you should be delivered from all your Sins. And why therefore do you not rather esteem your selves happy? Why do you not think that if any one among you suffer, he performs a great Work? For the LORD giveth you Life, and ye understand it not. For your Offences did oppress you; and had you  
not

not suffer'd for his Names sake ye had now been dead unto the LORD. Wherefore I speak this unto you who deliberate whether ye should confess or deny him: Confess that ye have the LORD for your God; least at any time denying him, ye be delivered over into Bonds: For if all Nations punish their Servants which deny their Masters; What think you that the LORD will do unto you, who has the Power of all things? Remove therefore out of your Hearts these Doubts; that ye may live for ever unto God.

XXIX. AS for the twelfth Mountain, which was white, they are such as have believed like sincere Children, into whose Thoughts there never came any Malice; nor have they ever known what Sin was, but have always continued in their Integrity. Wherefore this kind of Men shall without all doubt inherit the Kingdom of God; because they have never in any thing defiled the Commandments of God, but have continued with Sincerity in the same Condition all the days of their Life.  
Who-

Whoſoever therefore, ſaid he, ſhall continue as Children without Malice ; ſhall be more honourable than all thoſe of whom I have yet ſpoke : For all ſuch Children are honour'd by the LORD, and eſteemed the firſt of all. Happy therefore are ye who have removed all Malice from you, and put on Innocence ; becauſe ye ſhall firſt ſee the LORD. And after he had thus ended his Explication of all the Mountains, I ſaid unto him ; Sir, Shew me now alſo what concerns the Stones that were brought out of the Plain , and put into the Tower in the room of thoſe that were rejected ; as alſo concerning thoſe round Stones which were added into the Building of the Tower ; and alſo of thoſe who ſtill continued round.

XXX. H E A R now , ſays he , concerning thoſe Stones which were brought out of the Plain into the Building of the Tower, and placed in the room of thoſe that were rejected : They are the Roots of that white Mountain. Wherefore becauſe thoſe who have believed of that Mountain, were very Innocent ; the LORD  
of



¶ *Not.*

of this Tower commanded that they which were of the Roots of this Mountain should be placed into the Building. For he knew that if they were put into this Building they would continue bright; nor would any of them any more be made black. But if he had added on this manner from the rest of the Mountains, he would || have needed again to visit this Tower and to cleanse it. Now all these white Stones, are the young Men who have, and shall believe; for they are all of the same kind. Happy is this kind, because it is Innocent. Hear now also concerning those round and bright Stones. All these are of this white Mountain. But they are therefore found round, because their Riches have a little darkned them from the Truth, and dazzled their Eyes: Howbeit they have never departed from the LORD, nor has any wicked Word proceeded out of their Mouths; but all Righteousness, and Vertue, and Truth: When therefore the LORD saw their Mind, and that they might adorn the Truth; he commanded that they should continue good, and that their

Riches

Riches should be pared away: For he would not have them taken wholly away, to the End they might do some good with that which was left, and live unto God; because they also are of a good kind: Therefore they were a little cut away, and so put into the Building of this Tower.

XXXI. A S for the rest which continu'd still round, and were not found fit for the Building, because they have not yet received the Seal, they were carried back to their place; because they were found very round. But this present World must be cut away from them, and the Vanities of their Riches; and then they will be fit for the Kingdom of God. For they must enter into the Kingdom of God, because God has blessed this innocent kind. Of this kind therefore none shall fall away; for though any of them being tempted by the Devil should offend, he shall soon return to his LORD God. I the Angel of Repentance esteem you happy, whosoever are Innocent as little Children, because your part is good and honourable with the LORD.

And

|| Vid. Antioch.  
Hom. cxxii.

And I say unto all you who have received this Seal ; keep Simplicity, and remember not Affronts, nor continue in Malice ; neither suffer Bitterness to grow in your Spirits through the Memory of any Offences *that you have received* ; but provide Remedies for these evil Rents, and remove them from you ; that the LORD of the Sheep may rejoyce in you ; || for he will rejoyce, if he shall find all whole. But if any of these Sheep shall be found scatter'd away, Wo shall be to the Shepherds : And if the Shepherds themselves shall be scattered, how will they answer to God for the Sheep ? Will they say that they were troubled by the Sheep ? But they shall not be believed. For it is not to be believed, that the Shepherd should suffer by his Flock ; and he shall be the more punished for his Lie. Now I am the Shepherd ; and I especially must give an Account of you.

XXXII. WHEREFORE provide for your selves whilst the Tower is yet building. The LORD dwells in those that love Peace ; for true Peace  
is

is dear ; but he is far off from the Contentious, and those who are overtaken with Malice. Wherefore restore unto him the Spirit intire, as ye received it. † For if thou shalt give † Antioch. Hom. xciv. unto a Fuller a new Garment whole, thou wilt expect to receive it whole again : If therefore the Fuller shall restore it unto thee torn, wouldst thou receive it ? Wouldst thou not presently be angry ; and reproach him, saying ; I gave my Garment to thee whole, why hast thou rent it, and made it useles to me ? Now it is of no use to me, by reason of the Rent which thou hast made in it. Wouldst thou not say all this to a Fuller, for the Rent which he made in thy Garment ? If therefore thou wouldst be concern'd for thy Garment, and complain that thou hadst not received it whole, what thinkest thou that the LORD will do, who gave his Spirit to thee intire, and thou hast render'd him altogether unprofitable ? So that he can be of no use unto his LORD ? For being corrupted by thee, he is no longer profitable to him. Will not therefore the LORD do the same concerning his Spirit,

by

by reason of thy Sin? Undoubtedly, said I, he will do the same to all those whom he shall find to continue in the Remembrance of Injuries. Tread not then under foot, said he, his Mercy; but rather honour him, because he is so patient with respect to your Offences, and not like one of you; but repent, for that will be profitable for you.

**XXXIII.** ALL these things which are above written, I the Angel of Repentance have shewn and spoken to the Servants of God. If therefore ye shall believe and hearken to these Words, and shall walk in them, and shall correct your Ways, ye shall live. But if ye shall continue in your Wickedness, and in the Remembrance of Injuries, no such Sinners shall live unto God. All these things which were to be deliver'd by me, I have thus spoken unto thee. Then the Shepherd said unto me, Hast thou ask'd all things of me? I answered, Sir, I have. Why then, said he, Hast thou not ask'd concerning the Form of these Stones that were put in the Building, that I  
may

may explain that also unto thee? I answer'd; Sir, I forgot it. Hear then, said he, concerning those also. They are those who have heard these Commands, and have repented with all their Hearts: And when the LORD saw that their Repentance was good and pure, and that they could continue in it, he commanded their former Sins to be blotted out. For these Forms were their Sins, and they are therefore made even that *their Sins* might not appear.

## The Tenth SIMILITUDE.

*Of Repentance and Alms-Deeds.*

I. **A**FTER that I had written this Book, the Angel which had deliver'd me to that Shepherd, came into the House where I was, and sate upon the Bed, and that Shepherd stood at his Right Hand. Then he called me and said unto me; I deliver'd thee and thy House to this Shepherd, that thou mightest be protected by him. I said, Yes LORD. If therefore, said he, thou wilt be protected from all Vexation, and from all Cruelty, and have Success

in every good Word and Work ; and all Vertue and Righteousness ; walk in those Commands which he has given thee ; and thou shalt have Dominion over all Sin. For if thou keepest those Commands, all the Desire and Pleasure of this present World shall be subject to thee ; and Success shall follow thee in every good Undertaking. Take therefore his Gravity and Modesty upon thee, and say unto all, that he is in great Honour and Renown with God, and is, a || Prince of great Authority , and Powerful in his Office. To him only is the Power of Repentance committed throughout the whole World. Do's he not seem to thee to be of great Authority ? But ye despise his Goodness, and the Modesty which he shews towards you.

|| *President.*

II. I SAID unto him ; Sir, Ask him since the time that he came into my House , whether I have done any thing disorderly, or have offended him in any thing ? I know, said he, that thou hast done nothing disorderly, neither wilt thou hereafter do any thing ; and therefore I speak

ſpeak theſe things with thee that thou mayſt perſevere ; for he has given me a good Account concerning thee. But thou ſhalt ſpeak theſe things to others, that they who either have repented, or ſhall repent, may be of the ſame opinion with thee ; and he may give me as good an Account of them alſo, and I may do the ſame unto the LORD. I anſwer'd, Sir, I declare to all Men the wonderful Works of God : And I hope that all who love them and have before ſinned, when they ſhall hear theſe things will willingly repent, and ſo recover Life. Continue therefore, ſaid he, in this Miniſtry, and perfect it. And whoſoever ſhall fulfil the Commands of *this Shepherd*, ſhall live ; and ſhall have great Honour both here, and with the LORD. But they that ſhall not keep his Commands, flee from their Life, and are Adverſaries unto it. And they that follow not his Commands, ſhall deliver themſelves unto Death ; and every one ſhall be guilty of his own Bloud. But I ſay unto thee, keep theſe Commandments, and thou ſhalt find a Cure for all thy Sins.



III. MOREOVER I have sent these Virgins to dwell with thee, for I have seen that they are very kind to thee. Thou shalt therefore have them for thy Helpers, that thou mayst the better keep the Commands which have been given thee; for these Commands cannot be kept without these Virgins. And thou seest how they are willing to be with thee; and I will also command them that they shall not at all depart from thy House. Only do thou purifie thy House; for they will readily dwell in a clean House. For they are Clean, and Chast, and Industrious; and all of them have Grace with the LORD. If therefore thou shalt have thy House pure, they will abide with thee. But if it shall be never so little polluted, they will immediately depart from thy House; for these Virgins cannot endure any manner of Pollution. I said unto him; Sir, I hope that I shall so please them, that they shall always delight to dwell in my House. And as he to whom you have committed me makes no Complaint of me; so neither shall they com-

complain. *Then* he said to that Shepherd ; I see that the Servant of God will live and keep these Commandments ; and place these Virgins in a pure Habitation. When he had said this he delivered me again to that Shepherd, and called the Virgins, and said unto them ; Forasmuch as I see that ye will readily dwell in this Mans House, I commend him and his House to you ; that ye may not at all depart from his House. And they willingly heard these Words.

IV. THEN he said unto me , Go on Manfully in thy Ministry ; Declare to all Men the great things of God, and thou shalt find Grace in this Ministry. And whosoever shall walk in these Commands shall live, and be happy in his Life. But he that shall neglect them, shall not live, and shall be unhappy in his Life. Say unto all, that whosoever can do what is right, cease not to exercise themselves in good Works. For I would that all Men should be delivered from the Inconveniences they lie under. For he that wants and suf-

fers Inconveniences in his daily Life, is in great Torment and Necessity. Whosoever therefore delivers such a Soul from Necessity, gets great Joy unto himself. For he that is grieved with such Inconveniences, is equally tormented, as if he were in Chains. And many upon the Account of such Calamities, being not able to bear them, have *chosen even* to destroy themselves. He therefore that knows the Calamity of such a Man, and do's not free him from it, commits a great Sin, and is guilty of his Bloud. Wherefore exercise your selves in Good Works, as many as have received *Ability* from the LORD; least whilst ye delay to do them the Building of the Tower be finish'd; because for your sakes the Building is stopp'd. Except therefore ye shall make haste to do well, the Tower shall be finish'd, and ye shall have no place in it. And after he had *thus* spoken with me, he rose up from the Bed, and departed, taking the Shepherd and Virgins with him. Howbeit he said unto me, that he would send back the Shepherd and Virgins unto my House, *Amen.*

The

---

The Second  
**EPISTLE**  
OF  
St. *CLEMENT*  
TO THE  
**Corinthians.**

---



# T H E C O N T E N T S.

- Chap. I. **T**HAT we ought to entertain a Worthy Opinion of our Salvation: And to do the utmost of what in us lies to express the Value we put upon it, by a sincere Obedience to our Saviour Christ, and his Gospel.
- II. That God had before prophecy'd by Isaiah, that the Gentiles should be saved.
- III, IV. That this ought to engage such especially to be very careful to live well; without which they will still miscarry.
- V. That whilst we secure to our selves the Favour of God, and the Reward of the other World; we need not fear what can befall us in this.
- VI. That we cannot serve God and Mammon: Nor if we follow the Interests of this present World,

## The Contents.

*is it possible for us to escape the Punishment of the Other.*

VII. *The Consideration of which ought to bring us to Repentance and Holiness.*

VIII. *And that presently; knowing that now, whilst we are in this World, is the only time for Repentance.*

IX. *We shall rise, and be Judged in those Bodies in which we now are; therefore we must live well in them.*

X. *That we ought, as we value our own Interests, to live well; however few seem to mind what really is for their Advantage.*

XI. *And not deceive our selves with any vain Imaginations, as if no Punishment should remain for us if we do Evil; or Good happen to us hereafter, if we behave our selves as we ought to do: Seeing God will certainly judge us, and render to all of us according to our Works, and how soon this may be we can none of us tell.*

The Second

## EPISTLE

OF

St. CLEMENT

TO THE

## Corinthians.

I. BRETHREN, we ought so to think of Jesus Christ as of God; as of the Judge of the Living and the Dead. Nor should we think \* any less of our Salvation. For if <sup>\* Little things, or meanly.</sup> we think \* meanly of it, we shall hope only to receive \* some small Benefit by it. And if we shall † do <sup>† Hear as of little things.</sup> so; we shall sin; not || considering <sup>|| Knowing.</sup> from whence we have been called, and by whom, and to what place; and



† How great  
Holy things do  
we owe unto  
him.

and how much Jesus Christ vouchsafed to suffer for our sakes. What Recompence then shall we render unto him? Or what Fruit that may be worthy of what he has given to us? For *indeed* † how great are those Advantages which we owe to him in Relation to our Holiness? He has illuminated us; as a Father, he has called us his Children; he has saved us who were lost and undone. What Praise shall we ascribe to him? Or what Reward that may be answerable to those things which we have received? We were defective in our Understandings; worshiping Stones and Wood; Gold, and Silver, and Brass, the Works of Mens Hands, and our whole Life was nothing else but Death. Wherefore being encompassed with Darknes, and having such a Mist before our Eyes, we have look'd up; and through his Will have laid aside the Cloud wherewith we were surrounded. For he had Compassion upon us, and being moved in his Bowels towards us, he saved us; having beheld in us much Deceit, and Destruction; and seen that we had no hope of Salva-

Salvation but only by him. Therefore he called us, who were not; and was pleased from nothing to give us a Being.

II. **REJOICE** thou Barren that barest not, break forth and cry thou that travailest not; for she that is desolate hath many more Children, than she that hath an Husband. In that he said, Rejoice thou Barren that bearest not, He spake of us: For our Church was barren, before that Children were given unto it. And again; when he said, Cry thou that travailest not; He implied thus much: That after the manner of Women in Travail, we should not cease to put up our Prayers unto God † only. And for what remains, *Because she that is desolate hath more Children than she that hath an Husband*; It was therefore added, because our People which seem'd to have been forsaken by God, now believing in him, are become more than they who seem'd to have God. And another Scripture saith, *I came not to call the Righteous but Sinners to Repentance.* The Meaning of which is this; that those who were

Isai. liv. 1.

† Simply.

Mat. ix. 13.

were lost, must be saved. For that is indeed truly great and wonderful, not to confirm those things that are yet standing, but those which are falling. Even so did it seem good to Christ to save what was lost; and when he came into the World he saved many, and called us who were already perishing.

III. SEEING then he has shew'd so great Mercy towards us; and chiefly for that we who are alive do now no longer sacrifice to dead Gods, nor pay any Worship to them, but have by him been brought to the Knowledge of the Father of Truth; || Whereby shall we shew that we do indeed know him, but by not denying him by whom we have come to the Knowledge of him? For even he himself saith, *Whoever shall confess me before Men, him will I confess before my Father.* This therefore is our Reward, that if we confess him we shall be saved by him. But wherein must we confess him? *Namely*, in doing those things which he saith, and not disobeying his Commandments: By worshipping him  
not

|| *What is the Knowledge which is towards him.*

Mat. x. 32.

not with our Lips only, but with  
all our Heart, and with all our Mind,  
For he saith in *Isaiah*; *This People* Isa. xxix. 13.  
*honoureth me with their Lips, but their*  
*Heart is far from me.*

IV. LET us not then only call  
him LORD; for that will not save  
us. For he saith; *Not every one that* Mat. vii. 21.  
*saith unto me LORD, LORD, shall be*  
*saved, but he that doth Righteousness.*  
Wherefore, Brethren, let us confess  
him by our Works; by loving one  
another, in not committing Adul-  
tery, not speaking Evil against each  
other, not envying one another; but  
by being Temperate, Merciful, and  
Good. Let us also have a mutual  
Sense of one anothers Sufferings; and  
not be covetous of Mony: But let  
us by our Good Works confess God,  
and not by those that are otherwise.  
Also let us not fear Men; but ra-  
ther God. For this cause, \* *and to* \* *Wherefore*  
*the End* that we should do thus, hath *we doing these*  
the LORD said; Though ye should *things.*  
be joyn'd unto me, even in my very  
Bosom, and not keep my Command-  
ments, I would cast you off, and say  
unto you; *Depart from me; I know* Mat. vii. 23.  
*not* Luke xiii. 27.

*not whence you are, ye Workers of Iniquity.*

Mat. x. 16.

Luke xii. 4, 5.

V. WHEREFORE, Brethren, laying aside our sojourning in this present World, let us do the Will of him who has called us, and not fear to depart out of this World. For the LORD saith, *Ye shall be as Sheep in the midst of Wolves.* Peter answered and said, *What if the Wolves shall tear in pieces the Sheep?* Jesus said unto Peter; *Let not the Sheep fear the Wolves after Death: And ye also fear not those that kill you, and after that have no more that they can do unto you, but fear him who after you are dead, has power to cast both Soul and Body into Hell Fire.* For consider, Brethren, that the sojourning of this Flesh, in the present World, is but little, and of a short Continuance; but the Promise of Christ is Great and Wonderful, even the rest of the Kingdom that is to come, and of Eternal Life. But what then must we do that we attain unto it? We must be converted to a divine and just Course of Life; and look upon all the things of this World,

as

as none of ours ; and not desire them.  
For if we shall desire to possess them,  
we are fallen from the Way of Righteousness.

VI. FOR thus saith the LORD,  
*No Servant can serve two Masters. If* Luke xvi. 13.  
*therefore we shall desire to serve God*  
*and Mammon, it will be without*  
*Profit to us. For what will it pro-* Mat. xvi. 26.  
*fit us, if we shall gain the whole*  
*World, and lose our own Souls ?* Now  
this World, and that to come, are two  
Enemies. This calls us to Adultery  
and Corruption, to Covetousness  
and to Deceit ; but that commands  
us to renounce these things. We  
cannot therefore be the Friends of  
both ; but we must resolve by forsaking  
one, to enjoy the other. And  
we think that it is better to hate the  
present things, as little, short-lived,  
and corruptible ; and to love those  
which are to come, which are truly  
good, and incorruptible. For if we  
do the Will of Christ, we shall find  
Rest : But if not, nothing shall deliver  
us from Eternal Punishment,  
if we shall disobey his Commands.  
For even thus saith the Scripture, in

Ezek. xiv. 14. the Prophet Ezekiel; If Noah, Job  
20.

and Daniel should rise up, they shall not deliver their Children in Captivity. Wherefore if such Righteous Men, are not able by their Righteousness to deliver their Children; how can we hope to enter into the Kingdom of God, except we keep our Baptism Holy and Undeiled? Or who shall be our Advocate, unless we shall be found to have done what is Holy and Just?

|| The Combat  
is before us.

VII. LET us therefore, my Brethren, contend with all Earnestness, knowing that || we are now called to the Combat; and that many go long Voyages to corruptible Encounters, in which all are not concern'd, but they only that labour much, and strive gloriously. Let us therefore so contend, that we may all of us be crown'd. Let us run in the straight Road, the Race that is incorruptible: And let us in great Numbers pass unto it, and strive, that we may receive the Crown. But and if we cannot all be crown'd, let us come as near to it as we are able. Moreover we must consider, that he  
who

who contends in a corruptible Combat; if he be found doing any thing that is not fair, is taken away and scourged, and cast out of the Lists. What think ye then that he shall suffer, who do's any thing that is not fitting in the Combat of Immortality? Thus speaks *the Prophet* concerning those who keep not their Seal; *Their Worm shall not die, and their Fire shall not be quenched; and they shall be for a Spectacle unto all Flesh.* Isa. lxvi. 24.

VIII. LET us therefore repent whilst we are yet upon the Earth: For we are as Clay in the Hand of the Artificer. For as the Potter if he make a Vessel, and it be distorted in his Hands, or broken, again forms it anew; but if he have gone so far as to throw it into the Furnace of Fire, he can no more bring any Remedy to it: So we, whilst we are in this World † should repent with our whole Heart for whatsoever Evil we have done in the Flesh, while we have yet the time of Repentance, that we may be saved by the LORD. For after we shall have departed out of this World,



|| *There.*Luke xvi. 10,  
12.

we shall no longer be able either to confess our Sins, or repent || in the other. Wherefore, Brethren, let us doing the Will of the Father, and keeping our Flesh pure, and observing the Commandments of the LORD, secure to our selves Eternal Life. For the LORD saith in the Gospel. *If ye have not kept that which was little, who will give you that which is great? For I say unto you, he that is faithful in that which is least, is faithful also in much.* This therefore is what he saith; keep your Bodies pure, and your Soul without Spot, that ye may receive Eternal Life.

IX. AND let not any one among you say, that this very Flesh is not judged, neither raised up. Consider, in what were ye saved, in what did ye look up, if not whilst ye were in this Flesh? We must therefore keep our Flesh as the Temple of God. For in like manner as ye were called in the Flesh, ye shall also come in the Flesh. Even our LORD Jesus Christ, who has saved us, being first a Spirit, was made Flesh, and so called us. Wherefore we also shall in this Flesh  
receive

receive the Reward. Let us therefore love one another, that we may all attain unto the Kingdom of God. Whilst we are in a Condition of being healed, let us deliver up our selves to God our Physician, giving our Reward unto him. And what Reward shall we give? Repentance out of a pure Heart. For he knows all things before-hand, and searches out our very Hearts. Let us therefore give Praise unto him; and that not only with our Mouths, but with all our Souls; that he may receive us as the Children of God. For so the LORD hath said, *They are my Brethren, who* Mat. xii. 50. *do the Will of my Father.*

X. Wherefore, my Brethren, let us do the Will of our Father, who hath call'd us, that we may live. Let us pursue Vertue, and forsake Wickedness, as the Forerunner of our Punishment; and let us flee all Ungodliness that Evils overtake us not. For if we shall do our diligence to live well, Peace shall follow us.

|| And yet how hard is it to find a Man that do's this? For almost all are led by Human Fears, chusing ra-

Mm 3

ther

*For for this cause, we cannot find a Man. After Wendel in tract. lxxv.*

ther the present Enjoyments, than the future Promise. For they know not how great a Torment the present Enjoyments bring with them; nor what Delights the Promise of what is to come. And did they themselves only do this, it might the more easily be endured; but now they go on to infect innocent Souls with their Evil Doctrins; not knowing that both themselves, and those that hear them, shall receive a double Condemnation.

XI. LET us therefore serve God with a pure Heart, and we shall be Righteous: But if we shall not serve him, nor believe in the Promise of God, we shall be miserable. For thus saith the Prophet; *Miserable are the double minded, who doubt in their Heart, and say, These things have we heard, and our Fathers have told them unto us, but we have seen none of them, though we have expected them from Day to Day.* O ye Fools! Consider the Trees, take the Vine for an Example: First it sheds its Leaves, then it Buds, then come the Sour Grapes, then the Ripe Fruit. Even so my People has  
born

See above the  
1st Epistle,  
chap. xxiii.  
pag 37, 38.

born its Disorders and Afflictions, but shall hereafter receive good things. Wherefore my Brethren, let us not doubt in our Minds, but let us expect with Hope, that we may receive our Reward : For he is Faithful who has promised, that he will render to every one a Reward according to his Works. If therefore we shall do what is just in the Sight of God, we shall enter into his Kingdom, and shall receive the Promises ; *Which neither Eye has seen, nor Ear heard, nor have entred into the Heart of Man.*

XII. WHEREFORE let us every Hour expect the Kingdom of God in Love and Righteousness ; because we know not the Day of God's Appearing.

---

**F I N I S.**



---

An  
**I N D E X**  
O F T H E

Principal Matters contain'd in the fore-  
going T R E A T I S E S.

---

A.  
Alms-giving.

<b>H</b> OW we ought to give.	Pag. 369, 370.
Angels.	
Attend the Death of good Men.	332.
Every Man has Two Angels.	385.
Apostates.	
No Repentance allow'd to them.	441, 463.
They cannot be saved.	505, 514.

B.  
Baptism.

Forgives all Sins.	290, 293.
Its Necessity.	342.

Bishops,

In the Primitive Church the same, as now with us.	128,
131, 136, 147, 150, 178, 180, 182, 185, 199,	
202, 214, 224.	
The Reverence due to them.	129.
That	

# An INDEX.

*That we ought to adhere to the Bishops.* 199.  
*The Holy Sacrament of the Lord's Supper not to be  
 given but by the Bishop, or such as he appoints.* 199,  
 201.

*Marriage not to be made without his Knowledge and  
 Consent.* 213.

*A Bishop ought to instruct as well as govern his  
 Church.* 220.

*Exhortations proper for a Bishop.* 210, &c.  
*Vid. Unity.*

## Eutings.

*Much Business a hindrance to Religion.* 424, 507.

## C.

### Calamities.

*God sends them upon us to bring us to Repentance.* 443,  
 444.

### Charity.

*What true Charity is?* 67.

*The Praise of it.* 67, 68.

*Exhortations to it.* 353, 530.

### Christ.

*His Divinity shewn.* 26, 51, 106, 119.

160, 162, 165, 216, 271, 272, 535,

*His Pre-Existence.* 131, 133, 271, 544.

*His Eternity.* 133, 246, 492.

*His two Natures.* 111, 120, 194, 212.

*Of his Birth, &c.* 119, 135, 222.

*He is our High-Priest and Protector.* 77.

*No coming to God but by him.* 493, 494, 536.

*The Ancient Fathers saved by him.* 184, 502.

*So are we.* 538.

*He suffer'd for our Salvation.* 195, 270, 271, &c. 536.

*He truly suffer'd.* 151.

H

# An INDEX.

*He was raised from the dead by the Father.* 151, 198.

*By himself.* 195.

*He shall judge the World.* 272.

## Christian.

*A Christian is not to be judg'd by his outward Profession, but by his true Piety.* 116.

## Commands.

*God's Commands possible to be observed.* 409.

## Confession,

*To be made to God.* 69, 70.

## Contentment,

*Recommended.* 52, 53.

## D.

### Death.

*While we do well, we need not be afraid to die.* 540.

*Vid. Angels.*

### Devil.

*We ought not to fear him.* 388.

*He cannot overcome us if we strive against him.* 411, 412.

### Devotion.

*The benefit of frequent publick Devotion.* 115, 116.

### Differ.

*How we ought to behave our selves towards those that differ from us?* 114.

*We must not give Scandal to them.* 150, 151.

## E.

### Envy.

*The Mischiefs of it.* 13, &c.

### Evil.

*We must abstain from Evil, as well as do good.* 390.

*Eucharist. Vid. Sacrament.*

### Example.

*That we should imitate the Examples of Christ and his Saints.* 93, &c.

*F. Fast.*



# An INDEX.

## F.

### Fast.

*What a true Fast is? And how we may render our Fast-  
ing acceptable unto God?* 426, 431.

### Fear.

*We must fear God, and not be afraid of the Devil.* 388.

### Future Happiness.

*The Greatness of it.* 48, 49, 540, 541.

### Future Judgment.

*There shall be a final Judgment.* 213, 314.

*Christ shall be the Judg.* Vid. *Christ.*

## G.

### God.

*His Attributes.* 438.

*Omniscient.* 41, 117.

*Almighty.* 376.

*There is but One God.* 222.

*There is no flying from him.* 41, 42.

*The Nature of God; and our Duty to him.* 368.

*His Præscience.* 545.

*He searcheth the Heart.* Ibid.

### Good.

*What Good we must do?* 391.

## H.

### Happiness. Vid. Future.

### Hereticks. Heresie.

*We must avoid Hereticks.* 111, 112, 118, 179, 199,  
197, 118.

*The danger of them.* 117, 196.

*Yet we must pray for them.* 196.

*We must arm our selves against falling into Heresie.*  
149, 150, 151, 152.

I. Image.

# An INDEX.

## I.

Image.

*Wherein the Image of God consists?* 46.

Judge. Judgment. Vid. Future.

*Christ the Judge of the World.* 272, 539.

Justification.

*By Faith.* 45.

*We are justified by the same Faith that Holy Men were from the beginning.* 45.

## L.

Lying.

*Against Lying.* 371.

## M.

Marriage,

*Not to be made without the Bishop's Knowledge and Consent.* Vid. Bishop and Priest.

Martyr. Martyrdom.

*The Anniversaries of the Martyrs wont to be observed in the Primitive Church.* 229, 249.

*The Respect which the Christians had for them.* 248.

*Martyrs shall have a more than ordinary degree of Glory hereafter.* 336, 338, 458.

*Martyrdom blots out all Sins.* 516, 517, 518.

*It is therefore to be esteem'd a Happiness to suffer.* 517.

Mind.

*Against Trouble and Anxiety of Mind.* 380.

Ministers,

*Anciently chosen by the Church.* 60.

## O.

Obedience,

*Recommended.* 33.

*The Necessity of it.* 539.

P. Peace.

# An INDEX

## P.

### Peace.

*Exhortations to Peace and Unity.* 63, 71, 131, 132,  
152, 180, 214.

### Prayer.

*We must pray with Faith, not Doubting.* 393.  
*Publick Prayer.* Vid. *Devotion and Worship.*

### Priests,

*Married in the Primitive Church.* 96.

### Promise.

*God is faithful in his Promises, therefore we ought not  
to doubt of them.* 546, 547.

### Prophets.

*The ancient Prophets inspir'd by Christ.* 271.

### Providence.

*God's Providence is over all things.* 233.

### Punishment.

*The Punishment of Sinners in the other World shall be  
Eternal.* 242.

## R.

### Reliques.

*What Respect the ancient Christians paid to the Re-  
mains of their Martyrs?* 228, 248.

### Repentance.

*God allows Repentance to Sinners.* 17, 443, 444,  
464, 469, 524.

*Apostates only excepted.* Vid. *Apostates.*

*No Repentance after Death.* 442, 543, 544.

*The Benefit of Repentance purchas'd for us by Christ.* 17.

*Men are not presently pardon'd, as soon as they begin to  
Repent, till it appears that their Repentance is sin-  
cere.* 450.

## Resurrection.

# AN INDEX.

## Resurrection.

*That there shall be a future Resurrection.* 38, 40, 87, 151.

*We shall rise in the same Bodies.* 544.

## Riches.

*The Danger of Riches: What Use we ought to make of them?* 228, 248.

## Rule.

*Particular Rules of Life.* 35, 43, 49, 87, 308.

## S.

### Sacrament.

*The Holy Sacrament of the Lord's Supper not to be administered but by the Bishop, or by him whom the Bishop appoints.* 199.

### Sadness.

*The Mischief of it.* 396.

### Salvation.

*We are saved by the Blood of Christ.* 23.

*God desires that all Christians should be saved.* 457.

*No Man can be saved without Piety.* 541, 542.

*Exhortation to strive after our Salvation.* 542.

### Scandal.

*We must take heed that we do not give Scandal to the Enemies of our Religion.* 150, 151.

### Schism.

*The danger of it.* 110, 180.

### Scriptures.

*The Holy Scriptures written by Divine Inspiration.* 61, 64.

## Sin.

*We must answer to God for the Sins of those who belong unto us.* 326, 449.

*We*

# AN INDEX.

*We must take care that we do not partake in Other Mens Sins.* 369, 374.

Speech.

*Against Evil-Speaking.* 369.

Suffer.

*Christ supports all such as suffer for him.* 233.

*Vid. Christ.*

T.

Transubstantiation.

*Against it.* 110, 121, 166.

*Compare.* 198.

Trinity.

*See for it.* 229, 246.

V.

Virginity,

*Recommended.* 213.

Unity. *Vid. Peace.*

*Unity with the Bishop, the best means to secure our selves against falling into Heresie.* 179.

W.

World.

*We live in this World as in a Pilgrimage.* 415.

*We cannot serve this World and the next.* 541.

Worship.

*Appointed Times of publick Worship.* 55.

*Appointed Persons for the performing of it.* 56.

*Setled by the Apostles.* 58, 60.

## F I N I S.

